FRENCH ACCIDENCE

The University Tutorial Series.

THE TUTORIAL

FRENCH ACCIDENCE.

Books on French.

The Preceptors' French Course. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. 2s. 6d. [*In the press.*

The Tutorial French Accidence. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. With Exercises. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"The essentials of the accidence of the French Language are skilfully exhibited in carefully condensed synoptic sections."—*Educational News.*

"A most practical and able compilation."—*Public Opinion.*

"The manual is an excellent one—clear, well-arranged, and if not quite exhaustive, at least very fairly complete."—*Glasgow Herald.*

The Tutorial French Syntax. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond., and A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. & Camb. With Exercises. 3s. 6d.

"It is a decidedly good book and should have a ready sale."—*Guardian.*

"Mr. Weekley has produced a clear, full, and careful Grammar in the 'Tutorial French Accidence,' and the companion volume of 'Syntax,' by himself and Mr. Wyatt, is worthy of it."—*Saturday Review.*

The Tutorial French Grammar. Containing the *Accidence* and the *Syntax* in One Volume (without the Exercises). 4s. 6d.

French Prose Composition. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. [*In preparation.*

The Preceptors' French Reader. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. With Notes and Vocabulary. 1s. 6d.

"A very useful first reader with good vocabulary and sensible notes."—*Schoolmaster.*

French Prose Reader. Edited by S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., Examiner in French to the College of Preceptors, and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. With Vocabulary. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"Admirably chosen extracts. They are so selected as to be thoroughly interesting and at the same time thoroughly illustrative of all that is best in French literature."—*School Board Chronicle.*

Advanced French Reader: Containing passages in prose and verse representative of all the modern Authors. Edited by S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., Examiner in French to the College of Preceptors, and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Chosen from a large range of good modern authors, the book provides excellent practice in 'Unseens.'"—*Schoolmaster.*

Higher French Reader. Edited by ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. 3s. 6d.

"The passages are well chosen, interesting in themselves, and representative of the best contemporary stylists."—*Journal of Education.*

The University Tutorial Series.

THE TUTORIAL FRENCH ACCIDENCE.

BY

ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond.,

AUTHOR OF "THE PRECEPTORS' FRENCH COURSE," "A HIGHER FRENCH READER,"
JOINT AUTHOR OF "THE TUTORIAL FRENCH SYNTAX."

SECOND EDITION.

London: W. B. CLIVE,
UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENCE COLLEGE PRESS.
Warehouse: 13 Booksellers Row, Strand, W.C.

PREFACE.

THE purpose of this work is to present the English reader with a clear and fairly complete account of French inflexions, and to bring into prominence, for the benefit of those who are comparatively speaking beginners in the language, all points of fundamental importance; information on minor points is given in order to render the book useful for reference, and full enough to meet the wants of the more advanced student. In printing the book, care has been taken to indicate, by variety of types, the relative importance of the various parts of the work, and to so arrange that tables and lists may be, as far as possible, presented complete before the learner's eye, on a page or on two opposite pages. Though the book is called a "French Accidence," it has been found inadvisable to exclude syntax entirely; the elementary rules are accordingly stated and exemplified where they appear necessary for a due understanding of the accidence.

The Tutorial French Syntax, by Mr. Wyatt and myself, deals exclusively with this part of French Grammar, and serves as a sequel and as a companion to the *Accidence.*

The chapter on pronunciation has been inserted in the interests of private students, to whom some guidance of the kind is often helpful; such printed directions are of course unsatisfactory, and will be best neglected by those who have the assistance of a competent teacher.

The book is arranged in the traditional order of the "parts of speech"; but it is not intended that this order should be strictly followed by the learner. This is especially the case with that chapter which deals with the gender of substantives.

The irregular verbs are tabulated at some length, and are grouped in the manner which seems most convenient for learning. An alphabetical list has been added for purposes of reference.

The point of view throughout is that of the English learner. Consequently, the usual classification of French verbs has been rejected as illogical and misleading; and in a few other points there is some departure from the methods of French grammarians. Grammatical terms are not defined unless peculiar to French. Etymology has only been introduced in cases where a knowledge of the elements of Latin will furnish a simple explanation of grammatical forms.

I desire to acknowledge my obligation to my colleague, Mr. A. J. Wyatt, M.A., for considerable assistance in the preparation of this book, and to Mr. B. L. O'Donnell, M.A., Fellow and late Examiner in the Royal University of Ireland, for revising the proofs. I have also to express my great indebtedness to the Vice-Principal of University Correspondence College, Mr. B. J. Hayes, M.A., whose wide experience has proved an invaluable help to me in seeing the book through the press.

E. W.

BURLINGTON HOUSE, CAMBRIDGE,
October 1894.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THIS edition differs but slightly from the first: misprints have been corrected and a few inaccuracies of expression have been removed.

June 1897.

CONTENTS.

CHAPTER		PAGE
	Introductory Chapter	1
I.	Orthography and Pronunciation	3
II.	Parts of Speech	11
III.	The Article	12
IV.	Gender of Substantives	16
V.	Plural of Substantives	32
VI.	The Feminine of Substantives	39
VII.	Qualifying Adjectives	46
VIII.	Determining Adjectives	62
IX.	Compound Substantives and Adjectives	74
X.	Pronouns	83
XI.	Verbs: The Four Conjugations	101
XII.	Intransitive Verbs	122
XIII.	Reflexive Verbs	124
XIV.	**Aller, Venir,** and **Devoir** as Auxiliaries	127
XV.	Impersonal Verbs	129
XVI.	Negative and Interrogative Conjugation	132
XVII.	Quasi-Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation	143
XVIII.	Irregular Verbs	150
XIX	Defective Verbs	184

CHAPTER PAGE

XX. REFERENCE LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS 186

XXI. ELEMENTARY SYNTAX OF THE VERB 188

XXII. ADVERBS 195

XXIII. PREPOSITIONS 201

XXIV. CONJUNCTIONS 204

APPENDIX. (A) HOMONYMS 206

" (B) ENGLISH AND FRENCH WORDS OF SIMILAR FORM BUT DIFFERENT MEANING . 209

" (C) NAMES OF COUNTRIES, ETC. . . . 212

INDEX 213

EXERCISES 217

VOCABULARY TO THE EXERCISES:—

I. FRENCH—ENGLISH 270

II. ENGLISH—FRENCH 285

INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER.

Modern French is the direct descendant of Latin, which supplanted the Keltic dialects of Gaul after the Roman conquest. This Latin was not, however, the language used by the classical writers, but the so-called "rustic Latin," spoken by the Roman soldiers and colonists. It differed materially from the literary language both in vocabulary and construction. Thus, for example, the classical word *equus* (horse) was represented in the popular dialect by *caballus*, which became the French cheval, and the verb *edere* (to eat), by *manducare*, which has given the French manger. Such differences in vocabulary usually occur in the names of the most ordinary objects and occupations.

Again, classical Latin was a highly synthetic (*i.e.* inflected) language, and an elaborate system of inflexions had little chance of surviving in a language which was spoken only, and not written. The common people gradually simplified matters for themselves by the extensive employment of prepositions and auxiliary verbs in place of the classical inflexions. This process was still further continued by the Gauls, who adopted the rustic Latin, and modern French is in consequence mainly an analytical language. For instance, the Latin sentence "*Caesari hoc dedi*," is, in French, j'ai donné ceci à César, six French words being thus needed to translate half that number of Latin words.

The changes which words have undergone in the transition from Latin to French result from certain fixed laws which cannot be fully enunciated here, but the more important of which may be illustrated by a few examples.

The French substantive **bonté** (kindness) comes from the Latin *bonität-em*; in this case the atonic (*i.e.* unaccented) ending has perished, and the short vowel (*ĭ*) before the tonic (*i.e.* accented) syllable has also disappeared. **Dame** (lady), comes from *dŏminum*; here both the atonic ending and the short vowel (*ĭ*) following the tonic syllable have disappeared. In both the above examples the stress in the French word is on the same syllable as in its Latin original. This **continuance of the tonic accent** is the most important of the laws mentioned above. In Latin every word was accented on the penultimate (*i.e.* last syllable but one), unless that happened to be short, in which case the accent fell on the antepenultimate (*i.e.* last syllable but two). From this it follows that, owing to the loss of the atonic ending, every French word is accented on the last syllable, or on the penultimate if the last syllable be mute.*

What has been already said relates only to the original vocabulary of the language. Great numbers of words have been from time to time taken straight from classical Latin and introduced arbitrarily into French. Such words usually resemble the Latin original more closely *in form*, but violate the law of the tonic accent. Thus, from the Latin adjective *frágilis* come the two French words **frêle** and **fragile**, the former of which belongs to the popular language, while the latter is a learned importation, and is accented on the second syllable.†

Besides these Latin elements modern French has received important contributions from other European languages; *e.g.* :—

From Italian : alarme, madrigal, poltron, etc.
„ Spanish: abricot, cigare, mantille, etc.
„ German : bivouac, havresac, sabre, etc.
„ English: express, groom, turf, etc.

French also contains the usual sprinkling of Hebrew, Oriental, American, and Polynesian words, and a very few terms belonging to the original Keltic dialects of Gaul.

* In French **e** mute counts as a syllable.
† Such pairs of words are called "doublets,

THE TUTORIAL FRENCH ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.—ORTHOGRAPHY AND PRONUNCIATION.

The Alphabet.

§ 1. The French alphabet is the same as that used in writing English, except that in French the letters k and w occur only in foreign words.

§ 2. Capitals and small letters are used as in English, except that the following classes of words do not in French begin with a capital letter :—

(*a*) adjectives formed from names of countries and other proper names; *e.g.* la langue française, *the French language;*

(*b*) names of titles; * *e.g.* le duc de Buckingham arrivera demain, *the Duke of Buckingham will arrive to-morrow;*

(*c*) names of days and months; *e.g.* il sera ici le premier lundi de juin, *he will be here on the first Monday in June.*

Orthographic Signs.

§ 3. The same marks of punctuation are used in French as in English.

§ 4. There are three accents: the acute (´), the grave (`), and the circumflex (^). The use of these is explained in § 10.

§ 5. The cedilla (¸) written under c (thus: ç) indicates that the letter has its soft sound (§ 15).

* On this point the usage is not uniform.

§ **6.** The diaeresis (¨) indicates that the vowel over which it is placed does not coalesce with the preceding vowel, but is pronounced separately; *e.g.* Noël, *Christmas.*

§ **7.** The hyphen (-) is used, as in English, to join the members of a compound word; also in some compound numerals (§ 152), and to join the pronoun to the verb in commands (§ 230) and questions (§ 333).

§ **8.** The apostrophe (') marks the elision of a vowel before a following vowel or silent h; *e.g.* l'oncle (for le oncle), *the uncle;* l'homme (for le homme), *the man.*

NOTE.—The following details on elision are important:—

o and u are never elided.
i is elided only in si before il or ils.
a is elided in la, *the, her*; e.g. l'âme (f.), *the soul;* nous l'aimons, *we like her.*

e is elided in le, *the,*	l'homme, *the man.*
le, *him, it,*	nous l'avons vu, *we have seen him.*
ce (pron.),	c'est moi, *it is I.*
je, *I,*	j'aime, *I love.*
me, *me, to me,*	vous m'ennuyez, *you annoy me.*
te, *thee, to thee,*	je t'aime, *I love you.*
se, *himself,* etc.,	il s'est blessé, *he has hurt himself.*
de, *of,*	la croix d'honneur, *the cross of honour.*
que, *which, what,*	qu'avez-vous? *what ails you?*
que (conj.), *that,*	je crois qu'il viendra, *I believe that he will come.*
ne, *not,*	je n'ose, *I dare not.*
jusque, *until,*	jusqu'à midi, *till noon.*

In entre, in the substantive entr'acte, *interlude,* and in several compound verbs; *e.g.* entr'ouvrir, *to half open.*

In presque, in the substantive presqu'île, *peninsula.*

In quelque, only in the compound quelqu'un, *some one.*

In lorsque, *when*, puisque, *since*, quoique, *although*, e is elided only before il, ils, elle, elles, un, une, on.

Obs. No elision takes place before the words onze, *eleven*, onzième, *eleventh*, ouate, *wadding*, oui, *yes*; e.g. le onzième, *the eleventh.*

PRONUNCIATION.

The Vowels.

§ 9. The table on the next page shows approximately the pronunciation of the French vowels. It will be noticed that the same letter may vary in sound, and that the same sound may be represented in different ways.

In French, as in English, a vowel is termed short or long according to the space of time occupied in its emission; thus in the word *fumigated*, *u* and *a* are long, *i* and *e* are short. This distinction of quantity is, however, less definite in French than in most languages, and is in some cases almost imperceptible. These terms short and long must not be confused with the terms open and closed, which apply rather to the quality or timbre of vowel sounds, and are used more especially in distinguishing the different shades of the vowel e.

On the Use of the Accents.

§ 10. The acute accent (´) is used only over e; é is always "closed," though closed e is not by any means always written é.

The grave accent (`) placed over e denotes that the e has its "open" sound; but open e is not by any means always written è.

The grave accent (`) is also placed over a and u, and serves to distinguish words which are spelt alike; it does not then affect the pronunciation.

The circumflex accent (^) may stand on any vowel (except y), and usually indicates that the vowel is long; in most cases the circumflex also denotes the suppression of some letter or letters, generally s. The circumflex further serves to distinguish words which are spelt alike.

§ 11. SIMPLE VOWELS.

	Examples.
a (short) as *a* in *father*	année, parle
a (long) practically the same	base, pâte
e (mute) as (i) silent *e* in *borne*	malade, parle, année, appeler

e (unaccented) is silent (*a*) at the end of a word in which it is not the only vowel, (*b*) often between two consonants in the body of a word.

„ „ (ii) undefined *e* in *elegant*	Angleterre, cela

e thus pronounced always comes between two consonants.

„ „ (iii) undefined *e* in *father*	de, le, me, ne

e (unaccented) is always thus pronounced when it stands at the end of a word that has no other vowel.

e (closed) as in *pen*	été, parlé, parler, parlez

e is thus pronounced when it has the acute accent (**é**); the verbal suffixes **-er**, **-ez**, in which the final consonant is mute, also represent this sound.

e (open)	scène, même, gèle

e is always thus pronounced when it has the grave or the circumflex accent (**è** or **ê**); also **e** before a final sounded consonant (Open **e** is pronounced very similarly to closed **e**; it has a slightly broader and more prolonged sound.)

i (short) as *i* in *city*	militaire, irrésolu
i (long) as *i* in *machine*	gîte, église
o (short) as *o* in *of*	officier, sotte
o (long) as *o* in *off*	rose, trop, trône

o is usually short if followed by a double consonant; but is long if followed by **-se**, by a silent consonant, or if marked by a circumflex.

u (short)	puni, Tartufe
u (long)	déluge, bûche

The sound of **u** cannot be represented in English; it may, perhaps, be approximately illustrated by the vowel sound of English lure or of Scotch gude.

y as *i* in *machine*	analyse, martyr

y has the vowel sound between two consonants; in other positions it is a semi-consonant (§ 15).

§ 12. Compound Vowels.

	Examples.
ai, ei, usually = e open	faible, peine
au, eau, = o long	tuyau, bateau
eu, ue, œ, œu, are pronounced almost alike, and have a sound which does not occur in English, but which approaches most nearly to that of the French mute e in de.	feu, cueillir, œil, vœu
ou as *oo* in *food*	fou, résoudre

Note.—The compound vowels ue and œ are nearly always followed by il, which represents the sound known as l mouillé (§ 17).

Diphthongs.

§ 13. While compound vowels represent simple sounds, diphthongs produce a composite sound which counts as one syllable. There are, strictly speaking, no true diphthongs in modern French, the first element having always the consonantal sound of English w or y.

	Examples.
ia	fiacre
iai	biais
ie, iè, ié	ciel, fièvre, pitié
ieu	Dieu
io	pioche
iou	chiourme
oe (not œ)	moelle
oi	moi
oua	douane
oue	rouet
oui	fouine
ua	suave
ue	muet
ui	bruit

Nasal Vowels.

§ 14. The letters m and n in combination with various vowels produce the so-called nasal vowels, which are quite unknown in English.

The different combinations represent only four sounds.

	Examples.
an	plan
am	lampe
en	enfant
em	membre
in	fin
im	impie
ain	pain
aim	faim
ein	plein
on	mon
om	ombre
un	aucun
eun	(à) jeun
um	parfum

Note 1.—The above combinations are not nasalised

(i) before a vowel, *e.g.* inutile;

(ii) when the n or m is doubled, *e.g.* ennemi.

Note 2.—Many of the diphthongs may also be nasalised when followed by n or m; *e.g.* bien, oint, Rouen.

Consonants.

§ 15. The following table gives the usual pronunciation of the various consonants as they occur at the beginning or in the body of a word. Final dentals and sibilants are usually mute.

		Examples.
b	as *b* in b*oat*	beau, habit
c (hard)	as *k* in k*ing*	couteau, accord
c (soft)	as *s* in s*oap*	cité, percé

c is soft before e or i; otherwise c is hard. ç with the cedilla (c) is always soft; *e.g.* perçai, perçons, aperçu.

d	as *d* in d*eath*	doux, adoucir
f	as *f* in f*ood*	foule, confire
g (hard)	as *g* in g*ood*	garçon, Gustave
g (soft)	as *s* in *plea*s*ure*	gentil, manger

g is soft before **e** or **i**; otherwise **g** is hard. In order to preserve the sound of soft **g** before **a**, **o**, or **u**, a mute **e** is inserted; *e.g.* **ge**ai, man**ge**ons, **ge**use. The sound of hard **g** before **e** or **i** is represented by **gu**; *e.g.* **gu**é, **gu**ichet.

h (aspirate)	as *h* in h*eir*	héros, honte
h (silent)	,, ,,	heureux, habit

h aspirate does not differ perceptibly from **h** mute except in preventing elision (§ 8) and liaison (§ 18).

j as *s* in *plea*s*ure*	jamais, majuscule
k as *k* in k*ing*	kilogramme, képi

This letter occurs only in foreign words and those borrowed from Greek.

l as *l* in l*ow*	lion, voler
m as *m* in m*ore*	morceau, aimer
n as *n* in n*ose*	neuf, inutile

m and **n** also form the nasal vowels already mentioned.

p as *p* in p*oor*	poser, repos
q or qu as *k* in k*ing*	quatre, acquérir

q is always followed by **u** except when final, as in co**q**, cin**q**.

r as *rr* in *fu*r*rier*	rage, père

This letter is more rolled in French than in English, and never silent except after **e**; *e.g.* aime**r**, boulange**r**.

s (hard)	as *s* in s*oap*	santé, respirer
s (soft)	as *s* in *ro*s*e*	cousin, heureuse
t	as *t* in t*own*	tirer, petit
v	as *v* in v*ow*	vert, rêver
x	as *x* in *ta*x	fixer, extrême
x	as *z* in z*eal*	Xérès, dixième
x	as *ss* in *li*ss*om*	soixante, dix
y	as *y* in y*ou*	payer, yeuse

This pronunciation is only approximate, since **y** is a semi-vowel.

z as *z* in z*eal*	zèbre, gazon

NOTE.—**w** is only found in foreign words; if they are of German origin it has the sound of **v**, *e.g.* westphalien; if English, the sound of English **w** is imitated, *e.g.* whist.

Combinations of Consonants.

§ 16. ch in words of Greek origin is pronounced like k; *e.g.* chrétien, chronomètre; otherwise it is pronounced like sh in shave; *e.g.* chien, racheter.

th is pronounced like t, *e.g.* théâtre;

ph is pronounced like f, *e.g.* physique; but in

ps both letters are heard, *e.g.* psaume.

sc is soft (= s hard) before e or i, *e.g.* sceau, sceptre; otherwise sc is hard (= sk), *e.g.* scandale, scolaire, sculpture.

ss is always hard (like *ss* in *assent*), *e.g.* posséder.

ti is often sounded like si; *e.g.* in portion, patience. The t sound is always preserved in verbal suffixes; *e.g.* nous portions.

Liquid Consonants.

§ 17. l or ll preceded by i often has the liquid (mouillé) sound which is peculiar to French, and which somewhat resembles an undefined English consonantal y; *e.g.* œil, fille, gaillard.

gn represents a sound like that of *-ni-* in *Spaniard*; *e.g.* gagner, magnifique.

Liaison.

§ 18. Final consonants, especially dentals and sibilants, are usually mute, but when a word thus ending is followed by a word beginning with a vowel or h mute, the final consonant is sounded; *e.g.* nous sommes‿heureux. This is called liaison (*binding*).

Note.—The final t in et, *and*, is always mute.

Tonic Accent.

§ 19. Every French word is accented on the last syllable or, if that be mute, on the last syllable but one; *e.g.* the word *machine* has the same accent in French as in English. (In counting the syllables, e mute, whether medial or final, is reckoned as a syllable. Thus appeler [pronounced app'ler] is a trisyllable and porche a dissyllable.) This accent consists in pronouncing the syllable in question with more stress and at a higher pitch of the voice than the rest of the word, and has nothing whatever to do with written accents (§ 10).

CHAPTER II.—PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ **20.** There are nine parts of speech in French:—

1. Article 2. Substantive 3. Adjective 4. Pronoun 5. Verb	variable.
6. Adverb 7. Preposition 8. Conjunction 9. Interjection	invariable.

When we say that a word is "variable," we mean that to the word, or to a certain unchangeable portion of it, suffixes may be added.

The purpose which a suffix serves differs according to the part of speech to which the word belongs:—

Substantives have a suffix to mark the plural number, as in English.

Articles, adjectives, and pronouns vary according to their gender and number.

Verbs have suffixes indicating person, number, tense, and mood.

NOTE.—Some pronouns have special forms for different cases—nominative, accusative, and dative (§ 219), much as in English.

Obs. From what is here said it is evident that suffixes are much more varied in French than in English, and that they play an important part in the grammar of the language.

CHAPTER III.—THE ARTICLE.

§ 21. There are three articles in French :—

the **definite** article (Eng. *the*);
the **indefinite** article (Eng. *an, a*);
the **partitive** article (Eng. *some, any*).

§ 22. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	Singular.	Plural.
Masculine.	le } l' before a vowel or h mute	les
Feminine.	la } l' before a vowel or h mute	les

EXAMPLES :—

le roi, *the king.* **l'empereur**, *the emperor.* **les rois**, *the kings.*
la reine, *the queen.* **l'impératrice**, *the empress.* **les reines**, *the queens.*

Obs. Substantives are in French either masculine or feminine (§ 34), and the article must be of the same gender as its substantive; thus, the masculine word **roi** requires the masculine form of the article (**le**), and the feminine word **reine** requires the feminine form of the article (**la**).

Again, if the substantive is plural (*e.g.* **rois, reines**) the plural form of the article (**les**) must be used.

NOTE.—**H** at the beginning of a word is usually mute ; but in a certain number of substantives, which will be best learnt by practice, the initial **h** is aspirate and the final vowel of the article is not elided ; *e.g.* **le héros**, *the hero.* It must be remembered that **h** aspirate merely prevents elision, and is not sounded like an English **h** (§ 15).

§ 23. When the definite article is preceded by the prepositions **de**, *of*, *from*, and **à**, *to*, *at*, **de le** is always contracted to **du**, **de les** to **des**, **à le** to **au**, and **à les** to **aux**, while **de la**, **de l'**, **à la**, **à l'**, remain unchanged.

	Singular.	Plural.
Masculine.	du } de l' before a vowel or h mute	des
Feminine.	de la } de l' before a vowel or h mute	des
Masculine.	au } à l' before a vowel or h mute	aux
Feminine.	à la } à l' before a vowel or h mute	aux

EXAMPLES :—

la couronne du roi, *the king's crown,* or *the crown of the king.*

la couronne de l'empereur, *the emperor's crown,* or *the crown of the emperor.*

la couronne de la reine, *the queen's crown,* or *the crown of the queen.*

la couronne de l'impératrice, *the empress's crown,* or *the crown of the empress.*

les couronnes des rois, *the kings' crowns,* or *the crowns of the kings.*

il parle au roi, *he is speaking to the king.*

il parle à l'empereur, *he is speaking to the emperor.*

il parle à la reine, *he is speaking to the queen.*

il parle à l'impératrice, *he is speaking to the empress.*

il parle aux rois, *he is speaking to the kings.*

Obs. Substantives have, properly speaking, no cases in French, but it is often convenient to speak of a substantive preceded by **de** and the article as **genitive,** and of one preceded by **à** and the article as **dative,** those being the names of the Latin cases which these French forms represent.

NOTE 1.—In Old French, **de le** was contracted to **del** and **à le** to **al,** and these forms became later **deu, du,** and **au** by vocalisation of **l,** a very common process in French, as seen in the form **couteau,** *knife,* from the Latin *cultellum.*

NOTE 2.—The form **ès,** a contraction of the preposition **en,** *in,* and the plural article, survives only in university titles, such as **bachelier ès lettres,** *Bachelor of Letters;* **bachelier ès sciences,** *Bachelor of Science;* **licencié ès lettres,** *Licentiate in Letters.*

USE OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE IN FRENCH.

It will be sufficient for the beginner merely to read through §§ 24—29.

§ **24.** The definite article is used in French much more extensively than in English. The following are the most important cases in which the two languages differ in this respect :—

§ **25.** 1. The article is used before any substantive taken in a general or universal sense.

Le vin réjouit le cœur de l'homme.
Wine rejoices the heart of man.

Les bons livres sont rares.
Good books are rare.

§ **26.** 2. The article is used before names of countries, provinces, and continents.

La France est un beau pays.
France is a fine country.
Nous aimons la Suisse.
We like Switzerland.

NOTE.—If the name of a country is preceded by the preposition **de**, *of*, so as to have an adjectival force, or by **en**, *in*, *to*, no article is used; *e.g.* **Avez-vous du vin de Bourgogne?** *Have you any Burgundy wine?* **Ils demeurent en Australie,** *They live in Australia.*

§ **27.** 3. The article is used before titles.

La reine Victoria était la fille du duc de Kent.
Queen Victoria was the daughter of the Duke of Kent.

§ **28.** 4. The article is used before proper names preceded by an adjective.

Le pauvre Henri est mort.
Poor Henry is dead.

§ **29.** The article is usually repeated before each substantive in an enumeration.

Voici le père et la mère de Henri.
Here are Henry's father and mother.

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

§ **30.** The indefinite article has two forms, both singular:—

Masculine.	**un**
Feminine.	**une**

EXAMPLES:—

un roi, *a king.* **une reine,** *a queen.*

NOTE.—The method of translating the word *a* or *an* in speaking of price or rate of payment is shown by the following examples: **deux francs la livre,** *two francs a pound;* **cent livres sterling par mois,** *a hundred pounds a month.*

The Partitive Article.

§ **31.** The forms of the definite article preceded by the preposition de (viz. du, de la, de l', des) not only mean *of the*, or *from the*, but are used in a partitive sense where in English *some* or *any* is either expressed or understood. So used, these combinations of de with the definite article are known as the partitive article.

Il mange du pain.	**Il boit de l'eau.**
He is eating (some) bread.	*He is drinking (some) water.*
Il boit de la bière.	**Avez-vous des livres ?**
He is drinking (some) beer.	*Have you (any) books?*

§ **32.** There are two cases in which the partitive article is replaced by de only.

(*a*) When the substantive is preceded by an adjective, de is used instead of the partitive article.

Avez-vous de bon vin ?	**Il a de bons amis.**
Have you (any) good wine?	*He has (some) good friends.*

(*b*) When the substantive is preceded by any word denoting measure or quantity, including the negatives pas, point, etc., de is used instead of the partitive article.

A-t-il beaucoup d'amis ?	**Non, il n'a pas d'amis.**
Has he many friends?	*No, he has no friends.*

NOTE.—When a substantive, used partitively, is already preceded by **de**, the partitive article is omitted.

Voici un panier de cerises.
Here is a basket of cherries.
La vie est pleine de malheurs.
Life is full of misfortunes.

§ **33.** The partitive article serves as the plural of the indefinite article.

Singular.	Plural.
Il a un livre.	**Il a des livres.**
He has a book.	*He has (some) books.*
Il a un bon livre.	**Il a de bons livres.**
He has a good book.	*He has (some) good books.*

CHAPTER IV.—GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ **34.** Every French substantive is either of the masculine or of the feminine gender. To attempt to formulate rules which would enable a student to determine the gender of any given substantive would be useless; such knowledge can only be acquired by experience. But it is possible to give certain general rules which should suffice for practical purposes.

§ **35.** The gender of French substantives may be determined—

(i) By **meaning,**
(ii) By **termination,**
(iii) By **derivation.**

I.—GENDER AS DETERMINED BY MEANING.

§ **36.** 1. To the **masculine** gender belong—

Names of male persons, and
,, ,, male animals, if there is a distinct form in use to denote the female.

le fils, *the son.*	**l'ours,** *the he-bear.*
le marin, *the sailor.*	**le coq,** *the cock.*

Obs. If the same form is used to denote both the male and the female of an animal, this form is in some cases masculine (*e.g.* **le papillon,** *the butterfly*) and in others feminine (*e.g.* **la souris,** *the mouse*). Cp. §§ 45, 47.

§ **37.** 2. To the **masculine** gender belong—

Names of days, months, and seasons;
,, ,, winds, and points of the compass;
,, ,, decimal weights and measures.

lundi, *Monday.*	**le simoun,** *the simoon.*
juin, *June.*	**le nord,** *the north.*
le printemps, *spring.*	**le gramme,** *the gram.*

§ 38. 3. To the masculine gender belong—

Names of trees and shrubs;
" " metals;
" " colours.

le chêne, *the oak.* **le fer,** *iron.*
le lierre, *the ivy.* **le jaune,** *yellow.*

§ 39. 4. Other parts of speech, or phrases, used as substantives, are usually considered masculine, but it would be more correct to treat them as survivals of the neuter.

le français, *French.* **le vrai,** *the true.*
le manger, *eating.* **le pourquoi,** *the why and wherefore.*
le qu'en dira-t-on, *Mrs. Grundy.*

§ 40. To the foregoing rules there are a few exceptions, but as they are not, generally speaking, words of frequent occurrence, it is not advisable to burden the memory with them. The more important of them are here given for reference.

EXCEPTIONS TO RULE 1.—The following are feminine :—

la recrue, *the recruit.* **la vedette,** *the vedette.*
la sentinelle, *the sentinel.*

EXCEPTION TO RULE 2.—The following is feminine :—

la bise, *the north-east wind.*

EXCEPTIONS TO RULE 3.—The following are feminine :—

la bourdaine, *the black alder.* **la vigne,** *the vine.*
l'épine, *the thorn.* **l' yeuse,** *the evergreen oak.*
la ronce, *the bramble.* **l'écarlate,** *scarlet.*

§ 41. 1. To the feminine gender belong—

Names of female persons, and
" " female animals, if there is a distinct form in use to denote the male.

la fille, *the daughter.* **l'ourse,** *the she-bear.*
la nourrice, *the nurse.* **la poule,** *the hen.*

§ **42.** 2. To the **feminine** gender belong—

Most abstract * substantives.

la chaleur, *heat.*	**la sagesse,** *wisdom.*
la prudence, *prudence.*	**la vérité,** *truth.*

For exceptions to this rule, see §§ 51—55, on Gender by termination.

Gender of Substantives denoting both Males and Females.

§ **43.** A great many substantives, which may denote either males or females, and which in English would be, as a rule, of **common gender**, have in French a **fixed gender.** They may be arranged as follows :—

§ **44.** 1. To the **masculine** gender belong—

Most names applied to individuals occupied in pursuits which are usually confined to the male sex.

l'auteur, *the author.*	**le peintre,** *the painter.*
l'écrivain, *the writer.*	**le poète,** *the poet.*
le médecin, *the doctor.*	**le sculpteur,** *the sculptor.*

Thus we can say, **Madame de Sévigné est un grand écrivain,** *Madame de Sévigné is a great writer.*

§ **45.** 2. To the **masculine** gender belong—

Many names of animals.

le castor, *the beaver.*	**le merle,** *the blackbird.*
le cygne, *the swan.*	**le papillon,** *the butterfly.*
le hibou, *the owl.*	**le rossignol,** *the nightingale.*
le léopard, *the leopard.*	**le serpent,** *the serpent.*

Note.—In such cases the distinction of sex is marked by the use of the words **mâle,** *male,* and **femelle,** *female.*

Un léopard mâle.	**Un merle femelle.**
A he-leopard.	*A hen-blackbird.*

§ **46.** 3. Two substantives which do not come strictly under either of the two preceding heads are also **masculine.**

l'ange, *the angel.*	**le témoin,** *the witness.*

* An abstract substantive is the name of a quality, attribute, or circumstance of a thing; see the examples given above.

§ **47.** 1. To the feminine gender belong—

Many names of animals.

l'alouette, *the lark.*
la baleine, *the whale.*
la fourmi, *the ant.*
l'hirondelle, *the swallow.*
la mouche, *the fly.*
la panthère, *the panther.*
la souris, *the mouse.*
la vipère, *the viper.*

§ **48.** 2. To the feminine gender belong—

The following substantives, which may stand for individuals of either sex :—

la bête, *the beast.*
la caution, *the surety.*
la connaissance, *the acquaintance.*
la dupe, *the dupe.*
la personne, *the person.*
la pratique, *the customer.*
la victime, *the victim.*

Obs. The preceding lists are not in any way complete, but merely supply the more important illustrations.

Gender of Geographical Names.

§ **49.** 1. With regard to the gender of geographical names, it may be noted that names of **countries, provinces, and towns** ending in **e** mute are, as a rule, feminine, while those ending otherwise are masculine.

le Portugal, *Portugal.* (**le**) **Paris,** *Paris.*
le Poitou, *Poitou.*

la Belgique, *Belgium.* (**la**) **Rome,** *Rome.*
la Bourgogne, *Burgundy.*

2. Names of **mountains** are masculine.

le Vésuve, *Vesuvius.* **le Sinaï,** *Sinai.*
les Carpathes, *the Carpathians.*

Exceptions.—The following are feminine :—

les Alpes, *the Alps.*
les Andes, *the Andes.*
les Cévennes, *the Cevennes.*
les Cordillères, *the Cordilleras.*
les Pyrénées, *the Pyrenees.*
les Vosges, *the Vosges.*

3. No rule can be given for the gender of names of rivers.

II.—GENDER AS DETERMINED BY TERMINATION.

§ **50.** The gender of a substantive may often be ascertained from its final letter or letters; that is to say, rules can be laid down to the effect that words ending in such and such letters or combinations of letters are masculine, while those ending otherwise are feminine. These rules are, however, subject to so many exceptions that this method of determining the gender of a substantive is not altogether trustworthy. Only such rules and exceptions are here mentioned as are of practical use.

N.B.—Substantives (other than abstract) of which the gender may be ascertained by the rules already given are not dealt with in the following sections.

Consequently the rules for determining the gender of a substantive by its termination do not apply (except in the case of abstract substantives) to words of which the gender is already fixed by the meaning.

§ **51.** 1. Substantives are **masculine** which end in a **consonant.**

le cours, *the course.*	**le toit,** *the roof.*
le soleil, *the sun.*	**le vin,** *wine.*

EXCEPTIONS.—(*a*) The following are feminine:—

la clef, *the key.*	**la dent,** *the tooth.*
la nef, *the nave.*	**la dot,** *the dowry.*
la soif, *thirst.*	**la forêt,** *the forest.*
la faim, *hunger.*	**la mort,** *death.*
la fin, *the end.*	**la nuit,** *the night.*
la main, *the hand.*	**la part,** *the share.*
la chair, *the flesh.*	**la chaux,** *lime.*
la cour, *the court.*	**a faux,** *the scythe.*
la cuiller, *the spoon.*	**la croix,** *the cross.*
la mer, *the sea.*	**la noix,** *the nut.*
la tour, *the tower.*	**la voix,** *the voice.*
la fois, *the time.*	**la paix,** *peace.*
la vis, *the screw.*	**la toux,** *the cough.*

(*b*) Many substantives ending in -aison, -ion, -eur, are feminine, these being regarded as feminine terminations. A list of the masculine substantives thus ending is given in § 54.

§ 52. 2. Substantives are masculine which end in -a, -i, -o, -u, or -é not preceded by -t- or -ti-.

l'opéra, *the opera.*	**le numéro**, *the number.*
le cri, *the cry.*	**le chou**, *the cabbage.*
le jeu, *the game.*	**le café**, *coffee.*

EXCEPTIONS.—The following are feminine:—

la polka, *the polka.*	**la merci**, *mercy.*
la sépia, *sepia.*	**l'eau**, *water.*
la véranda, *the verandah.*	**la peau**, *the skin.*
la villa, *the villa.*	**la glu**, *bird-lime.*
la foi, *faith.*	**la tribu**, *the tribe.*
la loi, *the law.*	**la vertu**, *virtue.*
la paroi, *the partition.*	

§ 53. 3. Substantives with the following terminations in -e mute are also masculine:—

		EXCEPTIONS.
-aire.		
le dictionnaire, *the dictionary.*	Feminine.	**l'affaire**, *the affair.* **l'aire**, *the area.* **la chaire**, *the pulpit.* **la grammaire**, *grammar.* **la paire**, *the pair.*
-age.		
le voyage, *the voyage.*	Feminine.	**la cage**, *the cage.* **l'image**, *the image.* **la nage**, *swimming.* **la page**, *the page* (of a book). **la plage**, *the shore* **la rage**, *rage.*
-acte.		
le p te, *the agreement.*	Fem.—**la cataracte**, *the cataract.*	
-asme.		
le spasme, *the spasm.*		

-âtre. EXCEPTIONS.

le plâtre, *plaster.*

-aume.

le royaume, *the kingdom.*

-cle.

le siècle, *the century.*

Fem. { la débâcle, *the break-up* (of ice).
les besicles, *the eye-glasses.*

-ège.

le cortège, *the procession.*

-ème.

le système, *the system.*

-ême.

l'extrême, *the extreme.*

Fem. { la crême, *cream.*
la mi-carême, *mid-Lent.*

-isme.

le schisme, *the schism.*

-logue.

le dialogue, *the dialogue.*

-ome.

le tome, *the volume*

-ôme.

le diplôme, *the diploma.*

§ 54. 1. Substantives with the following terminations are feminine:—

-aison.

la maison, *the house.*

-ion. EXCEPTIONS.

la version, *the translation.*

Masc. { le million, *the million.*
le pion, *the pawn.*
le septentrion, *the north.*
le scorpion, *the scorpion.*

-eur.

la chaleur, *heat.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Masculine.
- le bonheur, *happiness.*
- le chœur, *the choir.*
- le cœur, *the heart.*
- le déshonneur, *dishonour.*
- l'équateur, *the equator.*
- l'honneur, *honour.*
- le labeur, *labour.*
- le malheur, *misfortune.*
- les pleurs, *the tears.*

Obs. It should be remembered that a great number of substantives in -eur denote male agents, and are therefore masculine by meaning; *e.g.* le fondateur, *the founder.*

-té.

la vérité, *the truth.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Masculine.
- l'aparté, *the aside.*
- l'arrêté, *the decree.*
- le comité, *the committee.*
- le comté, *the county.*
- le côté, *the side.*
- l'été, *summer.*
- le pâté, *the pie.*
- le traité, *the treaty.*

-tié.

la moitié, *the half.*

§ 55. 2. Substantives are feminine which have terminations in -e mute not already mentioned as masculine. The following are the most important. It will be observed that the majority of the examples are abstract nouns.

-ade.

la salade, *the salad.*

EXCEPTIONS.

-ance.

la constance, *constancy.*

-ence.

la diligence, *diligence.*

Masc.—le silence, *silence.*

	EXCEPTIONS.
-esse.	
la vitesse, *speed.*	
-ice.	
la justice, *justice.*	Masculine. le caprice, *caprice.* l'exercice, *exercise.* le préjudice, *harm.* le service, *service.* le supplice, *punishment.* le vice, *vice.*
-ie.	
la manie, *the mania.*	Masc. le foie, *the liver.* le génie, *genius.* l'incendie, *the conflagration.* le parapluie, *the umbrella.*
-ière.	
la prière, *the prayer*	Masc.—le cimetière, *the cemetery.*
-ise.	
la sottise, *folly.*	
-lle.	
la taille, *the waist.*	Masc.—l'intervalle, *the interval.*
-osse.	
la bosse, *the hump.*	Masc.—le carrosse, *the carriage.*
-rre.	
la terre, *the earth.*	Masculine. le beurre, *butter.* le leurre, *the lure.* le parterre, *the flower-garden.* le tonnerre, *the thunder.* le verre, *the glass.*
-ude.	
la servitude, *servitude.*	Masc.—le prélude, *the prelude.*
-ure.	
la blessure, *the wound.*	Masc. le murmure, *the murmur.* le parjure, *perjury.*

III.—GENDER AS DETERMINED BY DERIVATION.

§ **56.** By those who have a fair knowledge of Latin the gender of a French substantive is often more easily ascertained from the gender of its Latin original than by the arbitrary rules given in the preceding sections.

The following are the two main rules for determining gender by derivation; illustrations are given from each of the five Latin declensions, the sign < being used to denote "derived from":—

(A) Substantives which are masculine or neuter in Latin are masculine in French.

(B) Substantives which are feminine in Latin are feminine in French.

First Declension.

(A) (B)

la plage, *the shore* < **plagam** * (f.).

Second Declension.

le mur, *the wall* < **murum** (m.).
le maître, *the master* < **magistrum** (m.).
le silence, *silence* < **silentium** (n.).

Third Declension.

le chou, *the cabbage* < **caulem** (m.).
le pont, *the bridge* < **pontem** (m.).
le corps, *the body* < **corpus** (n.).
le cœur, *the heart* < **cor** (n.).
la faim, *hunger* < **famem** (f.).
l'image, *the image* < **imaginem** (f.).
la vertu, *virtue* < **virtutem** (f.).
la loi, *the law* < **legem** (f.).

Fourth Declension.

le grade, *the grade* < **gradum** (m.).
le cor, *the horn* < **cornu** (n.).
la tribu, *the tribe* < **tribum** (f.).
la main, *the hand* < **manum** (f.).

Fifth Declension.

le midi, *noon* **meridiem** (m.).
la foi, *faith* < **fidem** (f.).

* French substantives are mostly formed from the accusative, rather than the nominative, of Latin substantives.

§ **57.** A comparison of these examples with the rules for ascertaining gender by termination will make it clear that most exceptions to those rules are capable of explanation. The fact is that under the influence of phonetic laws words of totally dissimilar origin may come to have the same ending, and hence grouping by termination must be to a great extent artificial. Two examples will make this clear. We saw (§ 55) that **silence** is the only masculine substantive in **-ence**; when we observe that it is derived from the neuter *silentium*, while other substantives ending in **-ence** are from Latin feminines in *-entiam* (*e.g.* **diligence** < *diligentiam*), we are able to explain why it is an exception. Again, it was stated (§ 53) that substantives in **-age** are masculine; the reason is that they are derived, as a rule, from Latin neuters ending in *-aticum*; *e.g.* **ombrage** < *umbraticum*; **plage** and **image**, which are among the exceptions, come from the Latin feminines *plagam*, *imaginem*.

§ **58.** To the two broad rules enunciated (§ 56) there are some important exceptions. These may be grouped under three heads.

§ **59.** 1. In the transition from one language to the other a **levelling process** took place; *i.e.* substantives which were of exceptional gender in Latin were frequently assimilated to the larger and regular classes. Thus *dentem* (m.) gave the French **la dent**, while *porticum* (f.) gave the French **le porche**. The most important effect of this process is seen in the gender of names of trees. These were feminine in Latin, but as they usually ended in *-um* in the accusative singular, they have become masculine in French.

le frêne, *the ash* < **fraxinum** (f.),
l'orme, *the elm* < **ulmum** (f.).
l'arbre, *the tree* < **arborem** (f.).

§ **60.** 2. The neuter plural ending in **-a** was frequently mistaken for feminine singular; hence many neuter substantives, especially those which would by their meaning occur more frequently in the plural, have become feminine in French,

la corne, *the horn* < neut. pl. **cornua.**
la feuille, *the leaf* < „ **folia.**
la lèvre, *the lip* < „ **labra.**
la pomme, *the apple* < „ **poma.**

In some cases the Latin singular and the Latin plural have produced in French two words with different meanings, the first being masculine and the second feminine.

From the Latin Singular.	From the Latin Plural.
le bras, *the arm* < **brachium.**	**la brasse,** *the stretch of the arms* < **brachia.**
le cor, *the bugle* < **cornu.**	**la corne,** *the horn* < **cornua.**
le voile, *the veil* < **velum.**	**la voile,** *the sail* < **vela.**

§ **61.** 3. The tendency of French being to make all abstract substantives feminine, those in -eur, coming from Latin masculine substantives in *-orem*, have changed their gender.

la chaleur, *heat* < **calorem** (m.).
la couleur, *colour* < **colorem** (m.).
la douleur, *pain* < **dolorem** (m.).
la pâleur, *pallor* < **pallorem** (m.).

NOTE 1.—In the sixteenth century grammarians attempted to restore the original gender, but the change which they tried to effect has only survived in the words **honneur,** *honour*, **déshonneur,** *dishonour*, and **labeur,** *labour*, which are now masculine, and **amour,** *love*, which is masculine in the singular.

NOTE 2.—The two substantives **bonheur** and **malheur** do not belong to this category, being really compounds, formed from the neuter *bonum augurium* and *malum augurium*. The uncompounded word **heur,** *fortune*, still survives in the proverb **Il n'y a qu'heur et malheur en ce monde,** *All is chance in this world.* (The adjective **heureux,** *happy*, is also formed from **heur.**)

SUBSTANTIVES WITH VARYING GENDER.

§ **62.** The gender of many French substantives varies according to their meaning. In some cases two words of different origin have come to be spelt alike, each preserving its own gender ; in other cases a single word has developed two meanings, and is masculine in one sense, feminine in the other.

The most important substantives with varying gender are given below, arranged in two lists. The first list contains substantives which are masculine when they denote a male, and feminine in their other meaning. In the latter list the derivation is given where it accounts for the variation in gender.

§ 63. I.

	Masculine	Feminine.
aide	*assistant*	*female assistant, help*
aigle	*male eagle*	*female eagle, eagle* (standard)
cornette	*cornet* (officer)	*cavalry standard, mob-cap*
critique	*critic*	*criticism*
élève	*male pupil*	*female pupil*
enfant	*male child*	*female child*
enseigne	*ensign* (officer)	*ensign* (flag), *sign*
fourbe	*knave*	*knavery*
garde	*guard*	*guard* (collective), *keeping*
guide	*guide*	*rein*
manœuvre	*workman*	*manœuvre*
mousse	*ship-boy*	*moss, froth*
page	*page* (boy)	*page* (of a book)
paillasse	*clown*	*mattress*
pantomime	*mummer*	*pantomime*
politique	*politician*	*politics*
pupille	*ward*	*pupil* (of the eye)
statuaire	*sculptor*	*statuary* (abstract)
trompette	*trumpeter*	*trumpet*

§ 64. II.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
aune	*alder-tree* (L. **alnum**)	*ell* (Low L. **alenam**)
barbe	*Barbary horse*	*beard* (L. **barbam**)
coche	*coach*	*sow*
crêpe	*crape*	*pancake*
écho	*echo*	*Echo* (personified).
faux	*forgery* (L. **falsum**)	*scythe* (L. **falcem**)
livre	*book* (L. **lĭbrum**)	*pound* (L. **lībram**)
manche	*handle*	*sleeve* (**la Manche** = *the English Channel*)
martyre	*martyrdom*	*female martyr*
mémoire	*memoir, bill*	*memory*

	Masculine.	Feminine.
merci	*thanks*	*mercy*
mode	*mood, mode*	*fashion*
moule	*mould* (for casting)	*mussel*
office	*divine service*	*pantry*
pendule	*pendulum*	*clock*
physique	*physique, build*	*physics, natural science*
pique	*spade* (cards)	*pike, pique*
plane	*plane tree*	(carpenter's) *plane*
poêle	*pall* (L. **pensile**) / *stove*	*frying-pan* (L. **patellam**)
poste	*post, situation*	*mail, post-office*
pourpre	*purple* (colour)	*purple fabric, dignity*
somme	*nap* (L. **somnum**)	*sum, burden* (L. **summam**)
souris	*smile*	*mouse*
tour	*turn, trick, tour* (L. **tornum**)	*tower* (L. **turrim**)
vague	*space, vagueness*	*wave*
vase	*vase* (L. **vas**)	*mud*
voile	*veil* (L. **velum**)	*sail* (L. **vela**)

§ 65. A few substantives of varying gender need further explanation.

1. **amour**, *love*
   délice, *delight*
   orgue, *organ*
   are masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural.

un fol amour,	*a foolish love*	**de folles amours.**
un grand délice,	*a great delight*	**de grandes délices.**
un bel orgue,	*a fine organ*	**de belles orgues.**

When, however, **amour** means *the god of love*, it remains masculine in the plural.

Et vous, petits amours.
And you, little Cupids.

2. **Bourgogne** and **Champagne** are masculine when they denote the wine (**le vin de Bourgogne**, etc.), and feminine when they denote the province.

3. **Chose**, *thing*, is feminine; but the expression **quelque chose**, *something*, used as an indefinite pronoun, is masculine, or perhaps, strictly speaking, neuter (see § 277).

Demandez-moi quelque chose, et je vous le donnerai.
Ask me for something, and I will give it you.

4. **Couple**, *couple*, is masculine when it denotes two individuals united by some natural bond, feminine when it merely means *two*.

Un heureux couple.	**Une couple d'œufs.**
A happy pair.	*A couple of eggs.*

5. **Foudre**, *thunderbolt*, *lightning*, is feminine in its literal sense, but masculine when used metaphorically.

Un foudre d'éloquence.	**Il fut frappé de la foudre.**
An inspired orator.	*He was struck by lightning.*

6. **Gens** (plural), *people*.—Adjectives are feminine when they precede **gens**, masculine when they follow it.

Les vieilles gens sont soupçonneux.
Old people are suspicious.

The adjective **tous**, *all*, is an exception to this rule, being masculine before **gens**, unless an adjective having a distinct feminine form occurs between it and **gens**.

Tous les gens.	**Tous les braves gens.**
Every one.	*All courageous people.*
Tous les gens heureux.	**Toutes les bonnes gens.**
All fortunate people.	*All good people.*

NOTE 1.—When **gens** is followed by a qualifying genitive, it is always masculine; *e.g.* **Certains gens de lettres,** *Certain literary men.*

NOTE 2.—The singular **gent**, *race*, *tribe*, is practically obsolete.

NOTE 3.—An adjective, not immediately preceding **gens**, is masculine; *e.g.* **Heureux les gens qui . . .,** *Happy are they who . . .*

7. **Hymne**, *hymn*, is masculine in the secular, feminine in the ecclesiastical, sense.

Un hymne national.	**Une hymne de Wesley.**
A national anthem.	*One of Wesley's hymns.*

8. **Œuvre**, *work*, is usually feminine, but is masculine in the singular (*a*) in elevated language, (*b*) when it means the collected works of an engraver or composer, (*c*) when used of a piece of music referred to by number, (*d*) in the expressions **le gros œuvre,** *the outer walls*, and **le grand œuvre,** "*the great work*" (*i.e.* the search for the "philosopher's stone," which would turn all it touched into gold).

(*a*) **Consacrons-nous à ce saint œuvre.**
Let us devote ourselves to this sacred task.

(*b*) **L'œuvre entier de Mendelssohn.**
All the works of Mendelssohn.

(*c*) **L'œuvre quarante-sept de Beethoven est très beau.**
No. 47 of Beethoven's works (Beethoven, Op. 47) is very fine.

9. **Orge**, *barley*, is feminine except in the two expressions **orge mondé**, *hulled barley*, and **orge perlé**, *pearl barley*.

10. **Pâque**, *Passover*, is feminine; **Pâque** or (more usually) **Pâques**, *Easter*, is masculine, and is considered singular. In a few expressions, however, **Pâques** is feminine plural.

La Pâque des Juifs.
The Jewish Passover.

À Pâques prochain.
Next Easter.

Pâques fleuries.
Palm Sunday.

11. **Période**, *period*, is feminine in the sense of a division of time, but masculine when it means the culminating point.

La période du moyen âge.
The Middle Ages.

Au plus haut période de la prospérité de Rome.
At the highest point of the prosperity of Rome.

12. **Personne**, *person*, is feminine when it is a substantive; but the pronoun **personne**, *any one* or (with a negative) *no one*, is masculine.

Une personne aimable.
An amiable person.

Personne n'est parfait.
No one is perfect.

13. **Vapeur**, *steam*, is feminine; but when used elliptically for **bateau à vapeur**, *steam-boat*, it is masculine.

CHAPTER V.—PLURAL OF SUBSTANTIVES.

I.—MODES OF FORMING THE PLURAL.

§ 66. General Rule.—The plural of substantives is formed in French (as in English) by the addition of -s to the singular.

la mère, *the mother.*	**les mères**, *the mothers.*
l'enfant, *the child.*	**les enfants**, *the children.*
l'être, *the being.*	**les êtres**, *the beings.*
le sillon, *the furrow.*	**les sillons**, *the furrows.*

§ 67. There are a few classes of exceptions, and in some cases it is necessary to commit lists to memory.

§ 68. 1. Substantives ending in -s, -x, or -z do not change in the plural.

le fils, *the son.*	**les fils**, *the sons.*
la voix, *the voice.*	**les voix**, *the voices.*
le nez, *the nose.*	**les nez**, *the noses.*

§ 69. 2. Substantives ending in -au or -eu form their plural by adding -x.

le couteau, *the knife.*	**les couteaux**, *the knives.*
le tuyau, *the tube.*	**les tuyaux**, *the tubes.*
le neveu, *the nephew.*	**les neveux**, *the nephews.*
le vœu, *the vow.*	**les vœux**, *the vows.*

Note. The foreign word **landau**, *landau*, forms its plural, **landaus**, in accordance with the general rule.

§ 70. 3. Substantives ending in -al change -al into -aux in the plural.

le cheval, *the horse.*	**les chevaux**, *the horses.*
le journal, *the newspaper.*	**les journaux**, *the newspapers.*

NOTE.—The following and a few rarer substantives in -al follow the general rule and add -s :—

le bal, *the dance.*	**le festival**, *the festival.*
le carnaval, *the carnival.*	**le pal**, *the stake.*
le chacal, *the jackal.*	**le régal**, *the treat.*

§ **71.** 4. Seven substantives ending in -ou form their plural by adding -x.

le bijou, *the jewel.*	**le genou**, *the knee.*
le caillou, *the pebble.*	**le hibou**, *the owl.*
le chou, *the cabbage.*	**le joujou**, *the plaything.*

le pou, *the louse.*

Obs. All other substantives ending in -ou follow the general rule and add -s ; *e.g.* le verrou, *the bolt*, has plural les verrous.

§ **72.** 5. Seven substantives ending in -ail form their plural by changing -ail into -aux.

le bail, *the lease.*	**le soupirail**, *the air-hole.*
le corail, *the coral.*	**le travail**, *work.*
l'émail, *the enamel.*	**le vantail**, *the folding door.*

le vitrail, *the stained-glass window.*

Obs. All other substantives ending in -ail follow the general rule and add -s ; *e.g.* l'éventail, *the fan*, has plural les éventails.

§ **73.** It should be noticed that it is the rule for words in -au, eu, to take -x, but the exception for words in -ou ; and similarly that it is the rule for words in -al to form the plural in -aux, but the exception for words in -ail.

§ **74.** Gent, *race* (§ 65, 6) has plural gens, *people.*

II.—SUBSTANTIVES WITH TWO PLURALS.

§ **75.** The following masculine substantives have **two** plural forms with different meanings.

Singular.		Plural
ail, *garlic*	**aulx**, *cloves of garlic*	**ails**, *kinds of garlic* (botany)
aïeul, *grandfather, ancestor*	**aïeux**, *ancestors*	**aïeuls**, *grandfathers*
œil, *eye*	**yeux**, *eyes*	**œils**, used only in compounds, *e.g.* **œils-de-bœuf**, *oval-windows* **œils-de-chat**, *cat's-eyes* (gems)
ciel, *sky*	**cieux**, *skies, heavens*	**ciels**, *climates, skies* (in pictures) **ciels de lit**, *canopies*
travail, *work*	**travaux**, *works*	**travails**, *reports* of a minister; or *brakes, i.e.* stalls for shoeing vicious horses

Obs. In each case the irregular form is that in ordinary use, while (with the exception of **aïeuls**) the form with **-s** has some special meaning.

III.—SUBSTANTIVES WITH NO PLURAL FORM.

§ **76.** Names of metals, materials, aromatics, arts, sciences, and abstract qualities, do not as a rule occur in the plural. Examples of such substantives are:—

le fer, *iron.*	**la musique**, *music.*
la moutarde, *mustard.*	**la chimie**, *chemistry.*
l'encens, *frankincense.*	**la charité**, *charity.*

NOTE 1.—The use in the plural of abstract substantives which denote mental or moral conditions is, however, much more common in French than in English, especially in the classic dramatists (Racine, Corneille, Molière, etc.). Thus we find **les ardeurs, les fureurs, les bassesses, les bontés,** etc.

NOTE 2.—Names of metals, etc., can be used in the plural in the language of commerce; *e.g.* **Les prix des aciers, des fers, et des cuivres ont beaucoup augmenté.** *Steel, iron, and copper have gone up.* These substantives are also found in the plural when used in some special or metaphorical sense; *e.g.* **les bronzes,** *bronzes;* **les fers,** *fetters.*

NOTE 3.—Phrases, letters of the alphabet, and parts of speech other than substantives may, when employed as substantives, be used in the plural, but have no plural form.

Les pour et les contre.
The pros and cons.

Ce sont des on-dit.
That is mere gossip.

Dans le mot Novogorod il y a quatre o.
There are four o's in the word Novogorod.

IV.—SUBSTANTIVES WITH NO SINGULAR FORM.

§ **77**. There are many French substantives which, like the English *billiards*, *arrears*, *scissors*, are essentially plural in form, though some are occasionally used in the singular. The following are the most important words of this class:—

aborigènes (m.), *aborigines.*
alentours (m.), *neighbourhood.*
ancêtres (m.), *ancestors.*
annales (f.), *annals.*
archives (f.), *archives.*
arrhes (f.), *earnest-money.*
besicles (f.), *eye-glasses.*
bestiaux (m.), *cattle.*
broussailles (f.), *brushwood.*
catacombes (f.), *catacombs.*
décombres (m.), *rubbish.*
dépens (m.), *costs.*
entrailles (f.), *entrails.*
environs (m.), *neighbourhood.*
épousailles (f.), *wedding.*
fastes (m.), *annals.*
frais (m.), *expenses.*
funérailles (f.), *funeral.*
mânes (m.), *ghost* (L. **manes**).
matériaux (m.), *materials.*
mathématiques (f.), *mathematics.*
mœurs (f.) *morals.*
mouchettes (f.), *snuffers.*
obsèques (f.), *obsequies.*
pierreries (f.) *jewelry.*
pleurs (m.), *tears.*
prémices (f.), *first-fruits.*
prémisses (f.), *premises* (in logic).
saturnales (f.), *saturnalia* (Roman festival).
ténèbres (f.), *darkness.*
vêpres (f.), *vespers.*
vivres (m.), *provisions.*

NOTE 1.—Names of sciences which in English end in *-ics* are singular in French, with the exception of **les mathématiques**; *e.g.* **la politique**, *politics;* **la statique**, *statics.*

NOTE 2.—**Bestiaux** is the plural of the old French adjective **bestial**, which latter survives under the form **bétail**. Both words mean *cattle*, but **bestiaux** is generally used in reference to larger domestic animals.

V.—SUBSTANTIVES WITH VARIANT MEANING IN THE PLURAL.

§ **78.** A few substantives which are found both in the singular and in the plural, have in the latter a special meaning besides that which appears in the singular. Thus ciseau, *chisel*, has the plural ciseaux, which besides meaning *chisels*, is the French for *scissors*. The following are the most important:—

arrêt (m.), *decree*	**arrêts** { *arrest* (military) / *detention* (school)
assise (f.), *stratum*	**assises**, *assizes*
ciseau (m.), *chisel*	**ciseaux**, *scissors*
effet (m.), *effect*	**effets**, *goods and chattels*
gage (m.), *pledge*	**gages**, *wages*
lettre (f.), *letter*	**lettres**, *literature*
lunette (f.), *telescope*	**lunettes**, *spectacles*
vacance (f.), *vacancy*	**vacances**, *holidays*

VI.—PLURAL OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

§ **79.** The French, like the English, have borrowed words extensively from other languages. Words thus introduced, if of long standing, have now in some cases assumed a French character, and form their plural in the ordinary way. Others, of more recent importation, remain invariable. Lastly, others have retained their foreign form in the plural as well as in the singular. A few examples, grouped under these three heads, are here given.

§ **80.** 1. Foreign Substantives which take **S** in the Plural.

un album, *an album*	**des albums**
un andante, *an andante*	**des andantes**
un bifteck, *a beef-steak*	**des biftecks**
un budget, *a budget*	**des budgets**
un factotum, *a factotum*	**des factotums**
un opéra, *an opera*	**des opéras**
un piano, *a piano*	**des pianos**
un rail, *a rail*	**des rails**
un toast, *a toast*	**des toasts**
un tramway, *a tram*	**des tramways**

§ 81. 2. FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES WHICH TAKE NO PLURAL SIGN.

un amen, *an amen*	**des amen**
un credo, *a creed*	**des credo**
un fac-similé, *a fac-simile*	**des fac-similé**
un pater, *a paternoster*	**des pater**
un post-scriptum, *a postscript*	**des post-scriptum**
un requiem, *a requiem*	**des requiem**
un Te Deum, *a Te Deum*	**des Te Deum**
un veto, *a veto*	**des veto**

§ 82. 3. FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES WHICH RETAIN THEIR ORIGINAL PLURAL.

un alderman, *an alderman*	**des aldermen**
un dilettante, *a dilettante*	**des dilettanti**
un gentleman, *a gentleman*	**des gentlemen**
un (une) gipsy, *a gipsy*	**des gipsies**
une lady, *a lady*	**des ladies**
un lazzarone, *a Neapolitan beggar*	**des lazzaroni**
un tory, *a tory*	**des torys**, *tories*

VII.—PLURAL OF PROPER NAMES.

§ **83**. 1. Proper names do not take the sign of the plural when they stand for individuals.

Les deux Corneille sont nés à Rouen.
The two Corneilles were born at Rouen.

Allez-vous jamais chez les Dupont ?
Do you ever visit the Duponts ?

§ **84**. 2. Sometimes, in elevated language, proper names are preceded by the plural article for the sake of effect, although only a single individual is referred to.

Les Corneille et les Racine ont illustré la scène française.
Corneille and Racine have adorned the French stage.

§ **85**. Proper names take the sign of the plural (1) when great historic families are referred to; (2) when they stand for types, and not for individuals; (3) when the names of artists, writers, etc., are used to denote their works.

(1) **Les Guelfes et les Gibelins étaient toujours en désaccord.**
The Guelphs and Ghibellines were always at variance.

(2) **Un Auguste aisément peut faire des Virgiles.**
An Augustus can easily create Vergils.

La France a eu ses Césars et ses Pompées.
France has had her Caesars and Pompeys.

(3) **La Galerie Nationale possède plusieurs Raphaëls.**
The National Gallery contains several Raphaëls.

§ **86**. Names of countries take -s when used in the plural.

Les deux Amériques.	**Les Indes.**
The two Americas.	*The Indies.*

CHAPTER VI.—THE FEMININE OF SUBSTANTIVES.

§ **87**. Every French substantive being either masculine or feminine, a masculine substantive cannot, strictly speaking, have a feminine form, nor *vice versâ* can a feminine substantive have a masculine form. In the case, however, of pairs of substantives which have the same meaning in every respect, except that they denote different sexes (*e.g.* **lion**, *lion;* **lionne**, *lioness*), it is customary to regard each member of the pair as the masculine or feminine form of the other member; *e.g.* we speak of **maîtresse**, *mistress*, as the feminine of **maître**, *master*, and of **duc**, *duke*, as the masculine of **duchesse**, *duchess*.

In the following sections rules are given by which feminine substantives are formed from the corresponding masculine; these are followed by a list of pairs in which the feminine is formed irregularly or is a word of different origin.

NOTE.—Some French grammarians apply the same phraseology to pairs of masculine and feminine substantives of somewhat similar form denoting sexless objects; *e.g.* they call **journée** (*a day's work*) the feminine of **jour** (*day*), and **salon**, *drawing-room*, the masculine of **salle**, *hall*.

§ **88**. 1. GENERAL RULE.—Substantives denoting **females** are formed by the addition of **-e** mute to the word denoting the corresponding male.

Masculine.	Feminine.
ami, *friend*	**amie** *
marchand, *shopkeeper*	**marchande**
marquis, *marquis*	**marquise**, *marchioness*
ours, *he-bear*	**ourse**, *she-bear*

* In cases where the meaning of the French feminine substantive is not given, the same word serves in English to denote both the male and the female.

§ **89.** 2. Substantives which in the feminine form would otherwise have an unaccented -e- in the penultimate * syllable, change it to open -e- by means of a grave accent.

Masculine.	Feminine.
berger, *shepherd*	**bergère,** *shepherdess*
écolier, *schoolboy*	**écolière,** *schoolgirl*

§ **90.** 3. If the masculine ends in -n or -t preceded by a vowel, this letter is doubled before the -e mute of the feminine.

Masculine.	Feminine.
baron, *baron*	**baronne,** *baroness*
chat, *cat*	**chatte**
lion, *lion*	**lionne,** *lioness*
paysan, *peasant*	**paysanne,** *peasant woman*

Except—

cousin, *cousin*	**cousine**
orphelin, *orphan*	**orpheline**

§ **91.** 4. In the case of masculine substantives denoting males and ending in -e mute, the corresponding feminine is identical in form with the masculine, except in the case of the words given in the next section.

Masculine.	Feminine.
élève, *pupil*	**élève**
esclave, *slave*	**esclave**

§ **92.** 5. From the following masculines in -e mute the feminine is formed by changing this -e mute into -esse :—

Masculine	Feminine.
âne, *he-ass*	**ânesse,** *she-ass*
borgne, *one-eyed man*	†**borgnesse,** *one-eyed woman*
chanoine, *canon*	**chanoinesse,** *canoness*
comte, *count*	**comtesse,** *countess*
druide, *druid*	**druidesse,** *druidess*
hôte, *host*	**hôtesse,** *hostess*
ivrogne, *drunkard*	**ivrognesse**
maître, *master*	**maîtresse,** *mistress*
nègre, *negro*	**négresse,** *negress*

* The final -e mute counts as a syllable in French.

† **Borgne, pauvre,** and **Suisse,** when used as adjectives, remain unchanged in the feminine.

Masculine.	Feminine.
ogre, *ogre*	**ogresse**, *ogress*
pauvre, *pauper*	**pauvresse**
prêtre, *priest*	**prêtresse**, *priestess*
prophète, *prophet*	**prophétesse**, *prophetess*
prince, *prince*	**princesse**, *princess*
Suisse, *Swiss*	**Suissesse**
tigre, *tiger*	**tigresse**, *tigress*
traître, *traitor*	**traîtresse**, *traitress*
vicomte, *viscount*	**vicomtesse**, *viscountess*

§ **93**. 6. From the following masculines not ending in -e mute feminines are formed by the addition of -esse, in many cases with more or less modification of the stem.

Masculine.	Feminine.
abbé, *abbot*	**abbesse**, *abbess*
devin, *soothsayer*	**devineresse**
diacre, *deacon*	**diaconesse**, *deaconess*
dieu, *god*	**déesse**, *goddess*
duc, *duke*	**duchesse**, *duchess*
larron, *thief*	**larronnesse**
pair, *peer*	**pairesse**, *peeress*

§ **94**. 7. From substantives in **-eur** feminines are formed in four different ways. As many of them are also employed as adjectives, the following rules are to be taken as applying also to the formation of the feminine of adjectives which end in **-eur** in the masculine.

§ **95**. (i) Words derived from **Latin comparative adjectives** add -e mute according to the general rule. These are—

Masculine.	Feminine.
antérieur (anteriorem)	**antérieure** *prior*
citérieur (citeriorem)	**citérieure** *hither*
extérieur (exteriorem)	**extérieure** *outer*
inférieur (inferiorem)	**inférieure** *lower*
intérieur (interiorem)	**intérieure** *inner*
majeur (maiorem)	**majeure** *major*
meilleur (meliorem)	**meilleure** *better*
mineur (minorem)	**mineure** *minor*
supérieur (superiorem)	**supérieure** *superior*

§ **96.** (ii) Words formed from the stems of **present participles** change **-eur** into **-euse.**

Masculine.	Feminine.
buveur, *drinker*	**buveuse**
danseur, *dancer*	**danseuse**
devineur, *guesser*	**devineuse**
pêcheur, *fisherman*	**pêcheuse,** *fisherwoman*

§ **97.** (iii) Words in **-teur** derived from Latin substantives in **-tor(em)** change **-teur** into **-trice.**

Masculine.	Feminine.
acteur, *actor*	**actrice,** *actress*
bienfaiteur, *benefactor*	**bienfaitrice,** *benefactress*
instituteur, *teacher*	**institutrice**
protecteur, *protector*	**protectrice,** *protectress*

NOTE.—The following four substantives, whose stems are identical with those of present participles, also belong to this class.

Masculine.	Feminine.
exécuteur, *executor*	**exécutrice,** *executrix*
inspecteur, *inspector*	**inspectrice**
inventeur, *inventor*	**inventrice**
persécuteur, *persecutor*	**persécutrice**

Obs. A few exceptions to the last two rules are given in § 99.

§ **98.** (iv) A few substantives and adjectives in **-eur** formed the feminine by the addition of **-esse** to the final **-eur.** The **-eur** becoming atonic (*i.e.* unaccented) was weakened to **-er** and the ending **-eresse** was thus produced. Most of these words have also the form in **-euse,** that in **-eresse** being restricted to some special meaning.

Masculine.	Feminine.
bailleur, *lessor*	**bailleresse**
chasseur, *hunter*	**chasseuse,** *huntress* **chasseresse** (poetical)
défendeur, *defendant*	**défenderesse**
demandeur, *beggar, plaintiff*	**demandeuse,** *beggar* **demanderesse,** *plaintiff*
enchanteur, *enchanter*	**enchanteresse,** *enchantress*
pêcheur, *sinner*	**pêcheresse**
vendeur, *seller*	**vendeuse** or **venderesse**
vengeur, *avenger*	**vengeresse**

NOTE.—With these may be conveniently classed :—

Masculine.	Feminine
débiteur, *newsmonger, debtor*	débiteuse, *newsmonger* débitrice, *debtor*
chanteur, *singer*	chanteuse cantatrice, *noted professional singer*

§ 99. In the following pairs of substantives the masculine and feminine come from the same stem, but present various irregularities :—

Masculine.	Feminine.
bailli, *bailiff*	baillive
caneton, *duckling*	canette
chameau, *camel*	chamelle
cheval, *horse*	cavale, *mare* (poetical)
chevreuil, *roe-buck*	chevrette, *roe*
daim, *buck*	daine, *doe*
empereur, *emperor*	impératrice, *empress*
époux, *husband*	épouse, *wife*
fils, *son*	fille, *daughter*
gouverneur, *governor*	gouvernante, *governess*
héros,* *hero*	héroïne, *heroine*
jouvenceau, *lad*	jouvencelle, *lass*
jumeau, *twin*	jumelle
Juif, *Jew*	Juive, *Jewess*
lévrier, *greyhound*	levrette
loup, *wolf*	louve
neveu, *nephew*	nièce, *niece*
pastoureau, *shepherd-boy*	pastourelle, *shepherd-girl*
perroquet, *parrot*	perruche
poulain, *colt*	pouliche, *filly*
procureur, *proxy*	procuratrice
roi, *king*	reine, *queen*
serviteur, *servant*	servante
tsar, *czar*	tsarine, *czarina*
veuf, *widower*	veuve, *widow*

* The **h** aspirate (§ 15) of **héros**, becomes mute in its derivatives; thus, we write **le héros**, but **l'héroïne, l'héroïsme**, etc.

§ **100**. In the following pairs of substantives the masculine form is longer than the feminine :—

Masculine.	Feminine.
canard, *drake*	**cane**, *duck*
cochon, *pig*	**coche**, *sow*
compagnon, *companion*	**compagne**
dindon, *turkey-cock*	**dinde**, *turkey-hen*
mulet, *mule*	**mule**
nourricier, *foster-father*	**nourrice**, *nurse*
vieillard, *old man*	**vieille**, *old woman*

Obs. It might appear at first sight that in these pairs of substantives the masculine has been formed from the feminine. Such is not always the case. The old French forms have disappeared, their places being supplied by derivatives. Thus, for example, **mulet** is the diminutive of the old French **mul** : **vieillard** has been formed from **vieil** by means of the suffix **-ard**, which is met with in the English words *sluggard*, *dastard*, etc. ; **compagnon** is the accusative (**companionem**) of the old French nominative **compain**. **Nourricier** is, however, derived from the feminine **nourrice**, like the English *widower* from *widow*.

§ **101**. The following pairs of substantives are of totally different origin :—

Masculine.	Feminine.
bélier, *ram*	**brebis**, *ewe*
bœuf, *ox* } **taureau**, *bull* }	**vache**, *cow*
bouc, *he-goat*	**chèvre**, *she-goat*
cerf, *stag*	**biche**, *hind*
coq, *cock*	**poule**, *hen*
étalon, *stallion*	**jument**, *mare*
frère, *brother*	**sœur**, *sister*
garçon, *boy*	**fille**, *girl*
gendre, *son-in-law*	**bru**, *daughter-in-law*
homme, *man*	**femme**, *woman*
jars, *gander*	**oie**, *goose*
lièvre, *hare*	**hase**
mari, *husband*	**femme**, *wife*
oncle, *uncle*	**tante**, *aunt*
papa, *papa*	**maman**, *mamma*

parrain, *godfather*	**marraine**, *godmother*
père, *father*	**mère**, *mother*
sanglier, *wild boar*	**laie**, *wild sow*
singe, *monkey*	**guenon**
verrat, *boar*	**truie**, *sow*

Obs. It has been seen (§§ 45, 47) that many English substantives of common gender, including most of the names of animals, are represented in French by substantives with a fixed gender, and that distinction of sex must in such cases be expressed in French by the use of the words **mâle** and **femelle**; *e.g.*:—

un serpent mâle	**un serpent femelle**
une souris mâle	**une souris femelle**

Generally speaking, the corresponding masculine and feminine forms exist only in the case of those animals with which man is most familiar.

CHAPTER VII.—QUALIFYING ADJECTIVES.

§ **102**. Adjectives in French may be conveniently divided into qualifying adjectives and determining adjectives. The latter class can be subdivided into numeral, possessive, demonstrative, interrogative, and indefinite adjectives.

Examples of qualifying adjectives:—

bon, *good.*	malheureux, *unfortunate.*
cher, *dear.*	vraisemblable, *probable.*

Examples of determining adjectives:—

Numeral:	vingt, *twenty.*	vingtième, *twentieth.*
Possessive:	mon, *my.*	leur, *their.*
Demonstrative:	ce, *this* or *that.*	
Interrogative:	quel? *which?*	
Indefinite:	chaque, *each.*	quelque, *some.*

In this chapter qualifying adjectives only are treated; determining adjectives are dealt with in Chapter VIII.

Obs. The French equivalents for most English adjectives of quantity (*much, many, few,* etc.) are classed by French grammarians as **adverbs of quantity,** since they do not immediately precede the substantive which they limit, but are followed by the preposition **de.**

I.—AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **103**. A qualifying adjective usually has four forms: masculine singular (*e.g.* petit), feminine singular (*e.g.* petite), masculine plural (*e.g.* petits), feminine plural (*e.g.* petites). The first-named is the simple word, as given in dictionaries, etc.; the others are formed from it by means of suffixes.

With a masculine substantive in the singular, the masculine singular of the adjective must be used; *e.g.* un joli garçon, *a pretty boy.* With a masculine substantive in the plural, the masculine plural of the adjective must be used; *e.g.* de jolis garçons, *pretty boys.*

With a feminine substantive in the singular, the feminine singular of the adjective must be used; *e.g.* une jolie fille, *a pretty girl.* With a feminine substantive in the plural, the feminine plural of the adjective must be used; *e.g.* de jolies filles, *pretty girls.*

In other words, an adjective agrees with its substantive in gender and number.

Qualifying adjectives can be used either attributively or predicatively.

Un bon père, *a good father.*
Une robe bleue, *a blue dress.* } Attributive use.

Le père est bon, *the father is good.*
La robe est bleue, *the dress is blue.* } Predicative use.

§ **104.** When an adjective qualifies two or more substantives of different gender, it is put in the masculine plural.

Lui et sa femme sont également actifs.
He and his wife are equally active.

§ **105.** Substantives used as adjectives to denote colour are invariable both for gender and number.

des reflets orange, *orange gleams.*
des robes paille, *straw-coloured gowns.*
des rubans cerise, *cherry-coloured ribbons.*

§ **106.** The adjectives nu, *naked, bare,* and demi, *half,* when placed before a substantive and united to it by a hyphen, remain invariable. In all other cases they agree in gender and number with the substantive which they qualify.

Une demi-heure.	**Une heure et demie.**
Half an hour.	*An hour and a half.*
Aller nu-pieds.	**Aller (les) pieds nus.**
To go barefoot.	*To go barefoot.*

La nue propriété.
Possession of property without enjoyment of its revenue.

Obs. When **demi** and **nu** are thus united to a substantive by a hyphen they may be regarded as invariable prefixes.

§ **107.** The adjective feu, *late, deceased,* is sometimes placed before the definite article and is then invariable; otherwise it agrees with its substantive.

Feu la reine.
La feue reine. } *The late queen.*

§ **108.** Many **past participles,** used absolutely, have acquired a prepositional force. They remain invariable when they precede the substantive which they qualify and commence the sentence. Such are: **ci-inclus, ci-joint,** *enclosed* ; **non-compris,** *not included* ; **excepté,** *except* ; **supposé,** *granted.*

Ci-inclus les pièces dont vous avez besoin.
Enclosed are the documents which you require.

Je crois que vous avez besoin des pièces ci-incluses.
I believe you require the enclosed documents.

Obs. The past participle **hormis,** *except* (**hors mis,** *put out*), and the adjective **sauf,** *save, except,* have ceased to be regarded as adjectives, and are now always invariable.

II.—THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **109.** 1. General Rule. — The feminine singular of adjectives is formed by the addition of -e mute to the masculine singular.

Masculine.	Feminine.	
âgé	**âgée**	*old*
brun	**brune**	*brown*
grand	**grande**	*great, tall*
méchant	**méchante**	*naughty*
persan	**persane**	*Persian*
poli	**polie**	*polite*
vrai	**vraie**	*true*

For the feminine of adjectives ending in -eur, see §§ 94—98.

Obs. The above rule is the same as that which has already been given for such masculine substantives as by their meaning are capable of having a corresponding feminine form. Indeed, many of the words given as examples in Chapter VI. can be used either as substantives or as adjectives. In this chapter only such words as are purely adjectival are considered.

§ **110.** 2. Adjectives which in the masculine singular end in -e mute retain the same form in the feminine.

Masculine.	Feminine.	
belge	**belge**	*Belgian*
jeune	**jeune**	*young*
large	**large**	*broad*
russe	**russe**	*Russian*

Obs. It will be seen that here there is a considerable divergence between substantives and adjectives. From most masculine substantives ending in **-e** mute the corresponding feminine substantive is formed by adding **-sse** ; so, too, the adjective **traître,** *treacherous,* has feminine **traîtresse.**

§ **111.** 3. All adjectives ending in -er, and eight adjectives ending in -et, take the grave accent over the penultimate -e- in the feminine.

Masculine.	Feminine.	
amer	**amère**	*bitter*
cher	**chère**	*dear*
léger	**légère**	*light*
premier	**première**	*first*
complet	**complète**	*complete*
concret	**concrète**	*concrete*
discret	**discrète**	*discreet*
incomplet	**incomplète**	*incomplete*
indiscret	**indiscrète**	*indiscreet*
inquiet	**inquiète**	*anxious*
replet	**replète**	*corpulent*
secret	**secrète**	*secret*

§ **112.** 4. Adjectives ending in -gu in the masculine singular form their feminine in -guë.

Masculine.	Feminine.	
aigu	**aiguë**	*acute*
ambigu	**ambiguë**	*ambiguous*
contigu	**contiguë**	*contiguous*
exigu	**exiguë**	*scanty*

Obs. The diaeresis over the **e** (ë) indicates that **gu** and **e** are separate syllables ; hence **u** has its ordinary sound, and is not merely used to harden the sound of **g** (§ 15). Compare the values of **u** in the English words *ague* and *league,* though we do not use the diaeresis to mark the pronunciation of the former word.

§ **113**. 5. Adjectives ending in **-c** in the masculine form their feminine in (*a*) **-che**, (*b*) **-que**.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	
(*a*)	**blanc**	**blanche**	*white*
	franc	**franche**	*frank*
	sec	**sèche**	*dry*
(*b*)	**caduc**	**caduque**	*decrepit*
	franc	**franque**	*Frankish*
	public	**publique**	*public*
	turc	**turque**	*Turkish*

Obs. 1. This change is for the purpose of preserving the hard sound of the **c**, which would be soft before **-e** (§ 15).

Obs. 2. The adjective **grec**, *Greek*, has the feminine form **grecque**, the **-c-** being retained to preserve the open sound of the **-e-**.

§ **114**. 6. Adjectives ending in **-f** or **-x** in the masculine change this to **-ve**, **-se** respectively in the feminine.

Masculine.	Feminine.	
actif	**active**	*active*
bref	**brève**	*short*
craintif	**craintive**	*timid*
neuf	**neuve**	*new*
heureux	**heureuse**	*happy*
jaloux	**jalouse**	*jealous*
paresseux	**paresseuse**	*idle*
vertueux	**vertueuse**	*virtuous*

NOTE.—The following adjectives ending in **-x** are exceptions to the general rule:—

Masculine.	Feminine.	
doux	**douce**	*sweet*
faux	**fausse**	*false*
roux	**rousse**	*red*
vieux	**vieille**	*old*

§ **115**. 7. Adjectives with the following terminations double the final consonant before **-e** mute in the feminine:—

(*a*) **-el**, **-eil**, **-ol**;
(*b*) **-en**, **-on**;
(*c*) **-et**.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	
(*a*)	**cruel**	**cruelle**	*cruel*
	pareil	**pareille**	*like*
	fol (see § 116)	**folle**	*mad*
(*b*)	**ancien**	**ancienne**	*ancient*
	bon	**bonne**	*good*
(*c*)	**muet**	**muette**	*dumb*
	net	**nette**	*clear*

NOTE 1.—The eight adjectives in **-et** given in § 111 form the feminine in **-ète.**

NOTE 2.—As a rule, adjectives in **-ot** form their feminine by the addition of **-e** mute only.

Masculine.	Feminine.	
bigot	**bigote**	*bigoted*
cagot	**cagote**	*hypocritical*
dévot	**dévote**	*devout*

NOTE 3.—**Sot**, *foolish*, and **vieillot**, *oldish*, have feminine forms **sotte** and **vieillotte.**

§ **116**. 8. Five adjectives have a **double form** for the masculine singular; they are—

Masculine.		Feminine.	
Before consonant or **h** aspirate.	Before vowel or **h** mute.		
beau	**bel**	**belle**	*beautiful*
nouveau	**nouvel**	**nouvelle**	*new*
fou	**fol**	**folle**	*mad*
mou	**mol**	**molle**	*soft*
vieux	**vieil**	**vieille**	*old*

EXAMPLES: **un beau garçon,** *a handsome boy.*
une belle fille, „ *girl.*
un bel enfant, „ *child.*
un bel homme, „ *man.*

Obs. It will be seen that the feminine is formed from the second masculine form, which is in reality the older; *e.g.* **bel**, from Lat. *bellum* (adj.), **mol** from *mollem*, etc. These forms are only used before **a substantive.**

§ 117. 9. The adjective **hébreu**, *Hebrew*, has no feminine, but **hébraïque** is used instead.

Un livre hébreu.	**La langue hébraïque.**
A Hebrew book.	*The Hebrew language.*

§ **118**. 10. The following list comprises all adjectives which neither obey the general rule nor come under the heads already mentioned :—

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
coi	**coite**	*quiet, snug*	**gros**	**grosse**	*big*
favori	**favorite**	*favourite*	**épais**	**épaisse**	*thick*
jumeau	**jumelle**	*twin*	**exprès**	**expresse**	*express*
gentil	**gentille**	*pretty*	**profès**	**professe**	*professed*
nul	**nulle**	*null*	**absous**	**absoute**	*absolved*
bénin	**bénigne**	*benign*	**dissous**	**dissoute**	*dissolved*
malin	**maligne**	*malignant*	**tiers**	**tierce**	*third*
bas	**basse**	*low*	**frais**	**fraîche**	*fresh*
gras	**grasse**	*fat*	**long**	**longue**	*long*
las	**lasse**	*tired*			

§ **119**. 11. The feminine of grand is now grande, but in old French it was the same as the masculine. This form survives in a number of words, such as grand'mère, where the apostrophe is a grammatical blunder (see § 194). Many of these words are only used in particular expressions.

ce n'est pas grand'chose	*'tis no great thing*
avoir grand'faim	*to be very hungry*
une grand'maman	*a grandmamma*
une grand'mère	*a grandmother*
une grand'messe	*high mass*
à grand'peine	*with great trouble*
avoir grand'peur	*to be very frightened*
une grand'route	*a highway*
avoir grand'soif	*to be very thirsty*
une grand'tante	*a great aunt*

Obs. Apart from such special expressions grand is always variable.

Une grande chose.	**Une grande peur.**
A great thing.	*A great fright.*

III.—THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

§ **120**. 1. General Rule.—The masculine plural of adjectives is formed by adding **-s** to the masculine singular; the feminine plural of adjectives is formed by adding **-s** to the feminine singular.

	Singular.	Plural.	
Masc.	**grand**	**grands**	*great*
Fem.	**grande**	**grandes**	
Masc.	**actif**	**actifs**	*active*
Fem.	**active**	**actives**	
Masc.	**sec**	**secs**	*dry*
Fem.	**sèche**	**sèches**	

un grand roi, *a great king* — **de grands rois**, *great kings*
une grande reine, *a great queen* — **de grandes reines**, *great queens*

Obs. The rule as to the formation of the masculine plural admits of some exceptions; to the rule as to the formation of the feminine plural there is no exception whatever.

§ **121**. 2. Adjectives ending in **-s** or **-x** in the masculine singular remain unchanged in the masculine plural.

	Singular.	Plural.	
Masc.	**épais**	**épais**	*thick*
Fem.	**épaisse**	**épaisses**	
Masc.	**jaloux**	**jaloux**	*jealous*
Fem.	**jalouse**	**jalouses**	

un homme jaloux, *a jealous man.*
des hommes jaloux, *jealous men.*

§ **122**. 3. Adjectives ending in **-eau** in the masculine singular form the masculine plural by the addition of **-x**.

Masc. Sing.	Masc. Plur.	
beau	**beaux**	*beautiful*
jumeau	**jumeaux**	*twin*
nouveau	**nouveaux**	*new*

Note.—Those adjectives which, like **beau** and **nouveau**, have two forms in the masculine singular (§ 116) derive their masculine plural from the form in which **l** has been vocalised.

Masc. Sing.	Masc. Plur.	
fou	**fous**	*mad*
mou	**mous**	*soft*
vieux	**vieux**	*old*

§ **123**. 4. Of the three French adjectives which end in **-eu**, two form their plural in **-s** and one in **-x**.

Masc. Sing.	Masc. Plur.	
bleu	**bleus**	*blue*
feu	**feus**	*late*
hébreu	**hébreux**	*Hebrew*

§ **124**. 5. **Tout**, *all*, *every*, has masculine plural **tous**.

§ **125**. 6. Adjectives which end in **-al** in the masculine singular form their masculine plural (if it is in use) by changing **-al** into **-aux**.

Masc. Sing.	Masc. Plur.	
amical	**amicaux**	*friendly*
brutal	**brutaux**	*brutal*
égal	**égaux**	*equal*
général	**généraux**	*general*
légal	**légaux**	*legal*
moral	**moraux**	*moral*
national	**nationaux**	*national*
principal	**principaux**	*principal*
royal	**royaux**	*royal*

Obs. About two hundred adjectives ending in **-al** form their plural thus, and about another hundred **have no** masculine plural; *e.g.* frugal, *frugal;* glacial, *glacial;* matinal, *early;* mental, *mental;* naval, *naval;* papal, *papal.* The student should avoid using the masculine plural of any adjective in **-al** unless he is sure of its existence.

IV.—POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

§ **126**. In French an adjective used attributively often, but by no means always, follows its substantive. The same adjective may in many cases be used indifferently either before or after the substantive, according to the taste of the writer or the rhythm of the sentence. Many adjectives, however, obey fairly constant rules with regard to position, while others differ in meaning according as they precede or follow the substantive. It may be laid down as a general principle that in prose an adjective which expresses an inherent quality precedes, while one

which is used for the purpose of more exact description follows; *e.g.* la douce espérance, *sweet hope;* but, un billet doux, *a love letter;* so too le jeune Pitt, *young Pitt;* but Pitt le jeune, *Pitt the younger.* In poetry and in elevated language very little uniformity of usage is found. The following rules will prove of some use, but it must be remembered that they can seldom be applied with absolute strictness.

§ **127.** 1. Adjectives denoting physical qualities (colour, form, etc.) follow the substantive when used literally, but precede it when used metaphorically.

Une étoffe noire.	**Un noir attentat.**
A black material.	*A black crime.*

§ **128.** 2. Adjectives denoting dignity, office, function, religion, follow the substantive.

Le prince impérial.
The Prince Imperial.

§ **129.** 3. Adjectives formed from proper names follow the substantive.

La nation française.	**Une conduite machiavélique.**
The French nation.	*Machiavellian conduct.*

Obs. It should be noticed that such adjectives are not spelt with an initial capital in French. When the same words are used as substantives they have a capital; *e.g.* **Les Prussiens et les Autrichiens,** *the Prussians and Austrians.*

§ **130.** 4. Substantives or participles used as adjectives follow the substantive.

Des vents amis.	**Le fruit défendu.**
Friendly winds.	*Forbidden fruit.*

Un enfant obéissant.
An obedient child.

§ **131.** 5. Adjectives consisting of more syllables than the substantive they qualify usually follow it.

Des lois imaginaires.
Imaginary laws.

§ **132**. 6. Two or more adjectives qualifying the same substantive usually follow it.

Un homme bon et vertueux.
A good and virtuous man.

NOTE.—Two adjectives which would precede the substantive if used separately, may precede it when used together, or the substantive may stand between two adjectives; *e.g.* **Une belle et vaste forêt,** *A beautiful and vast forest;* **Une petite table ronde,** *A small round table.*

§ **133**. 7. An adjective modified by a phrase or by a polysyllabic adverb follows the substantive.

Un homme avide de louanges.	**Un paysage extrêmement beau.**
A man eager for praise.	*An extremely fine landscape.*

§ **134**. 8. **Numerals**, and the following adjectives, when used in their literal sense, usually precede the substantive :—

beau, *beautiful, fine.*	**méchant,** *wicked.*
bon, *good.*	**meilleur,** *better.*
cher, *dear.*	**moindre,** *less.*
digne, *worthy.*	**petit,** *small.*
grand, *great, tall.*	**pire,** *worse.*
gros, *big.*	**prétendu,** *so-called.*
haut, *high.*	**saint,** *holy.*
jeune, *young.*	**soi-disant,** *self-styled.*
joli, *pretty.*	**sot,** *foolish.*
long, *long.*	**vaste,** *vast.*
maudit, *confounded.*	**vieux,** *old.*
mauvais, *bad.*	**vilain,** *ugly.*

§ **135**. Adjectives which vary in meaning according to their position may be divided into two classes: (1) those whose meaning varies only when they qualify certain substantives, generally **homme** or **femme**; (2) those whose meaning varies whatever substantive they qualify. For instance, **un grand homme** means *a great man*, and **un homme grand** means *a tall or big man*; and similarly, if employed with **dame**, *lady*; but **grand** used in its ordinary sense of *big, large*, usually precedes any other substantive; *e.g.* **un grand jardin,** *a large garden.*

§ 136. 1. Adjectives whose meaning varies according to position when employed with certain substantives —

bon :	
un bon homme, *a good-natured man*	un homme bon, *a good man*
brave :	
un brave homme, *a worthy man*	un homme brave, *a brave man*
commun :	
d'une commune voix, *unanimously*	une voix commune, *a vulgar voice*
cruel :	
un cruel homme, *a wearisome man*	un homme cruel, *a cruel man*
fort :	
une forte femme, *a strong woman*	une femme forte, *a strong-minded woman*
galant :	
un galant homme, *a perfect gentleman*	un homme galant, *a ladies' man*
grand :	
un grand homme, *a great man*	un homme grand, *a tall man*
haut :	
la haute mer, *the high seas*	la mer haute, *high water*
honnête :	
un honnête homme, *an honest man*	un homme honnête, *a polite man*
jeune :	
un jeune homme, *a young man*	un homme jeune, *a youthful man*
malhonnête :	
un malhonnête homme, *a dishonest man*	un homme malhonnête, *a rude man*
mauvais :	
un mauvais air, *a vulgar appearance*	un air mauvais, *a sinister look*
pauvre :	
un pauvre homme, *a man who excites pity*	un homme pauvre, *a poor* (i.e. *needy*) *man*
petit :	
un petit homme, *a small man*	un homme petit, *a mean man*

§ **137.** 2. Adjectives whose meaning varies according to position when **employed with any substantive**—

ancien:

mon ancien maître, *my former master*	**l'histoire ancienne,** *ancient history*

certain:

sous certains rapports, *in certain respects*	**des nouvelles certaines,** *reliable intelligence*

cher:

un cher livre, *a favourite book*	**un livre cher,** *a dear* (i.e. *expensive*) *book*

constant:

une constante volonté, *a steadfast will*	**des vents constants,** *steady winds*

dernier:

la dernière année, *the last year* (of some particular period)	**l'année dernière,** *last year*

différent, divers:

différentes choses, *various things*	**des choses différentes,** *different things*
en divers endroits, *in sundry places*	**dans des endroits divers,** *in different places*

double:

une double portion, *a double portion*	**un esprit double,** *a deceitful mind*

faux:

une fausse barbe, *a false* (i.e. *sham*) *beard*	**un cœur faux,** *a false heart*

fou:

un fol espoir, *a foolish hope*	**un homme fou,** *a madman*

maigre:

un maigre repas, *a scanty meal*	**un enfant maigre,** *a thin child*

méchant:

de méchants vers, *wretched verses*	**des vers méchants,** *spiteful verses*

même:

le même roi, *the same king*	**le roi même,** *even the king*

mortel:	
dix mortelles lieues, *ten weary leagues*	**les péchés mortels,** *deadly sins*
nouveau:	
un nouvel habit, *a fresh coat*	**un habit nouveau,** *a new-fashioned coat* **un habit neuf,** *a new coat* (*i.e.* a coat fresh from the tailor's)
nul:	
nul homme, *no man*	**mariage nul,** *an annulled marriage.*
plaisant:	
un plaisant conte, *an absurd story*	**un conte plaisant,** *an amusing story*
propre:	
mes propres mains, *my own hands*	**du linge propre,** *clean linen*
pur:	
une pure sottise, *sheer folly*	**un ciel pur,** *a clear sky*
seul:	
un seul enfant, *an only child*	**un enfant seul,** *a child alone*
simple:	
un simple soldat, *a private soldier*	**un soldat simple,** *a simple-minded soldier*
triste:	
un triste livre, *a sorry book*	**un livre triste,** *a sad book*
unique:	
l'unique héritier, *the sole heir*	**son fils unique,** *his only son*
véritable, vrai:	
un véritable ami, *a genuine friend*	**le motif véritable,** *the real motive*
un vrai coquin, *an arrant rogue*	**un conte vrai,** *a true story*

§ **138.** The preceding lists (§§ 136, 137) are intended to exemplify rather than exhaust the variation in the meaning of an adjective as determined by its position. It must not be supposed that adjectives in the second list can be used with any substantive whatever with the meanings given. A fuller treatment of this subject will be found in the *Tutorial French Syntax.*

V.—DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

§ **139.** The comparative of adjectives is formed by prefixing the adverb **plus**, *more*, to the positive.

	Singular.	Plural.	
Masc.	**plus joli**	**plus jolis**	*prettier*
Fem.	**plus jolie**	**plus jolies**	

Obs. This is what is generally understood by the comparative of an adjective, but it is, strictly speaking, the comparative of superiority.

§ **140.** Besides the comparative of **superiority**, there are the comparative of **inferiority**, and the comparative of **equality**, formed by prefixing the adverbs **moins**, *less*, and **aussi**, *as*, respectively.

	Singular.	Plural.	
Masc.	**moins joli**	**moins jolis**	*less pretty*
Fem.	**moins jolie**	**moins jolies**	
Masc.	**aussi joli**	**aussi jolis**	*as pretty*
Fem.	**aussi jolie**	**aussi jolies**	

§ **141.** The following are examples of (*a*) the comparative of superiority, (*b*) the comparative of inferiority, (*c*) the comparative of equality, *than* or *as* being in each case rendered by **que**:—

(*a*) **Charles est plus obéissant que Pierre.**
Charles is more obedient than Peter.

(*b*) **L'or est moins dur que l'argent.**
Gold is less hard than silver.

(*c*) **Il est aussi noir qu'un nègre.**
He is as black as a negro.

NOTE.—*Than* is only translated by **que** when **plus** and **moins** are used to express a **comparison**: when they merely indicate excess of quantity or the reverse, *than* must be rendered by **de**; *e.g.*—

Un éléphant peut porter plus que six chevaux.
An elephant can carry more than six horses (can carry).

But,

Un éléphant peut porter plus de six hommes.
An elephant can carry more than six men (on its back).

§ **142.** In negative sentences **aussi** is often replaced by **si.**

Il n'est pas si grand que son frère.
He is not so tall as his brother.

Obs. This is obviously another way of expressing the comparative of inferiority.

§ **143.** The **superlative** of superiority and the **superlative** of inferiority are formed by prefixing the definite article to the comparative of superiority and the comparative of inferiority respectively.

	Singular.	Plural.	
Masc.	**le plus joli**	**les plus jolis**	*the prettiest*
Fem.	**la plus jolie**	**les plus jolies**	
Masc.	**le moins joli**	**les moins jolis**	*the least pretty*
Fem.	**la moins jolie**	**les moins jolies**	

Ces élèves sont les plus forts de l'école.
These pupils are the ablest in the school.

Les hommes les moins habiles sont souvent les plus arrogants.
The least able men are often the most presumptuous.

Obs. The above forms are more exactly called respectively the **superlative relative of superiority** and the **superlative relative of inferiority,** because they convey the idea of a comparison.

§ **144.** There is, beside the above, a **superlative absolute,** formed by prefixing some such adverb as **très, fort, bien,** *very ;* **extrêmement,** *extremely*, to the adjective.

Elle est extrêmement malheureuse.
She is very unhappy.

Irregular Comparison.

§ **145.** Three adjectives have an irregular comparative—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bon, *good*	**meilleur**	**le meilleur**
mauvais, *bad*	**pire** or **plus mauvais**	**le pire** or **le plus mauvais**
petit, *little*	**moindre** or **plus petit**	**le moindre** or **le plus petit**

Obs. 1. The two latter admit of the ordinary comparative and superlative.

Obs. 2. These should be carefully distinguished from the corresponding adverbs (see § 542).

CHAPTER VIII.—DETERMINING ADJECTIVES.

§ **146**. Determining adjectives are usually divided into five classes:—

1. Numeral adjectives.
2. Possessive adjectives.
3. The demonstrative adjective.
4. The interrogative adjective.
5. Indefinite adjectives.

I.—NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ **147**. Cardinals and Ordinals.—The student must learn the cardinals and ordinals given in the following tables; he will then be able to supply any intermediate numbers for himself:—

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
1	**un** (masc.), **une** (fem.)	**premier** (masc.), **première** (fem.)
2	**deux**	**second** (masc.), **seconde** (fem.) deuxième *
3	**trois**	troisième
4	**quatre**	**quatrième**
5	**cinq**	**cinquième**
6	**six**	sixième
7	**sept**	septième
8	**huit**	huitième
9	**neuf**	**neuvième**
10	**dix**	dixième
11	**onze**	onzième
12	**douze**	douzième
13	**treize**	treizième
14	**quatorze**	quatorzième
15	**quinze**	quinzième
16	**seize**	seizième
17	**dix-sept**	dix-septième
18	**dix-huit**	dix-huitième
19	**dix-neuf**	dix-neuvième
20	**vingt**	vingtième
21	**vingt et un**	**vingt et unième**
22	**vingt-deux**	**vingt-deuxième**
23	vingt-trois	vingt-troisième

* **Second** denotes *second* of two, **deuxième**, *second* among a larger number.

	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
30	**trente**	trentième
31	trente et un	trente et unième
32	trente-deux	trente-deuxième
40	**quarante**	quarantième
41	quarante et un	quarante et unième
42	quarante-deux	quarante-deuxième
50	**cinquante**	cinquantième
51	cinquante et un	cinquante et unième
52	cinquante-deux	cinquante-deuxième
60	**soixante**	soixantième
61	soixante et un soixante-un	soixante et unième soixante-unième
62	soixante-deux	soixante-deuxième
70	**soixante-dix**	soixante-dixième
71	**soixante et onze** **soixante-onze**	soixante et onzième soixante-onzième
72	**soixante-douze**	soixante-douzième
73	**soixante-treize**	soixante-treizième
74	**soixante-quatorze**	soixante-quatorzième
75	**soixante-quinze**	soixante-quinzième
76	**soixante-seize**	soixante-seizième
77	**soixante-dix-sept**	soixante-dix-septième
78	**soixante-dix-huit**	soixante-dix-huitième
79	**soixante-dix-neuf**	soixante-dix-neuvième
80	**quatre-vingts**	quatre-vingtième
81	**quatre-vingt-un**	quatre-vingt-unième
82	quatre-vingt-deux	quatre-vingt-deuxième
90	**quatre-vingt-dix**	quatre-vingt-dixième
91	**quatre-vingt-onze**	quatre-vingt-onzième
92	**quatre-vingt-douze**	quatre-vingt-douzième
99	**quatre-vingt-dix-neuf**	quatre-vingt-dix-neuvième
100	**cent**	centième
101	**cent un**	**cent unième**
102	cent deux	cent deuxième
200	**deux cents**	**deux centième**
300	trois cents	trois centième
500	cinq cents	cinq centième
580	cinq cent quatre-vingts	cinq cent quatre-vingtième
586	cinq cent quatre-vingt-six	cinq cent quatre-vingt-sixième
1000	**mille**	millième
2000	**deux mille**	deux millième
10,000	dix mille	dix millième

Note.—The old forms **septante**, *seventy*, **octante**, *eighty*, and **nonante**, *ninety*, are also popularly used.

Notes on the Cardinals.

§ **148**. 1. **Vingt** and **cent** take the sign of the plural when they are multiplied, but not followed, by another number.

Quatre-vingts soldats.	**Quatre-vingt-dix soldats.**
80 *soldiers.*	90 *soldiers.*
Huit cents hommes.	**Huit cent une femmes.**
800 *men.*	801 *women.*

Obs. When **vingt** and **cent** are used in the place of ordinals (§ 156) they have no final **-s**.

§ **149**. 2. **Cent** and **mille** are not preceded by the indefinite article **un**, *a*.

Cent matelots.	**Mille chevaux.**
A hundred sailors.	*A thousand horses.*

§ **150**. 3. The numeral **mille**, *thousand*, does not take the sign of the plural; **milles** is the plural of the substantive **un mille**, *a mile.*

Dix mille hommes.	**Il a fait dix milles à pied.**
Ten thousand men.	*He has walked ten miles.*

§ **151**. 4. **Mil** (L. mille) is used instead of **mille** (L. milia) in dates reckoned from the Christian era later than 1000 A.D.

L'an mil huit cent.	**L'an trois mille du monde.**
The year 1800.	*The year of the world* 3000.

§ **152**. 5. **Et**, *and*, is not used between the different components of a number, except in **vingt et un**, **trente et un**, **quarante et un**, **cinquante et un**, **soixante et un**, **soixante et onze**. Hyphens are used in other compound cardinals under 100.

quatre-vingt-trois, 83. **cent trente et un**, 131.
cinq mille huit cent soixante-dix-sept, 5877.

NOTES ON THE ORDINALS.

§ **153.** 1. The ordinal numbers, with the exception of premier, *first*, and second, the alternative for deuxième, *second*, are formed by adding -ième to the cardinals, final -e mute being elided; *e.g.* quatre, quatr-ième; u is inserted after q in cinq-u-ième, and f is softened to v in neuv-ième.

§ **154.** 2. Unième and deuxième (never premier and second) are used in compound ordinals.

Cet élève est le premier de sa classe, mais son frère est le vingt et unième.

This boy is first in his class, but his brother is twenty-first.

§ **155.** 3. Et, *and*, is used between the components of an ordinal only if it is used in the corresponding cardinal (§ 152); hyphens are used where et is not used in all compound ordinals under 100th.

§ **156.** 4. Cardinal numbers are used instead of ordinals, always with the exception of premier, *first*, in the following cases:—

(*a*) In the titles of sovereigns.

Guillaume III., *i.e.* **Guillaume trois**, *William the Third*;
Henri VIII., *i.e.* **Henri huit**, *Henry the Eighth*.
Charles I., *i.e.* **Charles premier**, *Charles the First*.

NOTE.—The old form **quint** survives in the two titles **Charles-Quint**, *Charles V.* (the Emperor) and **Sixte-Quint**, *Pope Sixtus V.*

(*b*) In giving the number of a volume, chapter, page, or verse.

Chapitre quatre-vingt.	**Page vingt et un.**
The eightieth chapter.	*The twenty-first page.*

Obs. The use of the ordinal is equally correct in the expressions included under (*b*); *e.g.* **La quatre-vingtième page, Le vingtième chapitre.**

(*c*) In mentioning the year (cp. § 151) or the days of the month (cp. § 159).

NOTE.—In compound cardinals used as ordinals **un** is invariable. See (*b*) above, second example.

§ **157**. 5. When a cardinal and an ordinal are used together the cardinal must come first.

Les cinq premiers chapitres.
The first five chapters.

Expressions Involving the Use of Numerals.

(i.) Date.

§ **158**. Before learning the rules for expressing dates, the student should commit to memory the French names for the months and for the days of the week; they are all masculine substantives, and are not written with an initial capital letter.

janvier, *January*
février, *February.*
mars,* *March.*
avril, *April.*
mai, *May.*
juin, *June.*
juillet, *July.*
août,† *August.*
septembre, *September.*
octobre, *October.*
novembre, *November*
décembre, *December.*

dimanche, *Sunday.*
lundi, *Monday.*
mardi, *Tuesday.*
mercredi, *Wednesday.*
jeudi, *Thursday.*
vendredi, *Friday.*
samedi, *Saturday.*

§ **159**. In expressing a date (*a*) no preposition is used in French corresponding to the English *on*; (*b*) the day of the month is expressed by **premier** or a **cardinal** numeral, preceded by **le**, and followed by the name of the month without a preposition.

Le premier août.
The first of August.

Le trente et un janvier.
The thirty-first of January.

Le onze juillet (§ 8, NOTE).
The eleventh of July.

Elle partira lundi.
She will start on Monday.

Il mourut le quinze juin mil huit cent (or **dix-huit cent**) **quatre-vingt-neuf.**
He died on the fifteenth of June, 1889.

NOTE.—Regular occurrence week by week is expressed by **le** and the name of the day of the week in the singular; *e.g.* **J'ai congé le samedi**, *I have a holiday on Saturdays.*

* The final **s** is sounded.

† The **a** in **août** is mute.

(ii.) Time of Day.

§ **160.** The following examples show the French method of stating the hour. The word **minutes**, *minutes*, may be omitted, as in English :—

Quelle heure est-il ?	*What o'clock is it ?*
Il est une heure,	*It is one o'clock.*
Il est midi,	*It is twelve o'clock (noon)*
Il est minuit,	*It is twelve o'clock (midnight).*
Il est deux heures et demie,	*It is half-past two.*
Il est midi et (un) quart,	*It is a quarter-past twelve.*
Il est midi moins (le or un) quart,	*It is a quarter to twelve.*
Il est une heure cinq (minutes),	*It is five minutes past one.*
Il est dix heures vingt-cinq (minutes),	*It is five-and-twenty past ten.*

Le train partira à midi moins vingt (minutes).
The train will leave at twenty (minutes) to twelve.

Note.—The abbreviation **m.** (**matin**, *morning*) is used for *a.m.*, and **s.** (**soir**, *evening*) for *p.m.*

(iii.) Age.

§ **161.** The verb **avoir**, *to have*, is used to express age.

Quel âge avez-vous ?	**J'ai vingt et un ans.**
How old are you ?	*I am twenty-one.*

SUBSTANTIVES DERIVED FROM NUMERALS.

§ **162.** The preceding numerals are all adjectives, but the names of (1) **collectives**, (2) **fractions**, (3) **multiples**, are usually regarded as substantives.

(i.) Collectives.

§ **163.** The following, with the exception of **un million**, *a million*, either convey an idea of indefiniteness or are used with some special meaning. When they have a complement, it must be preceded by **de**, *of* :—

une huitaine,	(more commonly **huit jours**), *a week.*
une neuvaine,	*nine days (of prayer).*
une dizaine,	*half a score.*
une douzaine,	*a dozen.*
une quinzaine,	(more commonly **quinze jours**), *a fortnight.*
une vingtaine,	*a score.*

une trentaine, *about thirty.*
une quarantaine, *about forty, quarantine.*
une cinquantaine, *half a hundred.*
une soixantaine, *threescore.*
une centaine, *a hundred.*
un millier, *a thousand.*
un million, *a million.*

(ii.) Fractions.

§ **164**. The ordinals are used as the denominators of fractions, except in the case of the three simplest denominators.

une moitié, / **un demi** (in mathematics), } *half.*
la demie, *the half-hour.*

un tiers, *one-third.* — **deux tiers,** *two-thirds.*
un quart, *one-fourth.* — **trois quarts,** *three-fourths.*
un cinquième, *one-fifth.* — **quatre cinquièmes,** *four-fifths.*
un sixième, *one-sixth.* — **cinq sixièmes,** *five-sixths.*
etc. etc. — etc. etc.

Cette pendule sonne les demies.
This clock strikes the half-hours.

(iii.) Multiples.

§ **165**. Names of multiples can be either substantives or adjectives.

(le) **double,** *double.* — (le) **quintuple,** *five times, fivefold.*
(le) **triple,** *treble, triple.* — (le) **sextuple,** *six times, sixfold.*
(le) **quadruple,** *quadruple.* — (le) **décuple,** *ten times, tenfold.*
(le) **centuple,** *a hundred times, a hundredfold.*

Dix-huit est le sextuple de trois.
Eighteen is six times three.

ADVERBS DERIVED FROM NUMERALS.

§ **166**. There are two classes of numeral adverbs, viz.: (1) adverbs of order, and (2) adverbs of repetition.

1. Adverbs of order are formed from ordinal adjectives by adding **-ment** to the feminine.

premièrement, *first, in the first place.*
secondement or **deuxièmement,** *secondly.*
troisièmement, *thirdly.*
etc. etc.

2. Adverbs of repetition are formed by prefixing the cardinals to the substantive **fois**, *time* or *times*.

une fois, *once*.
deux fois, *twice*.
trois fois, *thrice, three times*.
dix fois, *ten times*.
vingt-cinq fois, *twenty-five times*.
cent une fois, *a hundred and one times*.
deux cents fois, *two hundred times*.
mille fois, *a thousand times*.

II.—POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

§ **167**. The possessive adjectives are :—

		Singular. Masc.	Singular. Fem.	Plural. For both genders.	
Sing.	1st Person	**mon**	**ma**	**mes**	*my*
	2nd „	**ton**	**ta**	**tes**	*thy*
	3rd „	**son**	**sa**	**ses**	*his, her, its*
Plur.	1st „	**notre**		**nos**	*our*
	2nd „	**votre**		**vos**	*your*
	3rd „	**leur**		**leurs**	*their*

Obs. These should be carefully distinguished from the corresponding possessive pronouns (§ 247).

Notes on the Possessive Adjectives.

§ **168**. 1. The possessive adjective agrees with the thing possessed, and not with the possessor.

Mon mari, *my husband*. **Ta femme**, *your wife*.
Son parapluie, *his umbrella* or *her umbrella*.
Sa sœur, *his sister* or *her sister*.
Ses sœurs, *his sisters* or *her sisters*.

§ **169**. 2. When a feminine substantive begins with a vowel or h mute, the forms **mon**, **ton**, **son**, must be used, instead of **ma**, **ta**, **sa**, in order to avoid hiatus—*i.e.* the retention of an unelided vowel before a word beginning with a vowel.

mon ardoise (instead of **ma ardoise**), *my slate*.
ton horloge (instead of **ta horloge**), *your clock*,

§ **170.** 3. The possessive adjective must be repeated before each substantive in French, and must agree with it in gender and number.

Mon père, ma mère, et mes frères sont ici.
My father, mother, and brothers are here.

§ **171.** 4. Note the expression—

Un de mes amis, *a friend of mine.*

III.—THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE.

§ **172.** The demonstrative adjective in French has four forms.

Singular.		Plural.
Masc. **ce, cet,** *Fem.* **cette,**	*this* or *that*	**ces,** *these* or *those*

§ **173.** In the masculine singular **cet** is used before a substantive or adjective beginning with a vowel or h mute.

ce garçon, *this boy* or *that boy.* **cet ami,** *this friend* or *that friend.*
ce héros, *this hero* or *that hero.* **cet homme,** *this man* or *that man.*
cet heureux événement, *this happy event.*
cette ardoise, *this slate.* **ces ardoises,** *these slates.*

Notes on the Demonstrative Adjective.

§ **174.** 1. The demonstrative adjective must be repeated before each substantive.

Ce tableau, cet oiseau, et ces fleurs sont à sa sœur.
This (or *that*) *picture, this* (or *that*) *bird, and these* (or *those*) *flowers are his* (or *her*) *sister's.*

§ **175.** 2. When *this* and *that* are used in the same sentence in English, the distinction is preserved in French by **ci** (shortened from **ici**), *here*, and **là**, *there*, placed after the substantives and connected therewith by hyphens.

Ce cheval-ci et ce chien-là sont à moi.
This horse and that dog are mine.

IV.—THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE.

§ **176.** The interrogative adjective has four forms:—

	Singular.	Plural.	
Masc.	**quel**	**quels**	*which?* / *what?*
Fem.	**quelle**	**quelles**	

Notes on the Interrogative Adjective.

§ **177.** 1. **Quel** may be either directly or indirectly interrogative.

Quelle route dois-je suivre? / *Which road must I follow?* } Direct question.

Dites-moi quelle route je dois suivre. / *Tell me which road I must follow.* } Indirect question.

§ **178.** 2. **Quel** also corresponds to the English *What a . . . !* used in exclamations.

Quel dommage! *What a pity!*

V.—INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES.

§ **179.** Many indefinite adjectives can also be used as indefinite pronouns, while others are used as adjectives only.

§ **180.** (i) Words which can be used as indefinite adjectives only—

Singular. Masc.	Singular. Fem.	Plural. Masc	Plural. Fem.	
certain	**certaine**	**certains** *	**certaines**	*certain, some*
	chaque			*each, every*
maint	**mainte**	**maints**	**maintes**	*many a*
	même		**mêmes**	*self, same*
	quelque		**quelques**	*some*
quel . . . que	**quelle . . . que**	**quels . . . que**	**quelles . . . que**	*whatever*
	quelconque		**quelconques**	*any . . . whatever*

* The masculine plural **certains** is occasionally used as a pronoun, *some (people)*.

§ **181.** (ii) Words which can be used either as indefinite adjectives or as indefinite pronouns—

Singular. Masc.	Singular. Fem.	Plural. Masc.	Plural. Fem.	
aucun	**aucune**	**aucuns**	**aucunes**	*no, none, any*
autre		**autres**		*other*
l'un et l'autre	**l'une et l'autre**	**les uns et les autres**	**les unes et les autres**	*both*
l'un ou l'autre	**l'une ou l'autre**	**les uns ou les autres**	**les unes ou les autres**	*either*
ni l'un ni l'autre	**ni l'une ni l'autre**	**ni les uns ni les autres**	**ni les unes ni les autres**	*neither*
nul	**nulle**	**nuls**	**nulles**	*no, none*
		plusieurs		*several*
tel	**telle**	**tels**	**telles**	*such*
tout	**toute**	**tous**	**toutes**	*all, every*

Notes on the Indefinite Adjectives.

§ **182.** 1. **Certain,** *certain, some,* used as an indefinite adjective, always precedes its substantive (see § 137).

§ **183.** 2. **Chaque,** *each, every,* is used only in the singular. The corresponding pronoun is **chacun**—

> **À chaque jour suffit sa peine.**
> *Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.*
> **Chacun son métier.**
> *Every man to his trade.*

§ **184.** 3. **Même,** between the article and the substantive, means *same.* It is also used to form the emphatic pronouns.

> **Ce sont les mêmes hommes.**
> *They are the same men.*
> **Nous le faisons nous-mêmes.**
> *We are doing it ourselves.*

Obs. **Même** is also an adverb; *e.g.,* **Même les soldats fuyaient,** *Even the soldiers were in flight.*

§ **185.** 4. **Quelque**, *some*, must be distinguished from **quel . . . que**, *whatever*.

Il y a quelques erreurs.
There are some (a few) *mistakes.*

Quels que soient vos désirs, je vous aiderai.
Whatever your wishes may be, I will help you.

Obs. **Quelque** is also an adverb, meaning *about* or *however ; e.g.*, **J'ai quelque trois cents livres,** *I have about three hundred books ;* **Quelque nombreux qu'ils soient, je les vaincrai,** *However numerous they may be, I will overcome them.*

§ **186.** 5. **Tel**, *such*, is never followed by the indefinite article in French.

Une telle action est digne de louange.
Such an action is worthy of praise.

Obs. Notice the phrase : **Monsieur un tel,** *Mr. So and So.*

§ **187.** 6. (*a*) **Tout**, used in the singular without the article, is equivalent to **chaque.**

Tout homme a ses défauts.
Every man has his faults.

(*b*) **Tout**, meaning *all*, *whole*, is used in both genders and numbers, and is usually followed by the definite article, being the only French adjective which admits of that construction.

Toute la terre.	**Tous les hommes.**
The whole earth.	*All men.*

(*c*) **Tout** may be used as a pronoun, meaning *all*, *everything*, in the masculine (more correctly neuter) singular and in the plural in both genders.

Tout est perdu.	**Tous ont péché.**
All is lost.	*All have sinned.*

(*d*) For the adverb **tout**, *quite*, see § 529.

The above remarks on the indefinite adjectives are by no means exhaustive ; further details will be found in the "Tutorial French Syntax."

CHAPTER IX.—COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

[*This chapter may be omitted until the learner has finished the portion of the book dealing with verbs.*]

I.—COMPOUND SUBSTANTIVES.

§ **188**. This term, in its most restricted meaning, includes only those collocations of separate words which, united by a hyphen, form a single substantive. Those in which the components are written together as one word are considered to have become simple substantives, while those which consist of separate words united in sense only may be called substantival phrases. Each of these three classes presents certain difficulties, and is therefore dealt with in this chapter.

(i.) Compound Substantives written as Single Words without Hyphens.

§ **189**. The following examples of compound substantives now written as one word exhibit the various methods of formation.

une betterave, *a beetroot.*
une contredanse, *a quadrille.*
un contretemps, *a mishap.*
un contrevent, *a shutter.*
un entr'acte, *an interlude.*
un gendarme, *a policeman.*
un parapluie, *an umbrella.*
un passeport, *a passport.*
un portefeuille, *a portfolio.*
un portemanteau, *a portmanteau.*
un pourboire, *drink-money.*
un pourparler, *a parley.*

§ **190**. The gender of substantives such as the above may be determined by the following rules :—

(1) A substantive compounded of a substantive preceded by a preposition retains the gender of the component substantive ; *e.g.* **une contredanse.**

Exception : **le parterre**, *the flower-garden*, from **la terre**

(2) A substantive compounded of an infinitive and a preposition is always masculine; *e.g.* **un pourboire.**

(3) A substantive compounded of a verb preceding and governing a substantive is always masculine, although the component substantive may be feminine; *e.g.* **un portefeuille.**

§ **191.** These substantives form their plural in the usual way by the addition of **-s.**

Singular.	Plural.
un contrevent	**des contrevents**
un gendarm	**des gendarmes**
un pourparler	**des pourparlers**

§ **192.** The following exceptions, however, occur, in which both components take the sign of the plural.

Singular.	Plural.
un gentilhomme, *a nobleman*	**des gentilshommes**
un bonhomme, *a good-natured man*	**des bonshommes**

§ **193.** With the above the following titles may be grouped:—

Singular.	Plural.
monseigneur, *My Lord, a lord*	**messeigneurs,** *My Lords*
monsieur, *sir, Mr., a gentleman*	**messieurs,** *sirs, Messrs., gentlemen*
madame, *Madam, Mrs.*	**mesdames,** *Mesdames*
mademoiselle, *Miss*	**mesdemoiselles,** *Misses*

§ **194.** The following compounds should also be noticed:—

Singular.	Plural.
une grand'mère, *a grandmother*	**des grand'mères**
une grand'messe, *a high mass*	**des grand'messes**
une grand'route, *a high road*	**des grand'routes**

These, and many other feminines compounded with **grand'**, follow the rule of simple substantives in the formation of the plural. Cp. § 119.

Obs. In old French **grand** had only **one form for the masculine and feminine**, like the Latin **grandis**, from which it is derived. It was, therefore, correctly written **grand** before feminine nouns, and this form survived in many cases after the usual **-e** mute had been added by analogy with other adjectives. The apostrophe was inserted by grammarians to replace an **-e** which never existed in the original.

(ii.) Compound Substantives written with Hyphens.

§ **195.** Compound substantives in the strict sense of the word, *i.e.* those of which the components are united by hyphens, are formed in the following ways:—

1. Substantive + substantive.

un chou-fleur, *a cauliflower.*
un lieutenant-colonel, *a lieutenant-colonel.*
un oiseau-mouche, *a humming-bird.*
un chat-tigre, *a tiger-cat.*

Obs. The compound takes the **gender** of the more important substantive. Thus **chou-fleur** is *a cabbage* with the form of a flower; **oiseau-mouche** is *a bird* of the size of a fly.

2. Substantive + adjective.

une basse-cour, *a poultry-yard.*
un beau-frère, *a brother-in-law.*
un cerf-volant, *a kite.*
un coffre-fort, *a strong box.*
un grand-père, *a grandfather.*
une petite-fille, *a granddaughter.*

Obs. The compound naturally takes the **gender** of the substantive.

3. Substantive + preposition + substantive.

un aide-de-camp, *an aide-de-camp.*
un arc-en-ciel, *a rainbow.*
un char-à-bancs, *a pleasure van.*
un ver-à-soie, *a silkworm.*

Obs. The compound takes the **gender** of the first component, the preposition and the second substantive forming together an adjectival phrase. But see also § 199, Note 2.

4. Invariable word + substantive.

un après-midi, *an afternoon.*
un avant-coureur, *a forerunner.*
une arrière-pensée, *an afterthought.*
un contre-amiral, *a rear-admiral.*
un sous-officier, *a non-commissioned officer.*
un vice-roi, *a viceroy.*

Obs. The **gender** of the compound is that of the component substantive, except in **après-midi**, which is sometimes feminine.

5. Verb + substantive.

un garde-chasse, *a gamekeeper.*
un abat-jour, *a lamp-shade.*
un coupe-gorge, *a den of thieves.*
une garde-robe, *a wardrobe.*
un réveille-matin, *an alarum.*
un tire-bouchon, *a corkscrew.*

Obs. These are **masculine**, except **garde-robe.**

6. Miscellaneous compounds which do not come under the above heads.

un ouï-dire, *a hearsay.*	**un passe-partout**, *a master-key.*
un on-dit, *a rumour.*	**un va-nu-pieds**, *a ragamuffin.*

Obs. These are **all masculine.**

Plural of Compound Substantives.

§ **196**. This subject is one of considerable difficulty, for though grammarians are agreed on the matter with regard to the majority of classes, a great diversity of opinion exists with regard to others. The learner may therefore rest satisfied with understanding the main rules, which are entirely in accordance with common sense. It will of course be understood that only words which are grammatically capable of having a plural, *i.e.* substantives and adjectives, can vary when employed in compounds. The rules will be given for the six classes enumerated in the preceding section.

§ **197**. 1. Substantive + substantive.

Both components take the sign of the plural.

Singular.	Plural.
un chou-fleur	**des choux-fleurs**
un oiseau-mouche	**des oiseaux-mouches**

§ **198**. 2. Substantive + adjective.

Both components take the sign of the plural, the adjective naturally agreeing with the substantive.

un cerf-volant	**des cerfs-volants**
une basse-cour	**des basses-cours**

Note 1.—The word **demi**, *half*, when prefixed to a substantive, is **invariable** both in gender and number.

un demi-dieu, *a demi-god*	**des demi-dieux**
une demi-lune, *a half moon*	**des demi-lunes**

Note 2. The prefix **mi-**, *half*, *mid*, found in a few compounds, is invariable, but has the effect of changing the gender of the word; *e.g.* from **carême** (m.), *Lent*, the compound **la mi-carême**, *Mid-Lent*, is formed.

§ **199**. 3. Substantive + preposition + substantive.

The first component only takes the sign of the plural.

un arc-en-ciel	**des arcs-en-ciel**
un ver-à-soie	**des vers-à-soie**

Obs. It is obvious that the idea of plurality is associated with the first component only; there may be more than one *bow*, but there can only be one *sky*; cp. in English *man-of-war*, *men-of-war*.

NOTE 1.—With this class must be included several compounds which appear to belong to the first class, but in which a preposition, *e.g.* **de**, must be understood in order to make sense.

un bain-marie, *a bath* (chemical term)	**des bains-marie**
une fête-Dieu, *Corpus Christi*	**des fêtes-Dieu**
un hôtel-Dieu, *a hospital*	**des hôtels-Dieu**
un timbre-poste, *a postage-stamp*	**des timbres-poste**

NOTE 2.—There are a few compound substantives of this class which do not vary in the plural.

un coq-à-l'âne, *a cock and bull story*	**des coq-à-l'âne**
un pied-à-terre, *a temporary lodging*	**des pied-à-terre**
un pot-au-feu, *meat to make broth*	**des pot-au-feu**
un tête-à-tête, *a private conversation*	**des tête-à-tête**

In these cases the idea of plurality does not attach to either component. They are in reality adjectival phrases, qualifying some substantive understood. Thus **un tête-à-tête** means literally "a head to head *conversation*." Similarly **pied-à-terre** means a place where one may set foot for a time, literally, "a foot to earth *lodging*." Such compounds are always masculine.

§ **200**. 4. Invariable word + substantive.

The substantive alone takes the sign of the plural.

une arrière-pensée	**des arrière-pensées**
un contre-amiral	**des contre-amiraux**

Obs. Compare with the above the English words *afterthoughts*, *rear-admirals*.

NOTE.—In a few compounds where the preposition has no adjectival force, but really governs the substantive, no change takes place —*e.g.* the plural of **une après-midi**, *an afternoon*, is **des après-midi**.

§ **201**. 5. Verb + substantive.

Both components remain invariable.

un coupe-gorge	**des coupe-gorge**
un tire-bouchon	**des tire-bouchon**

Obs. When the word **coupe-gorge** is used in the plural, it is not a plurality of *throats* that is implied, but of *places* where throats are likely to be cut. Hence **gorge** remains without the sign of the plural.

NOTE 1.—The following substantives of this class are treated as if they were simple substantives, and take a final **-s** in the plural :—

un bouche-trou, *a stop-gap*	**des bouche-trous**
un croque-mort, *an undertaker's man*	**des croque-morts**
un garde-fou, *a parapet*	**des garde-fous**
une garde-robe, *a wardrobe*	**des garde-robes**
un serre-frein, *a brakesman*	**des serre-freins**
un tire-balle, *a bullet-extractor*	**des tire-balles**

NOTE 2.—In a number of compounds of this and of other classes **the second component is naturally plural, even when the compound itself is singular.**

un casse-noisettes, *a pair of nut-crackers*	**des casse-noisettes**
un cure-dents, *a toothpick*	**des cure-dents**
un essuie-mains, *a towel*	**des essuie-mains**
un gobe-mouches, *a fly-catcher*	**des gobe-mouches**
un porte-allumettes, *a match-box*	**des porte-allumettes**
un porte-clefs, *a turnkey*	**des porte-clefs**
un tire-bottes, *a boot-jack*	**des tire-bottes**

The Academy recognises as correct the illogical singulars **casse-noisette**, **cure-dent**, etc. No fixed rule is observed by modern writers, but the whole question will probably be simplified in the course of the next few years.

§ **202.** 6. Miscellaneous compounds. These are **invariable.**

un ouï-dire	**des ouï-dire**
un passe-partout	**des passe-partout**
un va-nu-pieds	**des va-nu-pieds**

Obs. These compounds are really elliptical sentences explaining some word understood. For instance, **va-nu-pieds** (literally *goes barefoot*) means *one who goes barefoot.*

§ **203.** Some divergence of opinion exists with regard to the plural of compound substantives which contain the word **garde**. In **garde-champêtre**, *rural policeman*, and **garde-national**, *member of the national guard*, which belong to the second class of compounds enumerated above, **garde** is undoubtedly a substantive ; but in many other cases grammarians are divided as to whether it is to be considered a substantive and variable, or part of the verb **garder**, and consequently invariable. It is, perhaps, safest to leave **garde** invariable, except in such clear cases as the two already mentioned. The word which follows the verb **garde** should also be invariable, except in the compounds **garde-robe** and **garde-fou**, where usage has sanctioned the plural forms **garde-robes** and **garde-fous.**

§ **204**. There are a few compound substantives whose first component is of foreign origin and form; in such cases the second part only takes the sign of the plural.

un Anglo-Saxon, *an Anglo-Saxon*	**des Anglo-Saxons**
un Gallo-Romain, *a Gallo-Roman*	**des Gallo-Romains**

(iii.) Compound Substantives written as Separate Words without Hyphens.

§ **205**. Many compound substantives similar in force and construction to those contained in the third class mentioned above consist of separate substantives linked by a preposition, but not united by hyphens. These are not usually included among compound substantives, but may well be considered as such, for the presence or absence of the hyphens is largely a matter of accident, and in the case of some compounds usage varies.

§ **206**. Given such phrases as *a country house, a paddle-wheel steamer*, etc., a difficulty arises in ascertaining the right preposition to employ in connecting the words. The only prepositions which occur at all frequently in this connection are **à** and **de**, and the following rules show in what classes of compounds each is used.

§ **207**. **À** is used, frequently with the article, before a complement denoting—

(*a*) Purpose or destination; (*b*) a peculiar characteristic.

(*a*) **la boîte aux lettres,** *the letter-box.*
la foire aux vanités, *Vanity Fair.*
le marché au blé, *the corn-market.*
le marché aux fleurs, *the flower-market.*
le moulin à café, *the coffee-mill.*
la pompe à incendie, *the fire-engine.*
le verre à vin, *the wine-glass.*
la tasse à thé, *the tea-cup.*

(*b*) **le bateau à hélice**, *the screw steamer.*
le bateau à roues, *the paddle-wheel steamer.*
le bateau à vapeur, *the steamer.*
la fille aux yeux bleus, *the blue-eyed girl.*
la glace à la vanille, *vanilla ice.*
le potage aux herbes, *herb soup.*
le serpent à sonnettes, *the rattlesnake.*
la tarte aux cerises, *cherry tart.*

§ **208**. De is used before a complement denoting (*a*) material, (*b*) contents, (*c*) origin, nature, position.

(*a*) **un homme de neige**, *a snow man.*
une montre d'or, *a gold watch.*
une robe de soie, *a silk dress.*

(*b*) **une bouteille de rhum**, *a bottle of rum.*
une tasse de thé, *a cup of tea.*
un verre de vin, *a glass of wine.*
un pot de lait, *a jug of milk.*

(*c*) **l'encre de Chine**, *Indian ink.*
la pomme de terre, *the potato.*
l'huile d'olive, *olive oil.*
un arc de triomphe, *a triumphal arch.*
un homme de guerre, *a warrior.*
l'hôtel de ville, *the town-hall.*
une tour d'église, *a church tower.*
l'Amérique du Sud, *South America.*
une maison de campagne, *a country house.*

Obs. When **de** is used with the article the complement is to be taken in a definite sense; *e.g.* **une tour d'église**, *a church tower*, but **la tour de l'église**, *the church tower*, viz. *the tower of the* (i.e. *some particular*) *church.*

§ **209**. The plural of expressions such as the above presents no difficulty, the first component taking the sign of the plural, as in the case of true compounds of similar form.

une pomme de terre	**des pommes de terre**
une robe de soie	**des robes de soie**

II.—COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

§ **210.** Compound adjectives consisting of two adjectives or of an adjective and a participle vary in both parts for gender and number.

une femme aveugle-née, *a woman born blind.*
des hommes ivres-morts, *men dead drunk.*
des poires aigres-douces, *pears half sour, half sweet.*

§ **211.** When the first component adjective is used adverbially, it remains invariable.

Des gazons clair-semés.* *Lawns thinly sown.*

Des filles court-vêtues. *Girls in short frocks.*

Des enfants nouveau-nés. *New-born children.*

NOTE.—There are, however, many exceptions to this rule, including all compounds of **nouveau** (except **nouveau-né,** *new-born*); *e.g.* **la nouvelle mariée,** *the bride.* The compound adjective **frais-cueilli,** *freshly plucked,* is variable; *e.g.* **des roses fraîches-cueillies,** *freshly-plucked roses*; so also **les premiers-nés,** *the first-born,* and **les derniers-nés,** *the last-born,* which are used in the masculine only.

§ **212.** Demi-, semi-, and mi- are invariable prefixes.

Les pauvres femmes étaient demi-mortes. *The poor women were half-dead.*

Voici des fleurs semi-doubles. *Here are some half-double flowers.*

Les opinions étaient mi-parties. *Opinions were equally divided.*

§ **213.** Compound adjectives denoting colour are invariable, and are usually written without a hyphen.

des cheveux châtain clair, *light-brown hair.*
des souliers rose tendre, *pink slippers.*
des yeux bleu foncé, *dark-blue eyes.*
des rubans bleu ciel, *Cambridge ribbons.*

* Now usually written as one word, **clairsemé.**

CHAPTER X.—PRONOUNS.

§ **214**. Pronouns are divided into six classes :—

1. Personal Pronouns.
2. Possessive Pronouns.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns.
4. Interrogative Pronouns.
5. Relative Pronouns.
6. Indefinite Pronouns.

I.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ **215**. Personal pronouns are divided into **conjunctive** and **disjunctive**, on the broad ground of distinction that the former are used only in conjunction with verbs, while the latter are used in all other cases.

§ **216**. Personal pronouns assume various forms which retain to a certain extent the functions of the Latin cases, and which are accordingly known by the following names:—

(*a*) The **nominative** stands as the subject of the verb.

(*b*) The **accusative** stands as the direct object of a transitive verb.

(*c*) The **dative** stands as the indirect object of such verbs as admit an indirect object.

(*d*) The **genitive** exists only in the case of the word **en**, *of it, of them* (neuter).

Thus, in the sentence, **Il me l'a dit ce matin**, *He told it me this morning*: **il**, *he*, is nominative; **l'** (*i e.* **le**), *it*, is accusative; **me**, *me* or *to me*, is dative.

§ **217**. The pronouns of the **second person singular** are used in French in archaic and poetic language (as in English), and also in addressing near relatives, intimate friends, and children.

§ **218**. The pronouns of the second person plural are used (except in the cases above mentioned) for the second person singular, as in English, the complement remaining singular.

Vous êtes médecin, mais vous êtes quelquefois malade.
You are a doctor, but you are ill sometimes.

§ **219**. The conjunctive pronouns are thus declined:

	First Person. Both Genders.	Second Person. Both Genders.	Third Person. Masc.	Third Person. Fem.
		Singular.		
Nom.	**je**, *I.*	**tu**, *thou.*	**il**, *he, it.*	**elle**, *she, it.*
Dat.	**me**, (*to*) *me.*	**te**, (*to*) *thee.*	**lui**, (*to*) *him.*	**lui**, (*to*) *her.*
Acc.	**me**, *me.*	**te**, *thee.*	**le**, *him, it.*	**la**, *her, it.*
		Plural.		
Nom.	**nous**, *we.*	**vous**, *ye, you.*	**ils**, *they.*	**elles**, *they.*
Dat.	**nous**, (*to*) *us.*	**vous**, (*to*) *you.*	**leur**, (*to*) *them.*	**leur**, (*to*) *them.*
Acc.	**nous**, *us.*	**vous**, *you.*	**les**, *them.*	**les**, *them.*

For the genitive **en** and the dative **y**, see §§ 235—237.

§ **220**. The disjunctive pronouns have only one form for the nominative and accusative; the dative is formed by prefixing **à**.

Singular.		Plural.
First Person (both genders)	**moi**, *I, me.*	**nous**, *we, us.*
Second „ „ „	**toi**, *thou, thee.*	**vous**, *ye, you.*
Third „ (Masc.)	**lui**, *he, him.*	**eux**, *they, them.*
„ „ (Fem.)	**elle**, *she, her.*	**elles**, *they, them.*

§ **221**. The dative and accusative conjunctive pronouns of the first and second persons may be used as **reflexives**; a special reflexive form exists for the third person.

Both Genders.	Singular.	Plural.
First Person (Dat., Acc.)	**me**, (*to*) *myself.*	**nous**, (*to*) *ourselves.*
Second „ („ „)	**te**, (*to*) *thyself.*	**vous**, (*to*) *yourself* or *yourselves.*
Third „ („ „)	**se**, (*to*) *himself, herself, itself.*	**se**, (*to*) *themselves.*

§ **222.** The disjunctive reflexive pronouns (also called emphatic pronouns) are used as nominative or as accusative, the dative being formed by prefixing **à**.

Both Genders.	Singular.	Plural.
First Person „	**moi-même**, *myself.*	**nous-mêmes**, *ourselves.*
Second „ „	**toi-même**, *thyself.* / **vous-même**, *yourself.*	**vous-mêmes**, *yourselves.*
Third „ (Masc.)	**lui-même**, *himself.*	**eux-mêmes**, *themselves.*
„ „ (Fem.)	**elle-même**, *herself.*	**elles-mêmes**, *themselves.*

NOTE 1.—To the above list may be added the reflexive **soi, soi-même**, third person singular, which, applied to persons, has usually an indefinite sense ; *e.g.* **Chacun pour soi,** *Every man for himself;* **La conduite de soi-même,** *The regulation of one's life.* Applied to **things, soi** refers to a definite subject in the **singular** only ; *e.g.* **Un bienfait porte en soi sa récompense,** *A kind deed brings its reward with it.*

POSITION AND ORDER OF CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

The student should read through these sections, but may postpone learning them until he has mastered at least the regular verbs.

§ **223.** The position of the **nominative** is the same as in English, *i.e.* it precedes the verb in affirmative and negative sentences, but follows the verb in interrogative sentences. In compound tenses used interrogatively, the nominative comes between the auxiliary and the participle. The nominative also follows the verb in such expressions as **dit-il,** *said he,* interrupting or concluding the quotation of a speech.

§ **224.** The position and order in French of pronouns governed by a verb present considerable difficulty. The following rules, together with the scheme (see § 229), should be carefully studied. The order in the imperative affirmative is treated separately; in all other cases these rules hold good.

§ **225.** 1. **All pronouns precede the verb by which they are governed.** (By verb understand auxiliary in compound tenses.)

Je le vois. — *I see him.*

Ils nous aiment. — *They love us.*

Vous leur avez donné un cadeau.
You have given them a present.

§ **226**. 2. When two pronouns, not both of the third person, are governed by the same verb, the indirect object precedes the direct object.

Je vous le donne.	**Il nous les a donnés.**
I give it to you.	*He has given them to us.*

? we will give you it.

§ **227**. 3. When the pronouns are both of the third person, the accusatives le, la, les, precede the datives lui, leur.

Je le leur ai donné.	**Nous les lui donnerons.**
I have given it to them.	*We shall give them to him* (or *her*).

§ **228**. 4. The words y, *to it* (§ 237), and en, *of it* (§§ 235, 236), follow all other pronouns, en coming last.

Je vous en donnerai.	**Je m'y fie.**
I will give you some.	*I trust to it.*

Obs. Whenever **y** and **en** occur together, the former is an adverb, not a pronoun; *e.g.* **Il y en aura**, *There will be some.*

§ **229**. The following table furnishes a guide to the correct order of pronouns in any sentence except an imperative affirmative.

Subject, in Aff. or Neg. Sentence.	First part of Negative.	Dat. and Acc. of 1st and 2nd Pers. and Reflex.	Acc. of 3rd Person.	Dat. of 3rd Person.	Dative or Adverb.	Genitive or Adverb.	Verb (Aux. in Compd. Tense).	Subject in Inter. Sentence.	Completion of Negative.	Past Participle.
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
je	ne	me			y	en	—	je	pas	—
tu		te						tu		
il / elle		se	le / la	lui				il / elle		
nous		nous						nous		
vous		vous						vous		
ils / elles		se	les	leur				ils / elles		

Obs. In affirmative and negative sentences column 9 disappears; in interrogative sentences, column 1.

§ **230**. IMPERATIVE AFFIRMATIVE.—The pronouns governed by an imperative affirmative are arranged according to the following rules :—

1. All pronouns follow the verb, and are united with it by hyphens.

Écoutons-les.	**Tuez-le.**
Let us listen to them.	*Kill him.*

2. Instead of me and te, moi and toi are used, but suffer elision before en or y.

Écoutez-moi.	**Lave-toi.**
Listen to me.	*Wash yourself.*

Donnez-m'en.
Give me some.

3. The direct object precedes the indirect object.

Montrez-le-nous.
Show it to us.

§ **231**. The following table gives the order of pronouns in an imperative affirmative sentence :—

Verb.	Acc. of 3rd Pers.	Dat. & Acc. of 1st & 2nd Pers., and Dat. of 3rd Pers.	Dative or Adverb.	Genitive or Adverb.
1	2	3	4	5
—		moi, m'	y	en
		toi, t'		
	le / la	lui		
		nous*		
		vous*		
	les	leur		

Obs. In the imperative negative the pronouns follow the general order given in § 229; *e.g.*, **Ne me le donnez pas,** *Do not give it to me.*

* **Nous** or **vous** used as datives more correctly precede an accusative of the third person ; *e.g.* **Voilà notre cheval, menez-nous-le,** *There is our horse, bring him to us.* But **menez-le-nous** is also admissible.

Notes on the Conjunctive Personal Pronouns.

§ **232.** 1. The pronouns le, la, les, are identical in form with the definite article, but there is little possibility of confusion, as in the latter sense they are associated with substantives and in the former with verbs. The pronouns never undergo contraction with the prepositions à and de.

Voici les clefs des tiroirs; ayez la bonté de les garder.
Here are the keys of the drawers; have the goodness to keep them.

§ **233.** 2. (*a*) Le, la, les, which are, strictly speaking, accusatives, are used with substantival force as nominative complements to the verb être, *to be*, in cases where no complement is required in English.

Êtes-vous la mère de cet enfant? Je la suis.
Are you the mother of this child? I am (i.e. *I am she*).

Êtes-vous les gens de la noce? Nous les sommes.
Are you the wedding party? We are (i.e. *We are they*).

(*b*) In reference to a substantive used generically, or to an adjective, the invariable neuter pronoun le is used with adjectival force as a complement.

Êtes-vous mère? Je le suis.
Are you a mother? I am (i.e. *I am such*).

Êtes-vous malades? Nous le serons bientôt.
Are you ill? We soon shall be (i.e. *shall be ill*).

Note.—**Le** is similarly used, where no pronoun is required in English, to refer to the idea contained in a preceding verb or clause; *e.g.* **Je viendrai si mon père me le permet,** *I shall come if my father allows me* (i.e. *allows me to come*).

§ **234.** 3. Leur.—The dative conjunctive pronoun leur is invariable, and so differs from the possessive adjective leur, and the possessive pronoun le leur (§ 247), which take the sign of the plural.

Ces garçons ont perdu leurs cahiers.
These boys have lost their exercise books.

Nous leur en donnerons d'autres.
We will give them others.

§ **235**. 4. **En**.—The word **en**, originally an adverb (L. **inde**), is used as an invariable conjunctive genitive with a variety of meanings, of which the commonest are *of it*, *of that*, *of them*, *some of it*, *some*, *any*. It is most frequently employed, in accordance with a logical completeness of statement which is characteristic of the language, to represent a preceding substantive which is unrepresented in English. For instance, in

Combien de pommes avez-vous? J'en ai trois.
How many apples have you? I have three.

the word **en** is as essential a part of the French sentence as any other word, although it has no equivalent in the English translation; and it must therefore be used whenever a substantive is understood after a word or number, whether substantive, adjective, or adverb (**beaucoup**, etc).

§ **236**. **En** is still occasionally used to refer to persons; but, as a general rule, we may say that, in speaking of animals and things, **en** takes the place of **de lui**, **d'elle**, **d'eux**, **d'elles**, and that the latter are used of persons.

Ce café est excellent; buvez-en.
This coffee is excellent; drink some.

Le glaive a tué bien des gens, la langue en a tué davantage.
The sword has killed many people, the tongue has killed more.

Quand on parle du loup, on en voit la queue.
Talk of the devil, and his horns will appear.

C'est un événement bien triste; j'en suis affligé.
That is a very sad event; I am grieved at it.

§ **237**. 5. **Y**.—This word, like **en**, was originally an adverb (L. **ibi**). It is an invariable dative, and usually stands instead of the datives **lui**, **leur**, in referring to animals and things.

J'ai reçu votre lettre; j'y répondrai.
I have received your letter; I shall answer it.

Quant à la raison que vous alléguez, je m'y rends.
As to the reason you allege, I yield to it.

Obs. 1. Both **en** and **y** are also used with the purely adverbial force which originally belonged to them, **en** meaning *thence*, and **y** *there*.

Connaissez-vous Paris ? J'en viens.
Do you know Paris ? I come thence.

Je n'y resterai pas longtemps.
I shall not stop there long.

Obs. 2. The pronoun or adverb **en** must not be confounded with the preposition **en**, *in*, which is of different origin (L. **in**).

Notes on the Disjunctive Personal Pronouns.

§ **238**. 1. A disjunctive personal pronoun may stand alone in answer to a question.

Qui va là ? Moi.
Who is there ? I.

§ **239**. 2. A disjunctive personal pronoun is used as the second term of a comparison.

Nous sommes plus âgés qu'eux.
We are older than they.

§ **240**. 3. A disjunctive personal pronoun stands as the direct object of a transitive verb accompanied by **ne . . . que**.

Je n'aime qu'elle.
I love none but her.

§ **241**. 4. The disjunctive personal pronouns are used when there are two or more subjects, objects or indirect objects to the same verb, one or more of such subjects or objects being pronouns.

Lui et elle sont arrivés.
He and she have arrived.

§ **242**. 5. The disjunctive personal pronouns are used in exclamations.

Moi ! trahir mon meilleur ami !
I betray my best friend !

§ **243**. 6. A disjunctive personal pronoun is used as the antecedent to a relative pronoun.

Moi, qui suis innocent, serai condamné.
I, who am innocent, shall be condemned.

§ **244**. 7. A disjunctive personal pronoun may precede the corresponding conjunctive pronoun for the sake of emphasis.

Elle ne vous aime pas; et moi, je vous hais.
She does not like you, and I hate you.

§ **245**. 8. The disjunctive personal pronouns are used after all prepositions.

À qui parlez-vous? À eux.
To whom are you speaking? To them.

Obs. This includes the case of verbs which are followed by **à** and an indirect object; *e.g.* **Pensez à moi**, *Think of me.*

§ **246**. 9. A disjunctive personal pronoun may stand as the complement of **c'est, ce sont**, etc.

Est-ce toi, mon cher?
Is it you, my dear fellow?

II.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **247**. The **Possessive Pronouns** are—

	Singular.		Plural.		
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.	
1st Pers. Sing.	le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	*mine*
2nd „ „	le tien	la tienne	les tiens	les tiennes	*thine*
3rd „ „	le sien	la sienne	les siens	les siennes	*his, hers*
1st „ Plur.	le nôtre	la nôtre	les nôtres		*ours*
2nd „ „	le vôtre	la vôtre	les vôtres		*yours*
3rd „ „	le leur	la leur	les leurs		*theirs*

§ **248**. The possessive pronouns may be declined as follows with the aid of prepositions:—

	Singular.		Plural.		
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Masculine.	Feminine.	
Nom.	le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	*mine*
Gen.	du mien	de la mienne	des miens	des miennes	*of mine*
Dat.	au mien	à la mienne	aux miens	aux miennes	*to mine*
Acc.	le mien	la mienne	les miens	les miennes	*mine*

The others may be similarly declined.

Notes on the Possessive Pronouns.

§ **249.** 1. Possessive Pronouns take the gender and number of the substantive to which they refer.

Ma montre ne va pas si bien que la sienne.
My watch does not go so well as his (or *hers*).

§ **250.** 2. As the predicate of the verb *to be*, the possessive pronoun is frequently replaced by a disjunctive personal pronoun and the preposition à.

Cette montre est la mienne, mais cette pendule est la leur.
ette montre est à moi, mais cette pendule est à eux (or **à elles**).
This watch is mine, but that clock is theirs.

III.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **251.** The Demonstrative Pronouns are—

Masc. Sing.	**celui,** *he* } *that,*	**celui-ci** } *this one,*	**celui-là** } *that one,*
Fem. Sing.	**celle,** *she* } *the one*	**celle-ci** } *the latter*	**celle-là** } *the former*
Masc. Plur.	**ceux** } *those*	**ceux-ci** } *these,*	**ceux-là** } *those,*
Fem. Plur.	**celles** }	**celles-ci** } *the latter*	**celles-là** } *the former*
Neut. Sing.	**ce,** *it, that,* etc.	**ceci,** *this*	**cela,** *that*

Notes on the Demonstrative Pronouns.

§ **252.** 1. **Celui, celle,** and their plurals **ceux, celles,** must always be followed by the preposition **de** or a relative pronoun. They usually refer to a substantive preceding; when they do not, they can only be used of persons.

Voici son chapeau et celui de sa sœur.
Here is his (or *her*) *hat and his* (or *her*) *sister's.*

Votre robe est plus jolie que celle de votre cousine.
Your dress is prettier than your cousin's.

Ceux qui font des heureux sont les vrais conquérants.
Those who make men happy are the true conquerors.

§ **253.** 2. **Celui-ci,** etc., **celui-là,** etc., are used as real demonstratives, *i.e.*, to point out or indicate, **celui-ci** referring to the nearer object, **celui-là** to the more remote.

Vos livres sont mieux reliés que ceux-là.
Your books are better bound than those.

Achetez des prunes et des marrons; mangez celles-là et gardez ceux-ci.
Buy some plums and chestnuts; eat the former and keep the latter.

Celui-ci est mon meilleur ami.
This is my best friend.

§ **254.** 3. **Ce.** — The **neuter demonstrative pronoun ce** (L. **ecce hoc**) is a different word from the demonstrative adjective **ce** (L. **ecce istum**). The former is used in two ways only: (*a*) like **celui**, before the relative pronouns, making, with one of the relatives, **qui**, **que**, **dont**, **à quoi**, the equivalent of English *what*; (*b*) as the subject of the verb **être**, *to be*, or of **pouvoir**, *to be able*, or **devoir**, *to be obliged*, followed by **être**.

(*a*) **Ce qui suffit ne fut jamais peu.**
Enough is as good as a feast (lit. *What suffices was never too little*).

Il fera ce que je lui demande.
He will do what I ask him.

(*b*) **C'est un homme de mérite.**
He is a man of merit.

Ce furent les Phéniciens qui inventèrent l'écriture.
It was the Phoenicians who invented writing.

Ce doit être lui.
That must be he.

Obs. Observe that **ce sont** is used instead of **c'est**, when the complement is of the **third person plural**; *e.g.* **C'est nous**, *It is we*; but **Ce sont eux**, *It is they.*

§ **255.** 4. **Ceci** and **cela** (formed from **ce** in the same way as **celui-ci** and **celui-là** are formed from **celui**) are real demonstratives, which never relate to antecedent substantives, and can only refer to things.

Donnez-lui ceci et jetez cela par la fenêtre.
Give him this and throw that out of the window.

N'oubliez pas cela.
Do not forget that.

NOTE.—**Cela** is familiarly abbreviated to **ça**; *e.g.* **Comment ça va-t-il?** *How goes it?*

IV.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **256**. The interrogative pronouns are **qui?** *who?* **que?** **quoi?** *what?* **lequel?** *which?* They may be declined as follows:—

	Singular and Plural. (Both genders.)	Singular.
Nom.	**qui?** *who?*	**que?** *what?*
Gen.	**de qui?** *of whom?*	**de quoi?** *of what?*
Dat.	**à qui?** *to whom?*	**à quoi?** *to what?*
Acc.	**qui?** *whom?*	**que?** *what?*

	Singular.		Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
Nom.	**lequel?**	**laquelle?**	**lesquels?**	**lesquelles?**	*which?*
Gen.	**duquel?**	**de laquelle?**	**desquels?**	**desquelles?**	*of which?*
Dat.	**auquel?**	**à laquelle?**	**auxquels?**	**auxquelles?**	*to which?*
Acc.	**lequel?**	**laquelle?**	**lesquels?**	**lesquelles?**	*which?*

Notes on the Interrogative Pronouns.

§ **257**. 1. The interrogative pronoun **qui**, in its various cases, is often replaced by the following locution:—

Nom.	**qui est-ce qui?**	*who (is it that)?*
Gen.	**de qui est-ce que?**	*of whom (is it that)?*
Dat.	**à qui est-ce que?**	*to whom (is it that)?*
Acc.	**qui est-ce que?**	*whom (is it that)?*

Qui vous a permis de sortir?
Qui est-ce qui vous a permis de sortir?
Who has allowed you to go out?

De qui parle-t-il?
De qui est-ce qu'il parle?
Of whom is he speaking?

À qui écrivez-vous?
À qui est-ce que vous écrivez?
To whom are you writing?

Qui cherchent-ils?
Qui est-ce qu'ils cherchent?
Whom are they seeking?

Obs. After **est-ce** the relative **qui** is used in the nominative, the relative **que** in the other cases.

§ **258**. 2. The various cases of que, or quoi, may be similarly replaced, especially in the nominative.

Nom.	**qu'est-ce qui ?**	*what (is it that) ?*
Gen.	**de quoi est-ce que ?**	*of what (is it that) ?*
Dat.	**à quoi est-ce que ?**	*to what (is it that) ?*
Acc.	**qu'est-ce que ?**	*what (is it that) ?*

Qu'est-ce qui vous empêche de sortir ?
What prevents you from going out ?

De quoi se plaint-il ?
De quoi est-ce qu'il se plaint ?
Of what does he complain ?

À quoi travaille-t-il ?
À quoi est-ce qu'il travaille ?
At what is he working ?

Que dit-il ?
Qu'est-ce qu'il dit ?
What does he say ?

NOTE.—The construction with all prepositions is the same as with **à** and **de**; *e.g.* **Contre qui êtes-vous fâché ?** *With whom are you angry ?* **En quoi consiste la différence ?** *Wherein consists the difference ?*

§ **259**. 3. The simple form que is only used in the nominative (*a*) with verbs such as être, *to be*, devenir, *to become*, etc.; (*b*) with impersonal verbs (§ 317—323).

(*a*) **Qu'est-il devenu ?**
What has become of him ?

(*b*) **Qu'importe ?**
What matters it ?

§ **260**. 4. Quoi is used only (*a*) with all prepositions (see § 258, NOTE), and (*b*) in elliptical exclamatory sentences without a finite verb.

Quoi ! vous me bravez ? — *What ! you defy me ?*

Quoi de nouveau ? — *What's the news ?*

§ **261**. 5. Lequel in its various forms is used, like the English *which*, when there is a choice of several persons or things.

Lequel de ces garçons est votre fils ?
Which of these boys is your son ?

Voici deux plumes; laquelle préférez-vous ?
Here are two pens; which do you prefer ?

V.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ **262**. The relative pronouns are **qui**, *who*, *which*, *that*; **ce qui**, *what* (*that which*); **lequel**, *who*, *which*.

§ **263**. **Qui** is declined as follows, the singular and plural being identical in form:—

	Of Persons.	Of Animals and Things.
Nom.	**qui**, *who*.	**qui**, *which*, *that*.
Gen.	**de qui, dont**, *of whom*.	**dont**, *of which*.
Dat.	**à qui**, *to whom*.	(**auquel**, etc., *to which*.)
Acc.	**que**, *whom*.	**que**, *which*, *that*.

§ **264**. **Ce qui** is thus declined:—

Nom. **ce qui**, *what*, *that which*.
Gen. **ce dont**, *that of which*.
Dat. **ce à quoi**, *that to which*.
Acc. **ce que**, *what*, *that which*.

§ **265**. The relative pronoun **lequel** is declined exactly as the interrogative pronoun **lequel**.

§ **266**. It should be noted that simple relative pronouns, with the exception of **dont**, are also used as interrogative pronouns. But **qui**, interrogative, is used both in the nominative and in the accusative, but of persons only; whereas **qui**, relative, is used of persons or of things, but not in the accusative case. So **que**, interrogative, is used in both cases, but of things only; and **que**, relative, of persons or of things, but in the accusative only.

Notes on the Relative Pronouns.

§ **267**. 1. The omission of the relative pronoun, so common in English, is never found in French.

Avez-vous trouvé le livre que vous cherchiez?
Have you found the book you were looking for?

§ **268**. 2. **Qui**, after a preposition, can only refer to persons; in reference to animals or things, one of the various forms of lequel must be used.

Les assassins par qui il fut tué ont été pendus.
The assassins by whom he was killed have been hung.

C'est l'étude à laquelle je consacre mes loisirs.
This is the study to which I devote my leisure.

§ **269**. 3. The accusative **que** is used both for persons and things.

Celui que j'aime est fort éloigné.
He whom I love is far away.

Voici la maison que nous voulons acheter.
Here is the house we want to buy.

§ **270**. 4. **Ce qui** is the demonstrative pronoun **ce** in conjunction with the relative **qui**, and is used as the equivalent of the English relative *what*.

Il aime ce qui est juste et équitable.
He likes what is just and fair.

Je ne comprends pas ce dont vous parlez.
I do not understand what you are talking about.

Ce à quoi elle pense est inconnu de tous.
What she is thinking of is known to no one.

Faites ce que vous voudrez.
Do what you like.

§ **271**. 5. **Lequel**.—As has been stated (§ 268), lequel, in its various forms, must be used in prepositional constructions relating to animals and things. Lequel may also be employed as a relative in other constructions, but its use is not to be recommended except when its variation for gender will remove ambiguity.

L'homme à qui (or **auquel**) **j'ai confié l'affaire m'a trahi.**
The man to whom I entrusted the matter has played me false.

J'ai passé chez la femme de mon cocher, laquelle est très malade.
I have been to see my coachman's wife, who is very ill.

Obs. Here the use of **qui** would leave doubt as to whether the coachman or his wife was ill.

§ **272**. It has been shown in the table given in § 263, that while **de qui** can only be applied to persons, **dont** and **duquel** (**de laquelle**, etc.) can refer to either persons or things. The form most commonly used is **dont**.

Voilà la pauvre vieille dont le mari est mort.
Voilà la pauvre vieille de qui le mari est mort.
Voilà la pauvre vieille de laquelle le mari est mort.
There is the poor old woman whose husband is dead.

Le chamois, dont le pied est aussi bon qu'une aile, se trouve en Suisse.
Le chamois, le pied duquel est aussi bon qu'une aile, se trouve en Suisse.
The chamois, whose foot is as good as a wing, is found in Switzerland.

§ **273**. The following important limitations to the use of **dont** should be noticed :—

(*a*) **Dont** must be replaced by **de qui** or by **duquel** (**de laquelle**, etc.), when the substantive on which the relative is dependent is governed by a preposition.

Je connais la dame dans la famille de qui elle est gouvernante.
Je connais la dame dans la famille de laquelle elle est gouvernante.
I know the lady in whose family she is governess.

(*b*) When the relative clause, if introduced by **dont**, would contain a personal pronoun referring to the antecedent of **dont**, the construction must be altered.

Le monsieur que son fils a ruiné est un de mes amis.
not
Le monsieur dont le fils l'a ruiné est un de mes amis.
The gentleman whose son has ruined him is a friend of mine.

§ **274**. 6. The word **où**, *where* (L. **ubi**) is often used, instead of **lequel** governed by a preposition, in speaking of **time, place, direction,** etc.

Le moment où nous naissons est un pas vers la mort.
The moment in which we are born is a step towards death.

La maison où je loge n'est pas loin d'ici.
The house, in which I live, is not far from here.

Le but où ils tendent est un but très noble.
The goal to which they tend is a very noble one.

Par où irons-nous, par ici ou par là ?
Which way shall we go, this or that?

VI.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 275. For indefinite pronouns which are also used as adjectives, see § 181. The following are used as pronouns only, and may be classified as variable and invariable.

§ 276. 1. Variable Indefinite Pronouns.

Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.
chacun	chacune	*each one*		
l'un	l'une	*the one*	les uns	les unes
l'un l'autre	l'une l'autre	*one another*	les uns les autres	les unes les autres
quelqu'un	quelqu'une	*some one*	quelques uns	quelques unes

Remettez ces chaises chacune à sa place.
Put each of these chairs in its place.

L'une d'elles est brisée.
One of them is broken.

Ces deux hommes se haïssent l'un l'autre.
These two men hate each other.

Tous ces gens se haïssent les uns les autres.
All these people hate one another.

Achetez quelques unes de ces gravures.
Buy some of these engravings.

§ 277. 2. Invariable Indefinite Pronouns.

autrui (never nominative), *others, other people.*
on, l'on, *one, people, they.*
personne, *any one, no one.*
quelque chose, *something.*
quiconque, *whoever.*
rien, *anything, nothing.*

Ne prends pas les biens d'autrui.
Do not take other people's property.

On trouve les diamants en Afrique.
Diamonds are found in Africa.

Je viendrai si l'on * me le permet.
I shall come if I am allowed.

Personne † n'est assez sot pour le croire
Nobody is so foolish as to believe him.

Qui vous l'a dit ? Personne.
Who told you so? No one.

Y a-t-il personne d'assez courageux ?
Is there anybody courageous enough?

J'ai appris quelque chose ‡ de fâcheux.
I have learnt something annoying.

Quiconque flatte son maître le trahit.
Whoever flatters his master betrays him.

Qui ne risque rien, n'a rien.
Nothing venture, nothing have.

Qu' avez-vous ? Rien.
What is the matter with you? Nothing.

Y a-t-il rien de plus beau ?
Is there anything more beautiful?

* **On** is often replaced by **l'on** after **et, ou, où, que, si,** for the sake of euphony.
† The masculine pronoun **personne** must be distinguished from the feminine substantive **une personne**, *a person.*
‡ The substantive **chose** is feminine, but the indefinite pronoun **quelque chose** is masculine, or, rather, neuter.

CHAPTER XI.—VERBS: THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

The beginner should read the following sections (§§ 278-292) *before, and also after, learning the auxiliary verbs and the four conjugations.*

§ **278**. Verbs are divided into four classes: (1) **transitive**, (2) **intransitive**, (3) **reflexive**, (4) **impersonal**.

The present chapter deals more especially with transitive verbs; the points in which the other three classes diverge from transitive verbs are given in the succeeding chapters.

Voice.

§ **279**. Of the two voices, **active** and **passive**, the passive is formed as in English, viz., by means of the auxiliary verb **être**, *to be*, combined with the past participle passive See § 301.

Mood.

§ **280**. A French verb has **four moods**: (*a*) indicative, (*b*) subjunctive, (*c*) conditional, and (*d*) imperative, in addition to (*e*) the infinitive and (*f*) the participles.

§ **281**. (*a*) The French **indicative** mood is always translated by the English indicative, and presents no difficulty.

(*b*) The **subjunctive** mood is much more used in French than in English. The chief rules for its employment are given in §§ 505-511.

Obs. The subjunctive is usually introduced by the conjunction **que**, *that*; hence **que** is included in the tables of the conjugation of the auxiliary verbs, though afterwards omitted to save space.

(*c*) The **conditional** mood is used in the apodosis (*i.e.* the result-clause) of a conditional sentence in which English employs the auxiliary *should* or *would*.

Si j'étais ton père, je te punirais.

If I were your father, I should punish you.

(*d*) In the **imperative** mood, which is used as in English, the third person (singular and plural) is supplied from the present subjunctive.

(*e*) The chief usages of the **infinitive** are given in §§ 512-516.

(*f*) The participles, in the active voice of a transitive verb, though properly speaking verbal adjectives, do not always vary for gender and number; only one form is therefore given in the tables. The rules as to the agreement of the participles are given in §§ 517-524.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE: (*a*) SIMPLE.

§ **282.** 1. *Present.*—The present, je porte, corresponds to the English *I carry, I am carrying.* It is important to remember that there is only one form in French corresponding to the two English forms.

Nous portons des bas de soie.
We wear silk stockings.

Ils babillent sans cesse.
They are always chattering.

NOTE.—The present is used, as in English, to indicate something about to take place in the immediate future, and also to describe the past with greater vividness. The following example from Boileau illustrates both usages:—

Mais hier il m'aborde, et, me tendant la main: "Ah! monsieur, m'a-t-il dit, je vous attends demain."
But yesterday he accosted me, and, holding out his hand, said: "Sir, I shall expect you to-morrow."

§ **283.** 2. *Imperfect.*—The imperfect, je portais, corresponds to the English *I carried, I was carrying, I used to carry.*

Alfred le Grand travaillait huit heures par jour.
Alfred the Great worked eight hours a day.

Nous vous attendions.
We were waiting for you.

Les Anglo-Saxons dînaient à dix heures du matin.
The Anglo-Saxons used to dine at ten in the morning.

§ **284.** 3. *Past Definite.*—The past definite, or preterite, je portai, corresponds to the English *I carried.*

Les conjurés tuèrent César.
The conspirators killed Caesar.

Obs. The distinction between the imperfect and past definite is one of the chief difficulties in writing French. It should be remembered that the imperfect implies continuity or habit, or describes an action or state as going on at the time of the occurrence of some other action or state.

Nous travaillions quand il entra.
We were working when he came in.

The past definite, on the other hand, refers to an action completed or state ended in definite past time, and is consequently the tense most employed in narrative. This is a point in which a little practice is worth a great deal of theory. The student is advised to read carefully a piece of good narrative French prose, and to account for the employment of each tense wherever it occurs. It will be found that the incidents are all related in the past definite (unless the present is used for vividness), while the accompanying circumstances are described in the imperfect.

§ **285**. 4. *Future.*—The future, je porterai, corresponds to the English *I shall carry.*

Nous vous rencontrerons plus tard.
We shall meet you later on.

NOTE.—In dependent clauses which relate to future time, the future is employed in French where the present is idiomatically used in English.

Appelez-moi dès qu'il sera là.
Call me as soon as he is there.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE: (*b*) COMPOUND.

§ **286**. 1. *Past Indefinite.*—The past indefinite, j'ai porté, corresponds to the English *I have carried, I carried, I have been carrying.*

Nous avons reçu deux lettres importantes.
We have received two important letters.

Il m'a rencontré ce matin. **J'ai patiné tout l'après-midi.**
He met me this morning. *I have been skating all the afternoon.*

Obs. The past indefinite is frequently used for the past definite in colloquial style, as in the second example above.

§ **287**. 2. *Pluperfect and Past Anterior.*—The pluperfect, 'avais porté, is the tense which usually corresponds to the English pluperfect. The past anterior, j'eus porté, is seldom used except to indicate immediate action, and is then introduced by dès que, aussitôt que, *as soon as*; à peine, *scarcely*, etc.

Il n'avait pas dîné quand je partis. **Dès qu'il eut fini je partis.**
He had not dined when I left. *As soon as he had finished I left.*

§ **288.** 3. *Future Perfect.*—The future perfect, **j'aurai porté**, *I shall have carried*, is used in the same way as the corresponding English tense.

Nous aurons achevé nos leçons à quatre heures.
We shall have finished our lessons at four.

NOTE.—In dependent clauses which relate to future time, the future perfect is employed in French where the present perfect is idiomatically used in English.

Quand nous aurons dîné, nous serons prêts à vous accompagner.
When we have dined, we shall be ready to accompany you.

NUMBER AND PERSON.

§ **289.** The usage of the **first** and **third** persons, singular and plural, is the same in French as in English.

The **second person singular** is used in French in archaic and poetic language (as in English), and also in addressing near relatives, intimate friends, and children.

The **second person plural** is used (except in the cases above mentioned) for the second person singular, as in English.

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

§ **290.** French verbs are divided into four **conjugations** according to the ending of the infinitive, which is

in the first conjugation	-er,	*e.g.*	port-er,	*to carry*;
,, second ,,	-ir,	,,	fin-ir,	*to finish*;
,, third ,,	-oir,	,,	recev-oir,	*to receive*;
,, fourth ,,	-re,	,,	romp-re,	*to break.*

§ **291.** From the five **principal parts** of a French verb all the other parts may be formed. The principal parts are

(1) the **present infinitive**;
(2) the **present participle** stem, *i.e.* the stem left after cutting off the ending **-ant**;
(3) the **past participle**;
(4) the **present indicative** (first person singular);
(5) the **past definite indicative** (,, ,,).

Obs. In the first and fourth conjugations the stem of regular verbs is the same throughout, and the principal parts are of less importance, but they are very useful in conjugating other verbs.

§ **292.** The various parts of a verb (other than the principal parts) are thus formed, with the addition of the suffixes shown in the tables of the four conjugations.

INDICATIVE.	Formed from	To form the first person add
Present, 2nd and 3rd pers. sing.	present indicative (1st sing.)	
* „ plural †	present participle stem	**-ons**
*Imperfect	„ „	**-ais**
Past definite (throughout)	past definite (1st sing.)	
*Future	infinitive	**-ai** ‡
SUBJUNCTIVE.		
*Present (except in the 3rd conj.)	present participle stem	**-e**
Imperfect	past definite (2nd sing.)	**-se**
*CONDITIONAL, present	infinitive	**-ais** ‡
IMPERATIVE, present (except 3rd person)	present indicative	

NOTE 1.—In forming the **future indicative** and **present conditional** from the infinitive, **oi** must be dropped in the case of verbs of the third conjugation and **e** in the case of verbs of the fourth; *e.g.*—

Infinitive, **recev-oir.** Future, **recev-r-ai.** Conditional, **recev-r-ais.**
„ **romp-re.** „ **romp-r-ai.** „ **romp-r-ais.**

NOTE 2.—The **imperfect subjunctive** (1st person singular) always ends in **-sse**; it is therefore convenient, in order to include verbs of the first conjugation under the general rule, to give the **second** person singular of the past definite as the part from which the imperfect subjunctive is formed.

NOTE 3.—The first person plural and the second person singular and plural of the present **imperative** are identical with the corresponding persons of the present indicative, save that in the first conjugation there is no final **-s** in the second person singular imperative. By analogy with the other conjugations a final **-s** is added before **en** and **y**; *e.g.* **Parles-en,** *Speak of it;* **Songes-y,** *Think of it.*

* In these parts of the verb the suffixes added throughout the tense to the "principal part" are the same in all four conjugations.

† In the third conjugation the vowel is generally changed in the third person plural.

‡ These suffixes represent respectively the present and imperfect of **avoir**; *e.g.* **je porter-ai,** *I have to carry,* i.e. *I shall carry.*

§ 293. CONJUGATION OF **AVOIR**, *TO HAVE*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *av-oir, ay-ant, eu, j'ai, j'eu-s.

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **av-oir**, *to have*	INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **avoir eu**, *to have had*
PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **ay-ant**, *having*	PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **ayant eu**, *having had*

PARTICIPLE, PAST (PASSIVE): **eu**, *had*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

j' **ai**,	*I have*
tu **as**,	*thou hast*
il **a**, elle **a**,	*he* (or *she*) *has*
nous **av-ons**,	*we have*
vous **av-ez**,	*you have*
ils **ont**, elles **ont**,	*they have*

IMPERFECT.

j' **av-ais**,	*I had*
tu **av-ais**,	*thou hadst*
il† **av-ait**,	*he had*
nous **av-ions**,	*we had*
vous **av-iez**,	*you had*
ils† **av-aient**,	*they had*

PAST DEFINITE.

j' **eu-s**,	*I had*
tu **eu-s**,	*thou hadst*
il **eu-t**,	*he had*
nous **cû-mes**,	*we had*
vous **cû-tes**,	*you had*
ils **eu-rent**,	*they had*

FUTURE.

j' **aur-ai**,	*I shall have*
tu **aur-as**,	*thou wilt have*
il **aur-a**,	*he will have*
nous **aur-ons**,	*we shall have*
vous **aur-ez**,	*you will have*
ils **aur-ont**,	*they will have*

PAST INDEFINITE.

j'**ai eu**,	*I have*	*had*
tu **as** eu,	*thou hast*	
il **a** eu, elle **a** eu,	*he* (or *she*) *has*	
nous avons eu,	*we have*	
vous avez eu,	*you have*	
ils ont eu, elles ont eu,	*they have*	

PLUPERFECT.

j'**avais eu**,	*I had*	*had*
tu avais eu,	*thou hadst*	
il avait eu,	*he had*	
nous avions eu,	*we had*	
vous aviez eu,	*you had*	
ils avaient eu,	*they had*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

j'**eus eu**,	*I had*	*had*
tu eus eu,	*thou hadst*	
il eut eu,	*he had*	
nous eûmes eu,	*we had*	
vous eûtes eu,	*you had*	
ils eurent eu,	*they had*	

FUTURE PERFECT.

j'**aurai eu**,	*I shall*	*have had*
tu auras eu,	*thou wilt*	
il aura eu,	*he will*	
nous aurons eu,	*we shall*	
vous aurez eu,	*you will*	
ils auront eu,	*they will*	

* The hyphens do not indicate division into syllables.
† The feminine forms have been omitted throughout in order to save space.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.			PAST INDEFINITE.		
(que) j' **ai-e**,	(*that*) *I may*	*have*	(que) j'**aie eu**,	(*that*) *I may*	*have had*
(que) tu **ai-es**,	(*that*) *thou mayst*		(que) tu **aies eu**,	(*that*) *thou mayst*	
(qu') il **ai-t**,	(*that*) *he may*		(qu') il **ait eu**,	(*that*) *he may*	
(que) nous **ay-ons**,	(*that*) *we may*		(que) nous **ayons eu**,	(*that*) *we may*	
(que) vous **ay-ez**,	(*that*) *you may*		(que) vous **ayez eu**,	(*that*) *you may*	
(qu') ils **ai-ent**,	(*that*) *they may*		(qu') ils **aient eu**,	(*that*) *they may*	

IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.		
(que) j' **eu-sse**,	(*that*) *I might*	*have*	(que) j'**eusse eu**,	(*that*) *I might*	*have had*
(que) tu **eu-sses**,	(*that*) *thou mightest*		(que) tu **eusses eu**,	(*that*) *thou mightest*	
(qu') il **eû-t**,	(*that*) *he might*		(qu') il **eût eu**,	(*that*) *he might*	
(que) nous **eu-ssions**,	(*that*) *we might*		(que) nous **eussions eu**,	(*that*) *we might*	
(que) vous **eu-ssiez**,	(*that*) *you might*		(que) vous **eussiez eu**,	(*that*) *you might*	
(qu') ils **eu-ssent**,	(*that*) *they might*		(qu') ils **eussent eu**,	(*that*) *they might*	

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.			PERFECT.		
j' **aur-ais**,	*I should*	*have*	j'**aurais eu**,	*I should*	*have had*
tu **aur-ais**,	*thou wouldst*		tu **aurais eu**,	*thou wouldst*	
il **aur-ait**,	*he would*		il **aurait eu**,	*he would*	
nous **aur-ions**,	*we should*		nous **aurions eu**,	*we should*	
vous **aur-iez**,	*you would*		vous **auriez eu**,	*you would*	
ils **aur-aient**,	*they would*		ils **auraient eu**,	*they would*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

ai-e,	*have*	**ay-ons**,	*let us have*
(qu'il **ai-t**),	*let him have*	**ay-ez**,	*have*
		(qu'ils **ai-ent**),	*let them have*

NOTE.—In the following expressions the verb **avoir**, *to have*, followed by a substantive, is rendered in English by the verb *to be*, followed by an adjective or adjectival phrase :—

avoir faim,	*to be hungry*	**avoir raison**,	*to be right*
avoir soif,	*to be thirsty*	**avoir tort**,	*to be wrong*
avoir chaud,	*to be warm*	**avoir peur**,	*to be afraid*
avoir froid,	*to be cold*	**avoir sommeil**,	*to be sleepy*

§ 294. CONJUGATION OF **ÊTRE**, *TO BE.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: êt-re, ét-ant, ét-é, je suis, je fu-s.

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **êt-re**, *to be*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **ét-ant**, *being*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **avoir été**, *to have been*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **ayant été**, *having been*

PARTICIPLE, PAST: **ét-é** (invariable), *been*

INDICATIVE MOOD

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.		
je **suis**,	*I am*	j'**ai été**,	*I have*	*been*
tu **es**,	*thou art*	tu as été,	*thou hast*	
il **est**,	*he is*	il a été,	*he has*	
nous **sommes**,	*we are*	nous avons été,	*we have*	
vous **êtes**,	*you are*	vous avez été,	*you have*	
ils **sont**,	*they are*	ils ont été,	*they have*	

IMPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.		
j' **ét-ais**,	*I was*	j'**avais été**,	*I had*	*been*
tu ét-**ais**,	*thou wast*	tu avais été,	*thou hadst*	
il ét-**ait**,	*he was*	il avait été,	*he had*	
nous ét-**ions**,	*we were*	nous avions été,	*we had*	
vous ét-**iez**,	*you were*	vous aviez été,	*you had*	
ils ét-**aient**,	*they were*	ils avaient été,	*they had*	

PAST DEFINITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.		
je **fu-s**,	*I was*	j'**eus été**,	*I had*	*been*
tu fu-**s**,	*thou wast*	tu eus été,	*thou hadst*	
il fu-**t**,	*he was*	il eut été,	*he had*	
nous fû-**mes**,	*we were*	nous eûmes été,	*we had*	
vous fû-**tes**,	*you were*	vous eûtes été,	*you had*	
ils fu-**rent**,	*they were*	ils eurent été,	*they had*	

FUTURE.		FUTURE PERFECT.		
je **ser-ai**,	*I shall be*	j'**aurai été**,	*I shall*	*have been*
tu ser-**as**,	*thou wilt be*	tu auras été,	*thou wilt*	
il ser-**a**,	*he will be*	il aura été,	*he will*	
nous ser-**ons**,	*we shall be*	nous aurons été,	*we shall*	
vous ser-**ez**,	*you will be*	vous aurez été,	*you will*	
ils ser-**ont**,	*they will be*	ils auront été,	*they will*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.			PAST INDEFINITE.		
(que) je **soi-s**,	(*that*) *I may*	*be*	(que) j'**aie été**,	(*that*) *I may*	*have been*
(que) tu **soi-s**,	(*that*) *thou mayst*		(que) tu **aies été**,	(*that*) *thou mayst*	
(qu') il **soi-t**,	(*that*) *he may*		(qu') il **ait été**,	(*that*) *he may*	
(que) nous **soy-ons**,	(*that*) *we may*		(que) nous **ayons été**,	(*that*) *we may*	
(que) vous **soy-ez**,	(*that*) *you may*		(que) vous **ayez été**,	(*that*) *you may*	
(qu') ils **soi-ent**,	(*that*) *they may*		(qu') ils **aient été**,	(*that*) *they may*	

IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.		
(que) je **fu-sse**,	(*that*) *I might*	*be*	(que) j'**eusse été**,	(*that*) *I might*	*have been*
(que) tu **fu-sses**,	(*that*) *thou mightest*		(que) tu **eusses été**,	(*that*) *thou mightest*	
(qu') il **fû-t**,	(*that*) *he might*		(qu') il **eût été**,	(*that*) *he might*	
(que) nous **fu-ssions**,	(*that*) *we might*		(que) nous **eussions été**,	(*that*) *we might*	
(que) vous **fu-ssiez**,	(*that*) *you might*		(que) vous **eussiez été**,	(*that*) *you might*	
(qu') ils **fu-ssent**,	(*that*) *they might*		(qu') ils **eussent été**,	(*that*) *they might*	

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.			PERFECT.		
je ser-ais,	*I should*	*be*	**j'aurais été**,	*I should*	*have been*
tu **ser-ais**,	*thou wouldst*		tu **aurais été**,	*thou wouldst*	
il **ser-ait**,	*he would*		il **aurait été**,	*he would*	
nous **ser-ions**,	*we should*		nous **aurions été**,	*we should*	
vous **ser-iez**,	*you would*		vous **auriez été**,	*you would*	
ils **ser-aient**,	*they would*		ils **auraient été**,	*they would*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

soi-s,	*be*	**soy-ons**,	*let us be*
(qu'il **soi-t**),	*let him be*	**soy-ez**,	*be*
		(qu'ils **soi-ent**),	*let them be*

NOTE. – The verb **être** is used as an auxiliary—

(*a*) in the conjugation of the passive voice (§ 301);
(*b*) in the compound tenses of certain intransitive verbs (§ 302);
(*c*) in the compound tenses of reflexive verbs (§ 311).

§ 295. FIRST CONJUGATION (INFINITIVE IN -ER).

MODEL: **porter**, *to carry*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **port-er, port-ant, port-é, je port-e, je port-ai.**

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **port-er**, *to carry*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **avoir porté**, *to have carried*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **port-ant**, *carrying*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **ayant porté**, *having carried*

PARTICIPLE, PAST (PASSIVE): **port-é**, *carried*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

je **port-e**,	*I carry*
tu port-**es**,	*thou carriest*
il port-**e**,	*he carries*
nous port-**ons**,	*we carry*
vous port-**ez**,	*you carry*
ils port-**ent**,	*they carry*

PAST INDEFINITE.

j'**ai porté**,	*I have*	*carried*
tu as porté,	*thou hast*	
il a porté,	*he has*	
nous avons porté,	*we have*	
vous avez porté,	*you have*	
ils ont porté,	*they have*	

IMPERFECT.

je **port-ais**,	*I was*	*carrying*
tu port-**ais**,	*thou wast*	
il port-**ait**,	*he was*	
nous port-**ions**,	*we were*	
vous port-**iez**,	*you were*	
ils port-**aient**,	*they were*	

PLUPERFECT.

j'**avais porté**,	*I had*	*carried*
tu avais porté,	*thou hadst*	
il avait porté,	*he had*	
nous avions porté,	*we had*	
vous aviez porté,	*you had*	
ils avaient porté,	*they had*	

PAST DEFINITE.

je **port-ai**,	*I carried*
tu port-**as**,	*thou carriedst*
il port-**a**,	*he carried*
nous port-**âmes**,	*we carried*
vous port-**âtes**,	*you carried*
ils port-**èrent**,	*they carried*

PAST ANTERIOR.

j'**eus porté**,	*I had*	*carried*
tu eus porté,	*thou hadst*	
il eut porté,	*he had*	
nous eûmes porté,	*we had*	
vous eûtes porté,	*you had*	
ils eurent porté,	*they had*	

FUTURE.

je **port-er-ai**,	*I shall carry*
tu port-**er-as**,	*thou wilt carry*
il port-**er-a**,	*he will carry*
nous port-**er-ons**,	*we shall carry*
vous port-**er-ez**,	*you will carry*
ils port-**er-ont**,	*they will carry*

FUTURE PERFECT.

j'**aurai porté**,	*I shall*	*have carried*
tu auras porté,	*thou wilt*	
il aura porté,	*he will*	
nous aurons porté,	*we shall*	
vous aurez porté,	*you will*	
ils auront porté,	*they will*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

je **port-e**,	*I may*	*carry*
tu port-**es**,	*thou mayst*	
il port-**e**,	*he may*	
nous port-**ions**,	*we may*	
vous port-**iez**,	*you may*	
ils port-**ent**,	*they may*	

PAST INDEFINITE.

j'**aie porté**,	*I may*	*have carried*
tu aies porté,	*thou mayst*	
il ait porté,	*he may*	
nous ayons porté,	*we may*	
vous ayez porté,	*you may*	
ils aient porté,	*they may*	

IMPERFECT.

je **port-asse**,	*I might*	*carry*
tu port-**asses**,	*thou mightest*	
il port-**ât**,	*he might*	
nous port-**assions**,	*we might*	
vous port-**assiez**,	*you might*	
ils port-**assent**,	*they might*	

PLUPERFECT.

j'**eusse porté**,	*I might*	*have carried*
tu eusses porté,	*thou mightest*	
il eût porté,	*he might*	
nous eussions porté,	*we might*	
vous eussiez porté,	*you might*	
ils eussent porté,	*they might*	

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

je **port-er-ais**,	*I should*	*carry*
tu port-**er-ais**,	*thou wouldst*	
il port-**er-ait**,	*he would*	
nous port-**er-ions**,	*we should*	
vous port-**er-iez**,	*you would*	
ils port-**er-aient**,	*they would*	

PERFECT.

j'**aurais porté**,	*I should*	*have carried*
tu aurais porté,	*thou wouldst*	
il aurait porté,	*he would*	
nous aurions porté,	*we should*	
vous auriez porté,	*you would*	
ils auraient porté,	*they would*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

port-e,	*carry*
(qu'il port-**e**),	*let him carry*
port-**ons**,	*let us carry*
port-**ez**,	*carry*
(qu'ils port-**ent**),	*let them carry*

NOTE 1.—This conjugation, which corresponds to the Latin first conjugation (infinitive in **-are**), comprises at least seven-eighths of the verbs in the language. Verbs of modern formation, with very few exceptions, fall into this class; *e.g.* **macadamiser**, *to macadamize* (from Macadam, who introduced the method of paving roads with broken granite), **télégraphier**, *to telegraph*, etc.

NOTE 2.—There are only two irregular verbs in **-er** (**aller** and **envoyer**, §§ 375, 376). For anomalies of spelling in some verbs of this conjugation, see §§ 346—368.

§ 296. SECOND CONJUGATION (INFINITIVE IN -IR).

MODEL: **finir**, *to finish.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: fin-ir, fin-iss-ant, fin-i, je fin-is, je fin-is.

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **fin-ir**, *to finish*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **fin-iss-ant**, *finishing*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **avoir fini**, *to have finished*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **ayant fini**, *having finished*

PARTICIPLE, PAST (PASSIVE): **fin-i**, *finished*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

je **fin-is**,	*I finish*
tu fin-**is**,	*thou finishest*
il fin-**it**,	*he finishes*
nous fin-**iss-ons**,	*we finish*
vous fin-**iss-ez**,	*you finish*
ils fin-**iss-ent**,	*they finish*

IMPERFECT.

je **fin-iss-ais**,	*I was*	*finishing*
tu fin-**iss-ais**,	*thou wast*	
il fin-**iss-ait**,	*he was*	
nous fin-**iss-ions**,	*we were*	
vous fin-**iss-iez**,	*you were*	
ils fin-**iss-aient**,	*they were*	

PAST DEFINITE.

je **fin-is**,	*I finished*
tu fin-**is**,	*thou finishedst*
il fin-**it**,	*he finished*
nous fin-**îmes**,	*we finished*
vous fin-**îtes**,	*you finished*
ils fin-**irent**,	*they finished*

FUTURE.

je **fin-ir-ai**,	*I shall finish*
tu fin-**ir-as**,	*thou wilt finish*
il fin-**ir-a**,	*he will finish*
nous fin-**ir-ons**,	*we shall finish*
vous fin-**ir-ez**,	*you will finish*
ils fin-**ir-ont**,	*they will finish*

PAST INDEFINITE.

j'**ai fini**,	*I have*	*finished*
tu as fini,	*thou hast*	
il a fini,	*he has*	
nous avons fini,	*we have*	
vous avez fini,	*you have*	
ils ont fini,	*they have*	

PLUPERFECT.

j'**avais fini**,	*I had*	*finished*
tu avais fini,	*thou hadst*	
il avait fini,	*he had*	
nous avions fini,	*we had*	
vous aviez fini,	*you had*	
ils avaient fini,	*they had*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

j'**eus fini**,	*I had*	*finished*
tu eus fini,	*thou hadst*	
il eut fini,	*he had*	
nous eûmes fini,	*we had*	
vous eûtes fini,	*you had*	
ils eurent fini,	*they had*	

FUTURE PERFECT.

j'**aurai fini**,	*I shall*	*have finished*
tu auras fini,	*thou wilt*	
il aura fini,	*he will*	
nous aurons fini,	*we shall*	
vous aurez fini,	*you will*	
ils auront fini,	*they will*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.			PAST INDEFINITE.		
je **fin-iss-e**,	*I may*	*finish*	j'aie fini,	*I may*	*have finished*
tu fin-iss-es,	*thou mayst*		tu aies fini,	*thou mayst*	
il fin-iss-e,	*he may*		il ait fini,	*he may*	
nous fin-iss-ions,	*we may*		nous ayons fini,	*we may*	
vous fin-iss-iez,	*you may*		vous ayez fini,	*you may*	
ils fin-iss-ent,	*they may*		ils aient fini,	*they may*	

IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.		
je **fin-isse**,	*I might*	*finish*	j'eusse fini,	*I might*	*have finished*
tu fin-isses,	*thou mightest*		tu eusses fini,	*thou mightest*	
il fin-ît,	*he might*		il eût fini,	*he might*	
nous fin-issions,	*we might*		nous eussions fini,	*we might*	
vous fin-issiez,	*you might*		vous eussiez fini,	*you might*	
ils fin-issent,	*they might*		ils eussent fini,	*they might*	

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.			PERFECT.		
je **fin-ir-ais**,	*I should*	*finish*	j'aurais fini,	*I should*	*have finished*
tu fin-ir-ais,	*thou wouldst*		tu aurais fini,	*thou wouldst*	
il fin-ir-ait,	*he would*		il aurait fini,	*he would*	
nous fin-ir-ions,	*we should*		nous aurions fini,	*we should*	
vous fin-ir-iez,	*you would*		vous auriez fini,	*you would*	
ils fin-ir-aient,	*they would*		ils auraient fini,	*they would*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.[3]

PRESENT.

fin-is,	*finish*
(qu'il fin-iss-e),	*let him finish*
fin-iss-ons,	*let us finish*
fin-iss-ez,	*finish*
(qu'ils fin-iss-ent),	*let them finish*

NOTE.—This conjugation, which corresponds to the Latin fourth conjugation (infinitive in **-ire**), comprises about 330 verbs, the majority of which follow the above model. The remainder, twenty-eight in number, lack the syllable **-iss-** (which has its origin in the **-isc-** of Latin inceptive verbs), and are accordingly classed as irregular (§§ 377—398).

§ 297. THIRD CONJUGATION (INFINITIVE IN -OIR).

MODEL: recevoir, *to receive.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: recev-oir, recev-ant, reç-u, je reçoi-s, je reç-us.

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **recev-oir**, *to receive*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **recev-ant**, *receiving*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **avoir reçu**, *to have received*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **ayant reçu**, *having received*

PARTICIPLE, PAST (PASSIVE): **reç-u**, *received*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.		PAST INDEFINITE.		
je **reçoi-s**,	*I receive*	j'**ai reçu**,	*I have*	*received*
tu reçoi-s,	*thou receivest*	tu as reçu,	*thou hast*	
il reçoi-t,	*he receives*	il a reçu,	*he has*	
nous **recev-ons**,	*we receive*	nous avons reçu,	*we have*	
vous recev-ez,	*you receive*	vous avez reçu,	*you have*	
ils **reçoiv-ent**,	*they receive*	ils ont reçu,	*they have*	

IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.		
je **recev-ais**,	*I was*	*receiving*	j'**avais reçu**,	*I had*	*received*
tu recev-ais,	*thou wast*		tu avais reçu,	*thou hadst*	
il recev-ait,	*he was*		il avait reçu,	*he had*	
nous recev-ions,	*we were*		nous avions reçu,	*we had*	
vous recev-iez,	*you were*		vous aviez reçu,	*you had*	
ils recev-aient,	*they were*		ils avaient reçu,	*they had*	

PAST DEFINITE.		PAST ANTERIOR.		
je **reç-us**,	*I received*	j'**eus reçu**,	*I had*	*received*
tu reç-us,	*thou receivedst*	tu eus reçu,	*thou hadst*	
il reç-ut,	*he received*	il eut reçu,	*he had*	
nous reç-ûmes,	*we received*	nous eûmes reçu,	*we had*	
vous reç-ûtes,	*you received*	vous eûtes reçu,	*you had*	
ils reç-urent,	*they received*	ils eurent reçu,	*they had*	

FUTURE.			FUTURE PERFECT.		
je **recev-r-ai**,	*I shall*	*receive*	j'**aurai reçu**,	*I shall*	*have received*
tu recev-r-as,	*thou wilt*		tu auras reçu,	*thou wilt*	
il recev-r-a,	*he will*		il aura reçu,	*he will*	
nous recev-r-ons,	*we shall*		nous aurons reçu,	*we shall*	
vous recev-r-ez,	*you will*		vous aurez reçu,	*you will*	
ils recev-r-ont,	*they will*		ils auront reçu,	*they will*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.			PAST INDEFINITE.		
je **reçoiv-e**,	*I may*	*receive*	j'**aie reçu**,	*I may*	*have received*
tu reçoiv-**es**,	*thou mayst*		tu aies reçu,	*thou mayst*	
il reçoiv-**e**,	*he may*		il ait reçu,	*he may*	
nous **recev-ions**,	*we may*		nous ayons reçu,	*we may*	
vous recev-**iez**,	*you may*		vous ayez reçu,	*you may*	
ils **reçoiv-ent**,	*they may*		ils aient reçu,	*they may*	

IMPERFECT.			PLUPERFECT.		
je **reç-usse**,	*I might*	*receive*	j'**eusse reçu**,	*I might*	*have received*
tu reç-**usses**,	*thou mightest*		tu eusses reçu,	*thou mightest*	
il reç-**ût**,	*he might*		il eût reçu,	*he might*	
nous reç-**ussions**,	*we might*		nous eussions reçu,	*we might*	
vous reç-**ussiez**,	*you might*		vous eussiez reçu,	*you might*	
ils reç-**ussent**,	*they might*		ils eussent reçu,	*they might*	

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.			PERFECT.		
je **recev-r-ais**,	*I should*	*receive*	j'**aurais reçu**,	*I should*	*have received*
tu recev-**r-ais**,	*thou wouldst*		tu aurais reçu,	*thou wouldst*	
il recev-**r-ait**,	*he would*		il aurait reçu,	*he would*	
nous recev-**r-ions**,	*we should*		nous aurions reçu,	*we should*	
vous recev-**r-iez**,	*you would*		vous auriez reçu,	*you would*	
ils recev-**r-aient**,	*they would*		ils auraient reçu,	*they would*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

reçoi-s,	*receive*
(qu'il **reçoiv-e**),	*let him receive*
recev-ons,	*let us receive*
recev-**ez**,	*receive*
(qu'ils **reçoiv-ent**),	*let them receive*

NOTE 1.—This conjugation, which corresponds to the Latin second conjugation (infinitive in **-ēre**), comprises about twenty verbs, all of which are more or less irregular (§§ 399—412). Like **recevoir** are conjugated about half a dozen other verbs in **-cev-oir**.

NOTE 2.—The cedilla is used in **recevoir** and other verbs ending in **-cev-oir** whenever the **c** is followed by **o** or **u**; by this means the soft sound of the **c** is preserved.

§ 298. FOURTH CONJUGATION (INFINITIVE IN -RE).

MODEL: **rompre**, *to break.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **romp-re, romp-ant, romp-u, je romp-s, je romp-is.**

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **romp-re**, *to break*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **romp-ant**, *breaking*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **avoir rompu**, *to have broken*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **ayant rompu**, *having broken*

PARTICIPLE, PAST (PASSIVE): **romp-u**, *broken*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

je **romp-s**,	*I break*
tu romp-**s**,	*thou breakest*
il romp-**t**,	*he breaks*
nous romp-**ons**,	*we break*
vous romp-**ez**,	*you break*
ils romp-**ent**,	*they break*

IMPERFECT.

je **romp-ais**,	*I was*	*breaking*
tu romp-**ais**,	*thou wast*	
il romp-**ait**,	*he was*	
nous romp-**ions**,	*we were*	
vous romp-**iez**,	*you were*	
ils romp-**aient**,	*they were*	

PAST DEFINITE.

je **romp-is**	*I broke*
tu romp-**is**,	*thou brokest*
il romp-**it**,	*he broke*
nous romp-**îmes**,	*we broke*
vous romp-**îtes**,	*you broke*
ils romp-**irent**,	*they broke*

FUTURE.

je **romp-r-ai**,	*I shall break*
tu romp-**r-as**,	*thou wilt break*
il romp-**r-a**,	*he will break*
nous romp-**r-ons**,	*we shall break*
vous romp-**r-ez**,	*you will break*
ils romp-**r-ont**,	*they will break*

PAST INDEFINITE.

j'ai rompu,	*I have*	*broken*
tu as rompu,	*thou hast*	
il a rompu,	*he has*	
nous avons rompu,	*we have*	
vous avez rompu,	*you have*	
ils ont rompu,	*they have*	

PLUPERFECT.

j'avais rompu,	*I had*	*broken*
tu avais rompu,	*thou hadst*	
il avait rompu,	*he had*	
nous avions rompu,	*we had*	
vous aviez rompu,	*you had*	
ils avaient rompu,	*they had*	

PAST ANTERIOR.

j'eus rompu,	*I had*	*broken*
tu eus rompu,	*thou hadst*	
il eut rompu,	*he had*	
nous eûmes rompu,	*we had*	
vous eûtes rompu,	*you had*	
ils eurent rompu,	*they had*	

FUTURE PERFECT.

j'aurai rompu,	*I shall*	*have broken*
tu auras rompu,	*thou wilt*	
il aura rompu,	*he will*	
nous aurons rompu,	*we shall*	
vous aurez rompu,	*you will*	
ils auront rompu,	*they will*	

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.			Past Indefinite.		
je **romp-e**,	*I may*	*break*	j'aie **rompu**,	*I may*	*have broken*
tu romp-**es**,	*thou mayst*		tu aies rompu,	*thou mayst*	
il romp-**e**,	*he may*		il ait rompu,	*he may*	
nous romp-**ions**,	*we may*		nous ayons rompu,	*we may*	
vous romp-**iez**,	*you may*		vous ayez rompu,	*you may*	
ils romp-**ent**.	*they may*		ils aient rompu,	*they may*	

Imperfect.			Pluperfect.		
je **romp-isse**,	*I might*	*break*	j'**eusse rompu**,	*I might*	*have broken*
tu romp-**isses**,	*thou mightest*		tu eusses rompu,	*thou mightest*	
il romp-**ît**,	*he might*		il eût rompu,	*he might*	
nous romp-**issions**,	*we might*		nous eussions rompu,	*we might*	
vous romp-**issiez**,	*you might*		vous eussiez rompu,	*you might*	
ils romp-**issent**,	*they might*		ils eussent rompu,	*they might*	

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Present.			Perfect.		
je **romp-r-ais**,	*I should*	*break*	j'**aurais rompu**,	*I should*	*have broken*
tu romp-**r-ais**,	*thou wouldst*		tu aurais rompu,	*thou wouldst*	
il romp-**r-ait**,	*he would*		il aurait rompu,	*he would*	
nous romp-**r-ions**,	*we should*		nous aurions rompu,	*we should*	
vous romp-**r-iez**,	*you would*		vous auriez rompu,	*you would*	
ils romp-**r-aient**,	*they would*		ils auraient rompu,	*they would*	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present.

romp-s,	*break*
(qu'il romp-**e**),	*let him break*
romp-ons,	*let us break*
romp-**ez**,	*break*
(qu'ils romp-**ent**),	*let them break*

Note 1.—This conjugation, which corresponds to the Latin third conjugation (infinitive in -ĕre), comprises fifty verbs, of which about half follow the model above, the rest being irregular (§§ 413—449).

Note 2.—Verbs of which the stem ends in **-d** drop the **-t** in the third person singular of the present indicative; *e.g.* **il perd**, *he loses*, from **perd-re**, *to lose*.

§ 299. Paradigm of the Four Conjugations.

Present Infinitive.	Present Participle.	Past Participle Passive.
port-er	port -ant	port-é
romp-re	romp -ant	romp-u
fin-ir	fin-iss -ant	fin-i
recev-oir	recev -ant	reç-u

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	port	-e	-es	-e	port	-ons	-ez		-ent
	romp		-s	-t*	romp				
	fin	-is	-is	-it	fin-iss				
	reçoi	-s	-s	-t	recev	-ons	-ez	reçoiv	-ent
Imperfect Tense.	port	-ais	-ais	-ait		-ions	-iez		-aient
	romp								
	fin-iss								
	recev								
Past Definite Tense.	port	-ai	-as	-a		-âmes	-âtes		-èrent
	romp	-is	-is	-it		-îmes	-îtes		-irent
	fin								
	reç	-us	-us	-ut		-ûmes	-ûtes		-urent
Future Tense.	port-er	-ai	-as	-a		-ons	-ez		-ont
	romp-r								
	fin-ir								
	recev-r								

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.	port	-e	-es	-e		-ions	-iez		-ent
	romp								
	fin-iss								
	reçoiv	-e	-es	-e	recev	-ions	-iez	reçoiv	-ent
Imperfect Tense.	port	-asse	-asses	-ât		-assions	-assiez		-assent
	romp	-isse	-isses	-ît		-issions	-issiez		-issent
	fin								
	reç	-usse	-usses	-ût		-ussions	-ussiez		-ussent

* Verbs of the fourth conjugation with stems ending in **-d** drop this **-t**; *e.g.* **il rend**, *he renders*, from **rendre**.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	port-er romp-r fin-ir recev-r	-ais	-ais	-ait	-ions	-iez	-aient

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.	port	-e	port	-ons	-ez
	romp	-s	romp		
	fin	-is	fin-iss		
	reçoi	-s	recev	-ons	-ez

Obs. In this paradigm the fourth conjugation is placed immediately after the first, as these two conjugations alone retain the stem unchanged throughout.

§ **300.** The following table shows what tenses, etc., may be formed from each of the principal parts:—

PRINCIPAL PARTS.	TENSES FORMED THEREFROM.
INFINITIVE . . .	Future Indicative Present Conditional
PRESENT PARTICIPLE STEM (found by cutting off the final -ant).	Plural* of Present Indicative and of Imperative Imperfect Indicative Present Subjunctive (except in 3rd Conjugation)
PAST PARTICIPLE PASSIVE	All Compound Tenses
PRESENT INDICATIVE .	Singular of Present Indicative and Imperative
PAST DEFINITE . .	Imperfect Subjunctive

* In the third conjugation the vowel is generally changed in the third person plural.

§ 301. CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

MODEL: **être aimé,** *to be loved.*

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **être aimé,*** *to be loved*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **étant aimé,*** *being loved*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **avoir été aimé,*** *to have been loved*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **ayant été aimé,*** *having been loved*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.
(*I am loved.*)

je **suis aimé** or **aimée**
tu **es aimé** or **aimée**
il **est aimé**, elle **est aimée**
nous **sommes aimés** or **aimées**
vous **êtes aimés** or **aimées**
ils **sont aimés**
elles **sont aimées**

IMPERFECT. (*I was loved.*)

j'**étais** } **aimé** or
tu étais } **aimée**
il était aimé
elle était aimée
nous étions } aimés *or*
vous étiez } aimées
ils étaient aimés
elles étaient aimées

PAST DEFINITE.
(*I was loved.*)

je **fus** } **aimé** or
tu fus } **aimée**
il fut aimé, elle fut aimée
nous fûmes } aimés *or*
vous fûtes } aimées
ils furent aimés
elles furent aimées

FUTURE.
(*I shall be loved.*)

je **serai** } **aimé** or
tu seras } **aimée**
il sera aimé, elle sera aimée
nous serons } aimés *or*
vous serez } aimées
ils seront aimés
elles seront aimées

PAST INDEFINITE.
(*I have been loved.*)

j'**ai été** } **aimé** or
tu as été } **aimée**
il a été aimé, elle a été aimée
nous avons été } aimés *or*
vous avez été } aimées
ils ont été aimés
elles ont été aimées

PLUPERFECT. (*I had been loved.*)

j'**avais été** } **aimé** or
tu avais été } **aimée**
il avait été aimé
elle avait été aimée
nous avions été } aimés *or*
vous aviez été } aimées
ils avaient été aimés
elles avaient été aimées

PAST ANTERIOR.
(*I had been loved.*)

j'**eus été** } **aimé** or
tu eus été } **aimée**
il eut été aimé, elle eut été aimée
nous eûmes été } aimés *or*
vous eûtes été } aimées
ils eurent été aimés
elles eurent été aimées

FUTURE PERFECT.
(*I shall have been loved.*)

j'**aurai été** } **aimé** or
tu auras été } **aimée**
il aura été aimé, elle aura été aimée
nous aurons été } aimés *or*
vous aurez été } aimées
ils auront été aimés
elles auront été aimées

* **Aimé** is here variable: **aimé, aimée, aimés** or **aimées.**

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(I may be loved.)

je **sois** } **aimé** or
tu sois } **aimée**
il soit aimé, elle soit aimée

nous soyons } aimés *or*
vous soyez } aimées
ils soient aimés
elles soient aimées

PAST-INDEFINITE.

(I may have been loved.)

j'**aie été** } **aimé** or
tu aies été } **aimée**
il ait été aimé, elle ait été aimée

nous ayons été } aimés *or*
vous ayez été } aimées
ils aient été aimés
elles aient été aimées

IMPERFECT.

(I might be loved.)

je **fusse** } **aimé** or
tu fusses } **aimée**
il fût aimé, elle fût aimée

nous fussions } aimés *or*
vous fussiez } aimées
ils fussent aimés
elles fussent aimées

PLUPERFECT.

(I might have been loved.)

j'**eusse été** } **aimé** or
tu eusses été } **aimée**
il eût été aimé, elle eût été aimée

nous eussions été } aimés *or*
vous eussiez été } aimées
ils eussent été aimés
elles eussent été aimées

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

(I should be loved.)

je **serais** } **aimé** or
tu serais } **aimée**
il serait aimé
elle serait aimée

nous serions } aimés *or*
vous seriez } aimées
ils seraient aimés
elles seraient aimées

PERFECT.

(I should have been loved.)

j'**aurais été** } **aimé** or
tu aurais été } **aimée**
il aurait été aimé
elle aurait été aimée

nous aurions été } aimés *or*
vous auriez été } aimées
ils auraient été aimés
elles auraient été aimées

IMPERATIVE MOOD.—PRESENT.

sois aimé or **aimée**, *be loved*
(qu'il soit aimé), *let him be loved*
(qu'elle soit aimée), *let her be loved*

soyons aimés *or* aimées, *let us be loved*
soyez aimés *or* aimées, *be loved*
(qu'ils soient aimés, } *let them be loved*
(qu'elles soient aimées, }

NOTE 1.—The past participle **été** is invariable.

NOTE 2.—When the second person plural is used in addressing one person only, the past participle remains singular, but varies for gender; *e.g.* **Vous êtes aimée de tous, ma mère,** *You are beloved of all, mother.*

CHAPTER XII.—INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

§ **302.** Most intransitive verbs form their compound tenses, like transitive verbs, with the auxiliary avoir, but the following twelve, with their compounds, are conjugated with être.

aller, *to go.*
arriver, *to arrive.*
décéder, *to die.*
entrer, *to enter.*
mourir, *to die.*
naître, *to be born.*
partir, *to depart.*
rester, *to remain.*
retourner, *to go back.*
sortir, *to go out.*
tomber, *to fall.*
venir, *to come.*

NOTE.—The following three defective verbs of comparatively rare occurrence also form their compound tenses with the auxiliary **être**:—**choir**, *to fall*; **échoir**, *to become due*; **éclore**, *to be hatched.*

§ **303.** A number of intransitive verbs, including some of those given in § 302, can be conjugated either with avoir or être, the former to indicate the progress of an action; the latter to express the state resulting from that action.

La neige a tombé pendant quatre heures.
It has been snowing for four hours.

Voyez toute la neige qui est tombée.
Look at all the snow that has fallen.

§ **304.** Many intransitive verbs can also be used transitively, in which case they of course form their compound tenses with avoir.

Tout le monde est sorti (intransitive).
Every one has gone out.

Nous l'avons sorti d'une fâcheuse affaire (transitive).
We got him out of an awkward fix.

§ **305.** The past participle of intransitive verbs conjugated with être agrees in gender and number with the subject, but remains singular when used in addressing one person only.

Vous êtes arrivée de bonne heure, Marie.
You have arrived early, Mary.

§306. CONJUGATION OF AN INTRANSITIVE VERB WITH THE AUXILIARY ÊTRE IN THE COMPOUND TENSES.

MODEL: **tomber**, *to fall* (compound tenses only).

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **être tombé,*** *to have fallen*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **étant tombé,*** *having fallen*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PAST INDEFINITE.
(*I have fallen.*)

je **suis** } **tombé** or
tu **es** } **tombée**
il **est tombé**, elle **est tombée**

nous **sommes** } **tombés** or
vous **êtes** } **tombées**
ils **sont tombés**
elles **sont tombées**

PLUPERFECT.
(*I had fallen.*)

j'**étais** } **tombé** or
tu **étais** } **tombée**
il était tombé, elle était tombée

nous étions } tombés *or*
vous étiez } tombées
ils étaient tombés
elles étaient tombées

PAST ANTERIOR.
(*I had fallen.*)

je **fus** } **tombé** or
tu **fus** } **tombée**
il fut tombé, elle fut tombée

nous fûmes } tombés *or*
vous fûtes } tombées
ils furent tombés
elles furent tombées

FUTURE PERFECT.
(*I shall have fallen.*)

je **serai** } **tombé** or
tu **seras** } **tombée**
il sera tombé, elle sera tombée

nous serons } tombés *or*
vous serez } tombées
ils seront tombés
elles seront tombées

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PAST INDEFINITE.
(*I may have fallen.*)

je **sois** } **tombé** or
tu **sois** } **tombée**
il soit tombé, elle soit tombée

nous soyons } tombés *or*
vous soyez } tombées
ils soient tombés
elles soient tombées

PLUPERFECT.
(*I might have fallen.*)

je **fusse** } **tombé** or
tu **fusses** } **tombée**
il fût tombé, elle fût tombée

nous fussions } tombés *or*
vous fussiez } tombées
ils fussent tombés
elles fussent tombées

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PERFECT. (*I should have fallen.*)

je **serais** } **tombé** or
tu **serais** } **tombée**
il serait tombé
elle serait tombée

nous serions } tombés *or*
vous seriez } tombées
ils seraient tombés
elles seraient tombées

* **Tombé** is here variable: **tombé, tombée, tombés** or **tombées.**

CHAPTER XIII.—REFLEXIVE VERBS.

§ **307.** Reflexive verbs are those which are accompanied by the reflexive pronouns

me, *myself*	nous, *ourselves*
te, *thyself*	vous, *yourselves*
se, *himself*, *herself*	se, *themselves*

§ **308.** Reflexive verbs are divided into two classes :—

(i) Verbs **naturally reflexive** ;
(ii) Verbs **accidentally reflexive.**

To the first class belong verbs which are never used otherwise than reflexively ; the second class includes transitive or intransitive verbs which are occasionally thus employed. Thus, the verb **se repentir**, *to repent*, is naturally reflexive, for there is no verb **repentir** ; on the other hand, **se lever**, *to get up*, is accidentally reflexive, **lever**, *to raise*, being a transitive verb.

§ **309.** In English many verbs can be used either transitively or intransitively without change of form ; e.g. *to turn*, *to stop*, *to wash*. The **intransitive** force of such verbs is usually **expressed in French by a reflexive form** ; reflexive verbs are consequently much more freely employed in French than in English.

Arrêtez le fiacre (transitive).
Stop the cab.
Le fiacre s'arrêta (reflexive).
The cab stopped (intransitive).

§ **310.** In French a **reflexive** verb often **takes the place** of an English **passive** form, provided that no definite agent is expressed or implied.

Le lion se trouve en Afrique.
Lions are found in Africa.
Mon frère s'appelle Henri.
My brother is named Henry.

§ **311.** All reflexive verbs form their **compound tenses** with the auxiliary **être.** In the conjugation of a verb naturally reflexive, the past participle agrees in gender and number with the reflexive pronoun, and hence with the subject. The agreement of the past participle in the case of verbs accidentally reflexive is dealt with in § 523.

§ 312. CONJUGATION OF A REFLEXIVE VERB.

MODEL: **se baigner**, *to bathe.*

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **se* baigner**, *to bathe*	INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **s'* être baigné**, *to have bathed*
PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **se* baignant**, *bathing*	PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **s'* étant baigné**, *having bathed*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I bathe.*)	PAST INDEFINITE. (*I have bathed.*)
je me baigne	**je me suis** } **baigné** or **baignée**
tu te baignes	tu t'es } **baigné** or **baignée**
il se baigne	il s'est baigné
elle se baigne	elle s'est baignée
nous nous baignons	nous nous sommes } baignés *or* baignées
vous vous baignez	vous vous êtes } baignés *or* baignées
ils se baignent	ils se sont baignés
elles se baignent	elles se sont baignées

IMPERFECT. (*I was bathing.*)	PLUPERFECT. (*I had bathed.*)
je me baignais	**je m'étais** } **baigné** or **baignée**
tu te baignais	tu t'étais } **baigné** or **baignée**
il se baignait	il s'était baigné
elle se baignait	elle s'était baignée
nous nous baignions	nous nous étions } baignés *or* baignées
vous vous baigniez	vous vous étiez } baignés *or* baignées
ils se baignaient	ils s'étaient baignés
elles se baignaient	elles s'étaient baignées

PAST DEFINITE. (*I bathed.*)	PAST ANTERIOR. (*I had bathed.*)
je me baignai	**je me fus** } **baigné** or **baignée**
tu te baignas	tu te fus } **baigné** or **baignée**
il se baigna	il se fut baigné
elle se baigna	elle se fut baignée
nous nous baignâmes	nous nous fûmes } baignés *or* baignées
vous vous baignâtes	vous vous fûtes } baignés *or* baignées
ils se baignèrent	ils se furent baignés
elles se baignèrent	elles se furent baignées

* **Se** may here be replaced by **me, te, nous,** or **vous,** and **baigné** by **baignée, baignés,** or **baignées,** according to the context.

FUTURE.	FUTURE PERFECT.
(I shall bathe.)	*(I shall have bathed.)*
je me baignerai	**je me serai** } **baigné** or
tu te baigneras	tu te seras } **baignée**
il se baignera	il se sera baigné
elle se baignera	elle se sera baignée
nous nous baignerons	nous nous serons } baignés *or*
vous vous baignerez	vous vous serez } baignées
ils se baigneront	ils se seront baignés
elles se baigneront	elles se seront baignées

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.	PAST INDEFINITE.
(I may bathe.)	*(I may have bathed.)*
je me baigne	**je me sois** } **baigné** or
tu te baignes	tu te sois } **baignée**
il se baigne	il se soit baigné
elle se baigne	elle se soit baignée
nous nous baignions	nous nous soyons } baignés *or*
vous vous baigniez	vous vous soyez } baignées
ils se baignent	ils se soient baignés
elles se baignent	elles se soient baignées

IMPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
(I might bathe.)	*(I might have bathed.)*
je me baignasse	**je me fusse** } **baigné** or
tu te baignasses	tu te fusses } **baignée**
il se baignât	il se fût baigné
elle se baignât	elle se fût baignée
nous nous baignassions	nous nous fussions } baignés *or*
vous vous baignassiez	vous vous fussiez } baignées
ils se baignassent	ils se fussent baignés
elles se baignassent	elles se fussent baignées

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
(I should bathe.)	*(I should have bathed.)*
je me baignerais	**je me serais** } **baigné** or
tu te baignerais	tu te serais } **baignée**
il se baignerait	il se serait baigné
elle se baignerait	elle se serait baignée
nous nous baignerions	nous nous serions } baignés *or*
vous vous baigneriez	vous vous seriez } baignées
ils se baigneraient	ils se seraient baignés
elles se baigneraient	elles se seraient baignées

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

baigne-toi,	*bathe*
(qu'il se baigne),	*let him bathe*
(qu'elle se baigne),	*let her bathe*
baignons-nous,	*let us bathe*
baignez-vous,	*bathe*
(qu'ils se baignent), (qu'elles se baignent),	*let them bathe*

CHAPTER XIV.—**ALLER, VENIR,** AND **DEVOIR** AS AUXILIARIES.

§ **313**. Besides avoir and être, the three verbs aller, venir, and devoir are employed in an auxiliary manner in the formation of certain idiomatic expressions.

I.—ALLER (§ 375).

§ **314**. The present and imperfect of aller, *to go*, are used with an infinitive in the sense of the English *to be about to . . ., to be going to . . .*

PRESENT. (*I am going to sing* or *I am about to sing.*)	IMPERFECT. (*I was going to sing* or *I was about to sing.*)
je **vais chanter**	j'**allais chanter**
tu vas chanter	tu allais chanter
il va chanter	il allait chanter
nous allons chanter	nous allions chanter
vous allez chanter	vous alliez chanter
ils vont chanter	ils allaient chanter

II.—VENIR (§ 395).

§ **315.** The present and imperfect of venir, *to come*, followed by the preposition de, are used with an infinitive in the sense of the English *to have just* . . .

PRESENT. (*I have just finished.*)	IMPERFECT. (*I had just finished.*)
je **viens de finir**	je **venais de finir**
tu viens de finir	tu venais de finir
il vient de finir	il venait de finir
nous venons de finir	nous venions de finir
vous venez de finir	vous veniez de finir
ils viennent de finir	ils venaient de finir

III.—DEVOIR (§ 400).

§ **316.** Devoir, *to owe*, when it is followed by an infinitive, denotes necessity, compulsion or destiny, and in the conditional corresponds to the English auxiliary *ought*.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I am to go*, or *I must go*, or *I have to go.*)	IMPERFECT. (*I was to go*, or *I was destined to go*, or *I had to go.*)
je **dois aller**	je **devais aller**
tu dois aller	tu devais aller
il doit aller	il devait aller
nous devons aller	nous devions aller
vous devez aller	vous deviez aller
ils doivent aller	ils devaient aller

PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have had to go*, or *I have been obliged to go.*)

j'**ai dû aller**	nous avons dû aller
tu as dû aller	vous avez dû aller
il a dû aller	ils ont dû aller

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT. (*I ought to go.*)	PERFECT. (*I ought to have gone.*)
je **devrais aller**	j'**aurais dû aller**
tu devrais aller	tu aurais dû aller
il devrait aller	il aurait dû aller
nous devrions aller	nous aurions dû aller
vous devriez aller	vous auriez dû aller
ils devraient aller	ils auraient dû aller

CHAPTER XV.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ **317.** Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular. They are divided into two classes :—

(i) Verbs **naturally** impersonal ;
(ii) Verbs **accidentally** impersonal.

The first class consists of verbs which are never used otherwise than impersonally, while the latter includes ordinary verbs which may be used in the third person singular with some special meaning.

Il faut travailler pour réussir (naturally impersonal).
It is necessary to work in order to succeed.

Il tombe de la pluie (accidentally impersonal).
Rain is falling (lit. *There is falling some rain*).

§ **318.** The following are the most important impersonal verbs. It will be observed that a large number of them denote various states of the weather ; of the rest, some are also used personally. Those to which a reference is attached are irregular in conjugation.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

il arrive, *it happens.*
il éclaire, *it lightens.*
il dégèle, *it thaws* (§ 355).
il gèle, *it freezes* (§ 355).
il grêle, *it hails.*
il importe, *it is important.*
il neige, *it snows* (§ 364).
il tonne, *it thunders.*
il y va (de), *it is a question of* (§ 375).

SECOND CONJUGATION.

il s'agit (de), *it is a question of.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.

il faut, *it is necessary* (§ 407).
il pleut, *it rains* (§ 402)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

il paraît, *it appears* (§ 414).

§ 319. CONJUGATION OF AN IMPERSONAL VERB.

MODEL: **grêler**, *to hail.*

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **grêler**, *to hail.*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: (**grêlant**), *hailing.*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **avoir grêlé**, *to have hailed.*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: (**ayant grêlé**), *having hailed.*

PARTICIPLE, PAST: **grêlé**, *hailed.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.
il grêle, *it hails.*

IMPERFECT.
il grêlait, *it was hailing.*

PAST DEFINITE.
il grêla, *it hailed.*

FUTURE.
il grêlera, *it will hail.*

PAST INDEFINITE.
il a grêlé, *it has hailed.*

PLUPERFECT.
il avait grêlé, *it had hailed.*

PAST ANTERIOR.
il eut grêlé, *it had hailed.*

FUTURE PERFECT.
il aura grêlé, *it will have hailed.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.
il grêle, *it may hail.*

IMPERFECT.
il grêlât, *it might hail.*

PAST INDEFINITE.
il ait grêlé, *it may have hailed.*

PLUPERFECT.
il eût grêlé, *it might have hailed.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.
il grêlerait, *it would hail.*

PERFECT.
il aurait grêlé, *it would have hailed.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT: **qu'il grêle**, *let it hail.*

§ 320. Impersonal verbs follow the conjugations to which they belong, their only distinctive feature being the absence of all finite forms except the third person singular. Some impersonals will be found among the irregular verbs.

§ **321**. The third person singular of the verb faire, *to do, to make* (§ 445), enters into a number of impersonal locutions connected with the weather.

il fait beau, *it is fine.*
il fait du brouillard, *it is foggy.*
il fait chaud, *it is warm.*
il fait doux, *it is mild.*
il fait jour, *it is daylight.*
il fait nuit, *it is dark.*

§ **322**. The verb être is often used impersonally with a predicative adjective.

il est évident, *it is evident.*
il est important, *it is important.*
il est possible, *it is possible.*
il est nécessaire, *it is necessary.*

§ **323**. The impersonal verb y avoir, *to be, to exist,* is thus conjugated :—

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.
il y a, *there is, there are.*

IMPERFECT.
il y avait, *there was, there were.*

PAST DEFINITE.
il y eut, *there was, there were.*

FUTURE.
il y aura, *there will be.*

PAST INDEFINITE.
il y a eu, *there has been, there have been.*

PLUPERFECT.
il y avait eu, *there had been.*

PAST ANTERIOR.
il y eut eu, *there had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT.
il y aura eu, *there will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.
il y ait, *there may be.*

IMPERFECT.
il y eût, *there might be.*

PAST INDEFINITE.
il y ait eu, *there may have been.*

PLUPERFECT.
il y eût eu, *there might have been.*

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.
il y aurait, *there would be.*

PERFECT.
il y aurait eu, *there would have been.*

CHAPTER XVI.—NEGATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

I.—NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

§ **324**. The negative adverb most frequently employed in French in conjunction with verbs consists of the two words **ne . . . pas**; of these **ne** is the true negative, while **pas** is intensive.

§ **325**. Except in the infinitive present, where both precede, **ne** comes before the finite verb and **pas** immediately follows it. Thus in compound tenses **pas** comes between the auxiliary and the participle. **Ne** may, however, be separated from the verb by pronouns; see § 229.

Obs. The negative conjugation in modern English is almost always formed by the use of *do not*, *did not*; there is no such construction in French.

§ **326**. Besides the ordinary negative **ne . . . pas**, the following negative expressions are used in conjunction with verbs:—

(*a*) **ne . . . point**, *not at all.* **ne . . . jamais**, *never.*
ne . . . plus, *no more, no longer.* **ne . . . guère**, *scarcely.*
ne . . . rien, *nothing.*

These follow, with regard to position, the rule given for **ne . . . pas**:—

Je n'attendrai plus.
I shall wait no longer.
Il n'a guère dormi cette nuit.
He scarcely slept at all last night.

Je n'ai rien vu.
I have seen nothing.
Elle ne chante jamais.
She never sings.

(*b*) **ne . . . personne**, *nobody.* **ne . . . nul** } *no*
ne . . . que, *only.* **ne . . . aucun** } (adjective).
ne . . . nulle part, *nowhere.*

These follow the rule as to position given for **ne . . . pas** when employed with simple tenses, but in compound tenses the second word follows the participle:—

Je n'ai vu personne.
I have seen no one.
Vous n'en avez trouvé que deux.
You have found only two.

Je n'ai reçu aucun argent.
I have received no money.
Je ne le trouve nulle part.
I do not find him anywhere.

§ **327**. The general rules given on the preceding page as to the position of the negative adverbs apply to all verbs whether transitive (active or passive), intransitive, reflexive or impersonal. The following tables should be learnt for the sake of practice; in the case of the reflexive verb the change of position of the reflexive pronoun in the imperative calls for attention.

§ 328. NEGATIVE CONJUGATION.

MODEL: **ne pas obéir**, *not to obey.*

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **ne pas obéir**, *not to obey.*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **n'obéissant pas**, *not obeying.*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **n'avoir pas obéi**, *not to have obeyed.*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **n'ayant pas obéi**, *not having obeyed.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.
(*I do not obey.*)
je **n'obéis pas**
tu n'obéis pas
il n'obéit pas
nous n'obéissons pas
vous n'obéissez pas
ils n'obéissent pas

IMPERFECT.
(*I was not obeying.*)
je **n'obéissais pas**, etc.

PAST DEFINITE.
(*I did not obey.*)
je **n'obéis pas**, etc.

FUTURE.
(*I shall not obey.*)
je **n'obéirai pas**, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.
(*I have not obeyed.*)
je **n'ai pas obéi**
tu n'as pas obéi
il n'a pas obéi
nous n'avons pas obéi
vous n'avez pas obéi
ils n'ont pas obéi

PLUPERFECT.
(*I had not obeyed.*)
je **n'avais pas obéi**, etc.

PAST ANTERIOR.
(*I had not obeyed.*)
je **n'eus pas obéi**, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.
(*I shall not have obeyed.*)
je **n'aurai pas obéi**, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.
(*I may not obey.*)
je **n'obéisse pas**, etc.

IMPERFECT.
(*I might not obey.*)
je **n'obéisse pas**, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.
(*I may not have obeyed.*)
je **n'aie pas obéi**, etc.

PLUPERFECT.
(*I might not have obeyed.*)
je **n'eusse pas obéi**, etc.

CONDITIONAL MOOD

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
(*I should not obey.*)	(*I should not have obeyed.*)
je **n'obéirais pas,** etc.	je **n'aurais pas obéi,** etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

n'obéis pas, *obey not*
(qu'il n'obéisse pas), *let him not obey*

n'obéissons pas, *let us not obey*
n'obéissez pas, *do not obey*
(qu'ils n'obéissent pas), *let them not obey*

§ 329. EXAMPLE OF THE NEGATIVE CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

N'être pas flatté, *not to be flattered.*

INDICATIVE: PRESENT.	INDICATIVE: PAST INDEFINITE.
(*I am not flattered.*)	(*I have not been flattered.*)
je **ne suis pas** } **flatté** or tu n'es pas } **flattée** il n'est pas flatté elle n'est pas flattée	je **n'ai pas été** } **flatté** or tu n'as pas été } **flattée** il n'a pas été flatté elle n'a pas été flattée
nous ne sommes pas } flattés *or* vous n'êtes pas } flattées ils ne sont pas flattés elles ne sont pas flattées	nous n'avons pas été } flattés *or* vous n'avez pas été } flattées ils n'ont pas été flattés elles n'ont pas été flattées

§ 330. EXAMPLE OF THE NEGATIVE CONJUGATION OF AN INTRANSITIVE VERB WITH THE AUXILIARY être.

Ne pas sortir, *not to go out.*

INDICATIVE: PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have not gone out.*)

je **ne suis pas** } **sorti** or
tu n'es pas } **sortie**
il n'est pas sorti
elle n'est pas sortie

nous ne sommes pas } sortis *or*
vous n'êtes pas } sorties
ils ne sont pas sortis
elles ne sont pas sorties

§ 331. NEGATIVE CONJUGATION OF A REFLEXIVE VERB.

MODEL: ne pas s'emparer, *not to take possession.*

INFINITIVE, PRESENT: **ne pas s'emparer,** *not to take possession.*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT: **ne s'emparant pas,** *not taking possession.*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT: **ne s'être pas emparé,** *not to have taken possession.*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT: **ne s'étant pas emparé,** *not having taken possession.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*I do not take possession.*)

je ne m'empare pas, etc.

IMPERFECT.

(*I was not taking possession.*)

je ne m'emparais pas, etc.

PAST DEFINITE.

(*I did not take possession.*)

je ne m'emparai pas, etc.

FUTURE.

(*I shall not take possession.*)

je ne m'emparerai pas, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have not taken possession.*)

je ne me suis pas emparé, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

(*I had not taken possession.*)

je ne m'étais pas emparé, etc.

PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had not taken possession.*)

je ne me fus pas emparé, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

(*I shall not have taken possession.*)

je ne me serai pas emparé, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*I may not take possession.*)

je ne m'empare pas, etc.

IMPERFECT.

(*I might not take possession.*)

je ne m'emparasse pas, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I may not have taken possession.*)

je ne me sois pas emparé, etc.

PLUPERFECT.

(*I might not have taken possession.*)

je ne me fusse pas emparé, etc.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*I should not take possession.*)

je ne m'emparerais pas, etc.

PERFECT.

(*I should not have taken possession.*)

je ne me serais pas emparé, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

ne t'empare pas, *take not possession*
(qu'il ne s'empare pas), *let him not take possession*

ne nous emparons pas, *let us not take possession*
ne vous emparez pas, *do not take possession*
(qu'ils ne s'emparent pas), *let them not take possession*

Obs. 1. The past participle **emparé** is variable throughout the compound tenses – **emparé, emparée, emparés** or **emparées**—according to the context.

Obs. 2. It must be remembered that in the negative imperative of a reflexive verb, the reflexive pronoun precedes the verb instead of following it, and that in the negative **toi** is not substituted (§ 230, 2) for **te** in the second person singular.

II.—INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

§ **332.** Interrogation is expressed in French by **inversion** of the verb and its subject, *i.e.* by placing the subject after the finite verb.

Affirmative.	Interrogative.
Vous me louez.	**Me louez-vous ?**
You praise me. / *You are praising me.*	*Do you praise me ?* / *Are you praising me ?*
Nous avons fini.	**Avons-nous fini ?**
We have finished.	*Have we finished ?*

Obs. Only the indicative and conditional moods can be used interrogatively.

§ **333.** In the examples of interrogative conjugation given in the following tables, note that—

(*a*) A **hyphen** is inserted between the verb and the pronoun which is the subject of the verb.

(*b*) In the first conjugation the final **e** of the first person singular present indicative receives an **acute accent,** to facilitate pronunciation.

(*c*) In the first person singular **je** combines (to the ear) with the preceding syllable; thus the last sounded syllable of **chanté-je, chantais-je, chantai-je,** etc., resembles that of **cortège,** and the last sounded syllable of **finis-je, rompis-je,** etc., resembles that of **prestige.**

(*d*) When the third person singular ends in a vowel the letter **t** is inserted in the interrogative form. The old termination **-t** was dropped in the present and past definite indicative of the first conjugation, in the present indicative of **avoir**, and consequently in all future tenses (§ 292). It is restored in the interrogative form by analogy with forms such as **finit, reçoit,** in which the **-t** was preserved.

§ 334. INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

MODEL: **chanter,** *to sing.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

*__chanté-je__ ? *do I sing ?*
chantes-tu ? *singest thou ?*
chante-t-il ? *does he sing ?*

chantons-nous ? *do we sing ?*
chantez-vous ? *do you sing ?*
chantent-ils ? *do they sing ?*

PAST INDEFINITE.

ai-je chanté ? *have I sung ?*
as-tu chanté ? *hast thou sung ?*
a-t-il chanté ? *has he sung ?*

avons-nous chanté ? *have we sung ?*
avez-vous chanté ? *have you sung ?*
ont-ils chanté ? *have they sung ?*

IMPERFECT.

(*Was I singing ?*)

chantais-je ?
chantais-tu ?
chantait-il ?

chantions-nous ?
chantiez-vous ?
chantaient-ils ?

PLUPERFECT.

(*Had I sung ?*)

avais-je chanté ?
avais-tu chanté ?
avait-il chanté ?

avions-nous chanté ?
aviez-vous chanté ?
avaient-ils chanté ?

PAST DEFINITE.

(*Did I sing ?*)

chantai-je ?
chantas-tu ?
chanta-t-il ?

chantâmes-nous ?
chantâtes-vous ?
chantèrent-ils ?

PAST ANTERIOR.

(*Had I sung ?*)

eus-je chanté ?
eus-tu chanté ?
eut-il chanté ?

eûmes-nous chanté ?
eûtes-vous chanté ?
eurent-ils chanté ?

FUTURE.

(*Shall I sing ?*)

chanterai-je ?
chanteras-tu ?
chantera-t-il ?

chanterons-nous ?
chanterez-vous ?
chanteront-ils ?

FUTURE PERFECT.

(*Shall I have sung ?*)

aurai-je chanté ?
auras-tu chanté ?
aura-t-il chanté ?

aurons-nous chanté ?
aurez-vous chanté ?
auront-ils chanté ?

* Rarely used ; see § 340.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.	PERFECT.
(*Should I sing?*)	(*Should I have sung?*)
chanterais-je?	**aurais-je chanté?**
chanterais-tu?	aurais-tu chanté?
chanterait-il?	aurait-il chanté?
chanterions-nous?	aurions-nous chanté?
chanteriez-vous?	auriez-vous chanté?
chanteraient-ils?	auraient-ils chanté?

§ 335. EXAMPLE OF THE INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

Être loué, *to be praised.*

INDICATIVE: PRESENT.	INDICATIVE: PAST DEFINITE.
(*Am I praised?*)	(*Have I been praised?*)
suis-je } **loué** or	**ai-je été** } **loué** or
es-tu } **louée?**	as-tu été } **louée?**
est-il loué?	**a-t-il** été loué?
est-elle louée?	**a-t-elle** été louée?
sommes-nous } loués *or*	avons-nous été } loués *or*
êtes-vous } louées?	avez-vous été } louées?
sont-ils loués?	ont-ils été loués?
sont-elles louées?	ont-elles été louées?

§ 336. EXAMPLE OF THE INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION OF A REFLEXIVE VERB.

Se reposer, *to rest.*

INDICATIVE: PRESENT.	INDICATIVE: PAST INDEFINITE.
(*Do I rest*, or *Am I resting?*)	(*Have I rested?*)
me reposé-je?	**me suis-je** } **reposé** or
te reposes-tu?	t'es-tu } **reposée?**
se **repose-t-il?**	s'est-il reposé?
se **repose-t-elle?**	s'est-elle reposée?
nous reposons-nous?	nous sommes-nous } reposés *or*
vous reposez-vous?	vous êtes-vous } reposées?
se reposent-ils?	se sont-ils reposés?
se reposent-elles?	se sont-elles reposées?

§ **337**. The above form of interrogative conjugation is used when the subject is (*a*) a personal pronoun, (*b*) the demonstrative pronoun **ce**, (*c*) the indefinite pronoun **on**.

Est-il arrivé ?
Has he arrived?

Est-ce votre chapeau ?
Is this your hat?

A-t-on attendu longtemps ?
Did they wait long? Or, *Have they waited long?*

§ **338**. If the subject is (*a*) a proper substantive, (*b*) a common substantive, (*c*) a demonstrative pronoun (**ce** excepted), (*d*) an indefinite pronoun (**on** excepted), (*e*) a possessive pronoun, it is placed before the verb, and one of the personal pronouns, **il**, **elle**, **ils**, **elles**, agreeing with the subject, is placed after the finite verb.

(*a*) **Henri est-il allé au théâtre ?**
Did Henry go (or *Has Henry gone*) *to the theatre?*

(*b*) **Ma sœur dansait-elle ?**
Was my sister dancing?

(*c*) **Ces livres-ci sont à moi ; ceux-là sont-ils à vous ?**
These books are mine ; are those yours?

(*d*) **Personne ne vous a-t-il envoyé ?**
Has no one sent you?

(*e*) **Voici mon chien ; le vôtre est-il dans la cour ?**
Here is my dog ; is yours in the yard?

§ **339**. After the following interrogative words either construction may be employed :—

combien, *how much?*
comment, *how?*
où, *where?*
que (accusative) *what?*
quand, *when?*

Combien ce marchand en a-t-il vendu ?
Combien en a vendu ce marchand ?
How much has this merchant sold?

Obs. The English order **Combien en a ce marchand vendu ?** must **not** be employed.

§ **340**. Est-ce que, *is it that*, is frequently used as a periphrastic form in simple interrogation.

Est-ce que vous avez fini ?
Have you finished ?

§ **341**. When the first person singular of the present indicative is monosyllabic, est-ce que must be employed for the sake of euphony; *e.g.* est-ce que je vends ? instead of vends-je ? *Do I sell ?*

NOTE.—Usage permits the following, in which there is no harshness :—

ai-je ? *have I?*	**puis-je ?** *can I?*
dis-je ? *do I say?*	**sais-je ?** *do I know?*
dois-je ? *must I?*	**suis-je ?** *am I?*
fais-je ? *am I doing?*	**vais-je ?** *am I going?*
fuis-je ? *do I flee?*	**vois-je ?** *do I see?*

III.—NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION.

§ **342**. To turn any part of a verb into the negative-interrogative form, first write the part in question negatively, and then place the nominative pronoun immediately after the finite verb; *e.g.* first person plural (masculine) perfect conditional of se blesser, *to hurt one's self*—

AFFIRMATIVE: **nous nous serions blessés.**
NEGATIVE: **nous ne nous serions pas blessés.**
NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE: **ne nous serions-nous pas blessés ?**

The same rules (§§ 337—341) that apply to the interrogative conjugation apply equally here.

Obs. The negative-interrogative conjugation is confined to the same moods as the interrogative conjugation, *viz.* indicative and conditional.

§343. NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION

MODEL: agir, *to act.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*Do I not act?*)

n'agis-je pas? (rarely used)
n'agis-tu pas?
n'agit-il pas?
n'agissons-nous pas?
n'agissez-vous pas?
n'agissent-ils pas?

PAST INDEFINITE.

(*Have I not acted?*)

n'ai-je pas agi? (rarely used)
n'as-tu pas agi?
n'**a-t-il** pas agi?
n'avons-nous pas agi?
n'avez-vous pas agi?
n'ont-ils pas agi?

IMPERFECT.

(*Was I not acting?*)

n'agissais-je pas?
n'agissais-tu pas?
n'agissait-il pas?
n'agissions-nous pas?
n'agissiez-vous pas?
n'agissaient-ils pas?

PLUPERFECT.

(*Had I not acted?*)

n'avais-je pas agi?
n'avais-tu pas agi?
n'avait-il pas agi?
n'avions-nous pas agi?
n'aviez-vous pas agi?
n'avaient-ils pas agi?

PAST DEFINITE.

(*Did I not act?*)

n'agis-je pas?
n'agis-tu pas?
n'agit-il pas?
n'agîmes-nous pas?
n'agîtes-vous pas?
n'agirent-ils pas?

PAST ANTERIOR.

(*Had I not acted?*)

n'eus-je pas agi?
n'eus-tu pas agi?
n'eut-il pas agi?
n'eûmes-nous pas agi?
n'eûtes-vous pas agi?
n'eurent-ils pas agi?

FUTURE.

(*Shall I not act?*)

n'agirai-je pas?
n'agiras-tu pas?
n'**agira-t-il** pas?
n'agirons-nous pas?
n'agirez-vous pas?
n'agiront-ils pas?

FUTURE PERFECT.

(*Shall I not have acted?*)

n'aurai-je pas agi?
n'auras-tu pas agi?
n'**aura-t-il** pas agi?
n'aurons-nous pas agi?
n'aurez-vous pas agi?
n'auront-ils pas agi?

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*Should I not act?*)

n'agirais-je pas?
n'agirais-tu pas?
n'agirait-il pas?
n'agirions-nous pas?
n'agiriez-vous pas?
n'agiraient-ils pas?

PERFECT.

(*Should I not have acted?*)

n'aurais-je pas agi?
n'aurais-tu pas agi?
n'aurait-il pas agi?
n'aurions-nous pas agi?
n'auriez-vous pas agi?
n'auraient-ils pas agi?

§ 344. Example of the Negative-Interrogative Conjugation of the Passive Voice.

Être puni, *to be punished.*

Indicative: Present.

(*Am not I punished?*)

ne suis-je pas } **puni** or
n'es-tu pas } **punie ?**
n'est-il pas puni ?
n'est-elle pas punie ?

ne sommes-nous pas } punis *or*
n'êtes-vous pas } punies ?
ne sont-ils pas punis ?
ne sont-elles pas punies ?

Indicative: Past Indefinite.

(*Have I not been punished?*)

n'ai-je pas été } **puni** or
n'as-tu pas été } **punie ?**
n'**a-t-il** pas été puni ?
n'**a-t-elle** pas été punie ?

n'avons-nous pas été } punis *or*
n'avez-vous pas été } punies ?
n'ont-il pas été punis ?
n'ont-elles pas été punies ?

§ 345. Example of the Negative-Interrogative Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb.

S'apercevoir, *to perceive.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

(*Do I not perceive?*)

ne m'aperçois-je pas ? etc.

Imperfect.

(*Was I not perceiving?*)

ne m'apercevais-je pas ? etc.

Past Definite.

(*Did I not perceive?*)

ne m'aperçus-je pas ? etc.

Future.

(*Shall I not perceive?*)

ne m'apercevrai-je pas ? etc.

Past Indefinite.

(*Have I not perceived?*)

ne me suis-je pas aperçu ?* etc.

Pluperfect.

(*Had I not perceived?*)

ne m'étais-je pas aperçu ? etc

Past Anterior.

(*Had I not perceived?*)

ne me fus-je pas aperçu ? etc.

Future Perfect.

(*Shall I not have perceived?*)

ne me serai-je pas aperçu ? etc.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

Present.

(*Should I not perceive?*)

ne m'apercevrais-je pas ? etc.

Perfect.

(*Should I not have perceived?*)

ne me serais-je pas aperçu ? etc.

* **S'apercevoir** has its past participle variable in the compound tenses.

CHAPTER XVII.—QUASI-IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ **346**. A number of verbs of the first conjugation present certain peculiarities in the formation of some tenses, but as these peculiarities result from the laws of French pronunciation and follow fixed rules, such verbs cannot be classed as irregular.

Obs. In the tables of conjugation in this chapter those tenses only are given in which some peculiarity occurs.

§ **347**. These quasi-irregular verbs fall into six classes :—

I.—Verbs with e mute (not followed by l or t) in the last syllable of the stem.

II.—Verbs of which the present infinitive ends in -eler or -eter.

III.—Verbs with close e (é) in the last syllable of the stem.

IV.—Verbs of which the present infinitive ends in -yer.

V.—Verbs of which the present infinitive ends in -ger or -cer.

VI.—Verbs of which the present infinitive ends in -ier, -ouer, or -uer.

I.—VERBS WITH E MUTE (NOT FOLLOWED BY L OR T) IN THE LAST SYLLABLE OF THE STEM.

§ **348**. It is a rule in French that mute e cannot occur in two successive syllables. The first e must either have the open sound indicated by a grave accent, *e.g.* père, or be followed by two consonants, *e.g.* terre, reste. Verbs that have an e mute in the last syllable of the stem therefore require a grave accent over that e when another e mute follows immediately.

Obs. Words such as père, terre, reste, are theoretically dissyllables.

§ **349**. MODEL: **men-er**, *to lead.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: men-er, men-ant, men-é, je mèn-e, je men-ai.

INDICATIVE, PRESENT	je **mèn-e**	tu **mèn-es**	il **mèn-e**
	nous men-ons	vous men-ez	ils **mèn-ent**
INDICATIVE, FUTURE	je **mèn-erai**	tu **mèn-eras**	il **mèn-era**
	nous **mèn-erons**	vous **mèn-erez**	ils **mèn-eront**
CONDITIONAL, PRESENT	je **mèn-erais**	tu **mèn-erais**	il **mèn-erait**
	nous **mèn-erions**	vous **mèn-eriez**	ils **mèn-eraient**
IMPERATIVE, PRESENT		**mèn-e**	
	men-ons	men-ez	
SUBJUNCTIVE, PRESENT	je **mèn-e**	tu **mèn-es**	il **mèn-e**
	nous men-ions	vous men-iez	ils **mèn-ent**

§ **350**. Conjugate similarly:

achever, *to finish.* **peser**, *to weigh.*
lever, *to raise.* **semer**, *to sow.*

Also their compounds élever and soulever, *to raise*; amener and emmener, *to bring*; parsemer, *to strew*, etc.

II.—VERBS OF WHICH THE PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDS IN -ELER OR -ETER.

§ **351**. Verbs ending in -eler, -eter, usually double the consonant l or t before e mute instead of taking the grave accent.

§ **352**. MODEL: **appel-er**, *to call.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: appel-er, appel-ant, appel-é, j'appel-l-e, j'appel-ai.

INDICATIVE, PRESENT	j'**appel-l-e**	tu **appel-l-es**	il **appel-l-e**
	nous appel-ons	vous appel-ez	ils **appel-l-ent**
INDICATIVE, FUTURE	j'**appel-l-erai**	tu **appel-l-eras**	il **appel-l-era**
	nous **appel-l-erons**	vous **appel-l-erez**	ils **appel-l-eront**
CONDITIONAL, PRESENT	j'**appel-l-erais**	tu **appel-l-erais**	il **appel-l-erait**
	nous **appel-l-erions**	vous **appel-l-eriez**	ils **appel-l-eraient**
SUBJUNCTIVE, PRESENT	j'**appel-l-e**	tu **appel-l-es**	il **appel-l-e**
	nous appel-ions	vous appel-iez	ils **appel-l-ent**
IMPERATIVE, PRESENT		**appel-l-e**	
	appel-ons	appel-ez	

§ **353.** MODEL: jet-er, *to throw.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: jet-er, jet-ant, jet-é, je jet-t-e, je jet-ai.

INDICATIVE, PRESENT	je jet-t-e	tu jet-t-es	il jet-t-e
	nous jet-ons	vous jet-ez	ils jet-t-ent
INDICATIVE, FUTURE	je jet-t-erai	tu jet-t-eras	il jet-t-era
	nous jet-t-erons	vous jet-t-erez	ils jet-t-eront
CONDITIONAL, PRESENT	je jet-t-erais	tu jet-t-erais	il jet-t-erait
	nous jet-t-erions	vous jet-t-eriez	ils jet-t-eraient
SUBJUNCTIVE, PRESENT	je jet-t-e	tu jet-t-es	il jet-t-e
	nous jet-ions	vous jet-iez	ils jet-t-ent
IMPERATIVE, PRESENT		jet-t-e	
	jet-ons	jet-ez	

§ **354.** Conjugate similarly—

amonceler, *to heap up.*
atteler, *to harness.*
chanceler, *to stagger.*
épeler, *to spell.*
étinceler, *to glitter.*
niveler, *to level.*
rappeler, *to recall.*
renouveler, *to renew.*
banqueter, *to banquet.*
cacheter, *to seal.*
décacheter, *to unseal.*
feuilleter, *to turn over* (leaves).
fureter, *to ferret out.*
rejeter, *to throw back.*
souffleter, *to slap.*
voleter, *to flutter.*

§ **355.** The following verbs in -eler, -eter, instead of doubling the consonant, follow the general rule as to verbs with e mute in the last syllable of the stem, and take a grave accent:—

celer, *to conceal.*
geler, *to freeze.*
harceler, *to harass.*
modeler, *to model.*
peler, *to peel.*
acheter, *to buy.*
becqueter, *to peck.*
étiqueter, *to ticket.*
racheter, *to redeem.*

And a few others which are comparatively rare.

III.—VERBS WITH CLOSE E (É) IN THE LAST SYLLABLE OF THE STEM.

§ **356.** Verbs with é in the last syllable of the stem have a grave accent, instead of an acute, before e mute, except in the future indicative and present conditional, where the acute accent is retained.

§ **357.** Model: **préfér-er**, *to prefer.*

Principal Parts: **préfér-er, préfér-ant, préfér-é, je préfèr-e, je préfér-ai.**

Indicative, Present	je **préfèr-e**	tu **préfèr-es**	il **préfèr-e**
	nous préfér-ons	vous préfér-ez	ils **préfèr-ent**
Indicative, Future	je préférer-ai	tu préférer-as	il préférer-a
	nous préférer-ons	vous préférer-ez	ils préférer-ont
Conditional, Present	je préférer-ais	tu préférer-ais	il préférer-ait
	nous préférer-ions	vous préférer-iez	ils préférer-aient
Subjunctive, Present	je **préfèr-e**	tu **préfèr-es**	il **préfèr-e**
	nous préfér-ions	vous préfér-iez	ils **préfèr-ent**
Imperative, Present		**préfèr-e**	
	préfér-ons	préfér-ez	

Obs. The future indicative and present conditional in this class of verbs present no irregularity.

§ **358.** Conjugate similarly—

abréger, *to shorten.*
céder, *to yield.*
espérer, *to hope.*
inquiéter, *to disquiet.*
pénétrer, *to penetrate.*
posséder, *to possess.*
protéger, *to protect.*
régler, *to rule.*
régner, *to reign.*
répéter, *to repeat.*
sécher, *to dry.*

Obs. Verbs ending in **-éger** were formerly written with the acute accent throughout.

§ **359**. Verbs ending in -éer form an exception to the preceding rule, and retain the acute accent throughout.

§ **360**. MODEL: **cré-er**, *to create.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **cré-er, cré-ant, cré-é** (fem. **cré-ée**), **je cré-e, je cré-ai.**

INDICATIVE, PRESENT	je cré-e	tu cré-es	il cré-e
	nous cré-ons	vous cré-ez	ils cré-ent

and so throughout all tenses.

§ **361**. Conjugate similarly—

agréer, *to approve.* **suppléer**, *to supply.*

IV.—VERBS OF WHICH THE PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDS IN -YER.

§ **362**. Verbs of the first conjugation of which the stem ends in **y** change this letter to **i** before **e** mute.

§ **363**. MODEL: **ploy-er**, *to bend.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ploy-er, ploy-ant, ploy-é, je ploi-e, je ploy-ai.**

INDICATIVE, PRESENT	je **ploi-e**	tu **ploi-es**	il **ploi-e**
	nous ploy-ons	vous ploy-ez	ils **ploi-ent**
INDICATIVE, FUTURE	je **ploi-erai**	tu **ploi-eras**	il **ploi-era**
	nous **ploi-erons**	vous **ploi-erez**	ils **ploi-eront**
CONDITIONAL, PRESENT	je **ploi-erais**	tu **ploi-erais**	il **ploi-erait**
	nous **ploi-erions**	vous **ploi-eriez**	ils **ploi-eraient**
SUBJUNCTIVE, PRESENT	je **ploi-e**	tu **ploi-es**	il **ploi-e**
	nous ploy-ions	vous ploy-iez	ils **ploi-ent**
IMPERATIVE, PRESENT		**ploi-e**	
	ploy-ons	ploy-ez	

NOTE.—Verbs in **-ayer** usually retain the **y**, but may change it to **i**. Thus, of **payer**, *to pay*, the present indicative is **je paye** or **paie**, and the future indicative is **je payerai** or **paierai**.

V.—VERBS OF WHICH THE PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDS IN -GER OR -CER.

§ **364**. By the rules of French pronunciation the letters g and c are hard before a, o, and u, and soft before e and i (§ 15). To preserve the soft sound in verbs ending in -ger and -cer, an e is inserted after the g and a cedilla is put under the c (ç), whenever these letters are followed by a or o (u does not occur in the endings of this conjugation).

§ 365. Model: mang-er, *to eat.*

Principal Parts: mang-er, mang-e-ant, mang-é, je mang-e, je mang-e-ai.

Indicative, Present	je mang-e nous **mang-e-ons**	tu mang-es vous mang-ez	il mang-e ils mang-ent
Indicative, Imperfect	je **mang-e-ais** nous mang-ions	tu **mang-e-ais** vous mang-iez	il **mang-e-ait** ils **mang-e-aient**
Indicative, Past Definite	je **mang-e-ai** nous **mang-e-âmes**	tu **mang-e-as** vous **mang-e-âtes**	il **mang-e-a** ils mang-èrent
Subjunctive, Imperfect	je **mang-e-asse** nous **mang-e-assions**	tu **mang-e-asses** vous **mang-e-assiez**	il **mang-e-ât** ils **mang-e-assent**
Imperative, Present	 **mang-e-ons**	mang-e mang-ez	

§ 366. Model: trac-er, *to trace.*

Principal Parts: trac-er, traç-ant, trac-é, je trac-e, je traç-ai.

Indicative, Present	je trac-e nous **traç-ons**	tu trac-es vous trac-ez	il trac-e ils trac-ent
Indicative, Imperfect	je **traç-ais** nous trac-ions	tu **traç-ais** vous trac-iez	il **traç-ait** ils **traç-aient**
Indicative, Past Definite	je **traç-ai** nous **traç-âmes**	tu **traç-as** vous **traç-âtes**	il **traç-a** ils trac-èrent
Subjunctive, Imperfect	je **traç-asse** nous **traç-assions**	tu **traç-asses** vous **traç-assiez**	il **traç-ât** ils **traç-assent**
Imperative, Present	 **traç-ons**	trac-e trac-ez	

Obs. All verbs in **-ger** and **-cer**, without exception, are thus conjugated.

VI.—VERBS OF WHICH THE PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDS IN -IER, -OUER, OR -UER.

§ **367**. (i) Verbs in -ier are quite regular, but it should be noticed that when a suffix beginning with **i** is added to the final -i of the stem, neither **i** is dropped; *e.g.* prier, *to pray*, has—

INDICATIVE, IMPERFECT.	nous **pri-ions**	vous **pri-iez**
SUBJUNCTIVE, PRESENT.	nous **pri-ions**	vous **pri-iez**

§ **368**. (ii) Verbs in -ouer and -uer take a diaeresis (··) over an **i** following **u** to show that the **i** is to be pronounced separately, and does not form part of a diphthong; *e.g.* **avou-er**, *to acknowledge*, has—

INDICATIVE, IMPERFECT.	nous **avou-ïons**	vous **avou-ïez**
SUBJUNCTIVE, PRESENT.	nous **avou-ïons**	vous **avou-ïez**

and **distribu-er**, *to distribute*, has—

INDICATIVE, IMPERFECT.	nous **distribu-ïons**	vous **distribu-ïez**
SUBJUNCTIVE, PRESENT.	nous **distribu-ïons**	vous **distribu-ïez**

NOTE 1.—The above rule does not apply to verbs ending in **-guer** and **-quer**, such as **distingu-er**, *to distinguish*, and **remarqu-er**, *to remark*, where the **u** has no vowel sound, but belongs to the preceding consonant.

NOTE 2.—The verb **argu-er**, *to infer*, in which the **u** is sounded, takes the diaeresis not only over an **i**, but also over a mute **e** following the **u**; *e.g.* **nous argu-ïons, j'argu-ë, j'argu-ërai**, etc.; **-gue**, without diaeresis, would be pronounced in the same way as **-gue** in the English word *plague*.

CHAPTER XVIII.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ **369**. The division of verbs into regular and irregular is unscientific, since most of the so-called irregular verbs are formed in accordance with the laws of derivation. The term irregular is, however, convenient and intelligible: it is applied to verbs which depart in any way from the model of the conjugation to which they belong.

A defective verb is one of which some of the forms are missing.

§ **370**. In the following tables the irregular verbs are arranged in four conjugations, and are grouped as far as possible according to points of similarity.

§ **371**. Four tenses are omitted altogether from the tables, viz., the imperfect indicative and imperfect subjunctive, the present conditional and the present imperative. These four tenses (as was stated in § 292) can always be formed as follows:—

The **imperfect indicative** is found by changing the final **-ant** of the present participle into **-ais**.

The **imperfect subjunctive** is found by adding **-se** to the second person singular of the past definite.

The **present conditional** is found by adding **-s** to the first person singular of the future indicative.

The **imperative** is identical with the corresponding persons of the present indicative, omitting **-s** in the second person singular of the first conjugation, and in those verbs of the second conjugation (§§ 388—391) which form their present indicative as in the first.

NOTE.—**Avoir, être,** and **savoir** are the only verbs which do not follow the above rules; the irregularities of **savoir** are stated in § 468.

§ **372**. The **future** indicative is usually formed according to rule from the present infinitive, but is too frequently irregular to be omitted from the tables in this chapter; when regular it is not printed in dark type.

§ **373**. In addition to the four tenses mentioned in § 371, the **past definite** and **future** indicative can always be regularly conjugated throughout when the first person singular is known. The only tenses which can be irregular in conjugation are the present indicative and the present subjunctive. These are therefore always given in full in the tables, as also is the past definite in a few cases in which peculiar collocations of letters occur. Those parts of the present subjunctive and of the plural of the present indicative which are regularly formed from the present participle (§ 292) are not printed in dark type.

§ **374**. On the left-hand page of the tables the principal parts of each verb are given, viz.: (1) present infinitive, (2) present participle, (3) past participle, (4) present indicative, and (5) past definite indicative. In the first and second conjugations, principal parts formed like those of **porter** and **finir** respectively are not printed in dark type. On the right-hand page are the future, the present subjunctive, and the more important compounds which follow the conjugation of the simple verb; with these a few verbs are given which, though not compounds, form their tenses in exactly the same manner.

Obs. Attention should be paid to the Notes (§§ 450—485) to which reference is made in the last column.

Any verb may be readily found by means of the alphabetical list on pages 186, 187.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 375. all-er *to go*	all-ant all-é	**vais** **vas** **va** all-ons all-ez **vont**	all-ai
§ 376. envoy-er *to send*	envoy-ant envoy-é	**envoi-e** **envoi-es** **envoi-e** envoy-ons envoy-ez **envoi-ent**	envoy-ai

SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 377. bouill-ir *to boil* (intrans.)	**bouill-ant** bouill-i	**bou-s** **bou-s** **bou-t** bouill-ons bouill-ez bouill-ent	bouill-is
§ 378. dorm-ir *to sleep*	**dorm-ant** dorm-i	**dor-s** **dor-s** **dor-t** dorm-ons dorm-ez dorm-ent	dorm-is
§ 379. ment-ir *to lie, tell a lie*	**ment-ant** ment-i	**men-s** **men-s** **men-t** ment-ons ment-ez ment-ent	ment-is

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
irai	aill-e aill-es aill-e all-ions all-iez aill-ent	s'en aller, *to go away* (see §§ 450—456)
enverrai	envoi-e envoi-es envoi-e envoy-ions envoy-iez envoi-ent	renvoyer, *to send back* (see § 457)

SECOND CONJUGATION.

bouill-irai	bouill-e bouill-es bouill-e bouill-ions bouill-iez bouill-ent	ébouillir, *to boil away* rebouillir, *to boil again* (see § 458)
dorm-irai	dorm-e dorm-es dorm-e dorm-ions dorm-iez dorm-ent	endormir, *to lull to sleep* s'endormir, *to fall asleep* se rendormir, *to go to sleep again*
ment-irai	ment-e ment-es ment-e ment-ions ment-iez ment-ent	démentir, *to give the lie*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ **380.** part-ir *to depart*	**part-ant** part-i	**par-s** **par-s** **par-t** part-ons part-ez part-ent	part-is
§ **381.** se repent-ir *to repent*	**se repent-ant** repent-i	**me repen-s** **te repen-s** **se repen-t** nous repent-ons vous repent-ez se repent-ent	me repent-is
§ **382.** sent-ir *to feel, to smell*	**sent-ant** sent-i	**sen-s** **sen-s** **sen-t** sent-ons sent-ez sent-ent	sent-is
§ **383.** serv-ir *to serve*	**serv-ant** serv-i	**ser-s** **ser-s** **ser-t** serv-ons serv-ez serv-ent	serv-is
§ **384.** sort-ir *to go out*	**sort-ant** sort-i	**sor-s** **sor-s** **sor-t** sort-ons sort-ez sort-ent	sort-is
§ **385.** assaill-ir *to assail*	**assaill-ant** assaill-i	**assaill-e** **assaill-es** **assaill-e** assaill-ons assaill-ez assaill-ent	assaill-is

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
part-irai	part-e part-es part-e part-ions part-iez part-ent	départir, *to divide* repartir, *to reply, to start again* (see § 459)
me repent-irai	me repent-e te repent-es se repent-e nous repent-ions vous repent-iez se repent-ent	
sent-irai	sent-e sent-es sent-e sent-ions sent-iez sent-ent	consentir, *to consent* pressentir, *to forebode* ressentir, *to resent* se ressentir, *to feel*
serv-irai	serv-e serv-es serv-e serv-ions serv-iez serv-ent	desservir, *to clear the table* (see § 460)
sort-irai	sort-e sort-es sort-e sort-ions sort-iez sort-ent	ressortir, *to go out again* (see § 461)
assaill-irai	assaill-e assaill-es assaill-e assaill-ions assaill-iez assaill-ent	tressaillir, *to start, to shudder*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 386. faill-ir *to fail*	(faill-ant) faill-i	(fau-x) (fau-x) fau-t (faill-ons) (faill-ez) (faill-ent)	faill-is
§ 387. saill-ir (impersonal) *to project*	saill-ant saill-i	saill-e	saill-it
§ 388. cueill-ir *to pluck*	cueill-ant cueill-i	cueill-e cueill-es cueill-e cueill-ons cueill-ez cueill-ent	cueill-is
§ 389. couvr-ir *to cover*	couvr-ant couver-t	couvr-e couvr-es couvr-e couvr-ons couvr-ez couvr-ent	couvr-is
§ 390. offr ir *to offer*	offr-ant offer-t	offr-e offr-es offr-e offr-ons offr-ez offr-ent	offr-is
§ 391. ouvr-ir *to open*	ouvr-ant ouver-t	ouvr-e ouvr-es ouvr-e ouvr-ons ouvr-ez ouvr-ent	ouvr-is

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
faill-irai (fau-d-rai)	(faill-e) (faill-es) faill-e (faill-ions) (faill-iez) (faill-ent)	défaillir, *to feel faint*
saill-era	saill-e	(see § 462)
cueill-erai	cueill-e cueill-es cueill-e cueill-ions cueill-iez cueill-ent	accueillir, *to welcome* recueillir, *to reap* se recueillir, *to collect one's thoughts*
couvr-irai	couvr-e couvr-es couvr-e couvr-ions couvr-iez couvr-ent	découvrir, *to discover* recouvrir, *to cover up again*
offr-irai	offr-e offr-es offr-e offr-ions offr-iez offr-ent	souffrir, *to suffer*
ouvr-irai	ouvr-e ouvr-es ouvr-e ouvr-ions ouvr-iez ouvr-ent	entr'ouvrir, *to half open* rouvrir, *to reopen*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 392. fu-ir *to flee*	fuy-ant fu-i	fu-is fu-is fu-it fuy-ons fuy-ez fui-ent	fu-is
§ 393. vêt-ir *to clothe*	vêt-ant vêt-u	vêt-s vêt-s vêt vêt-ons vêt-ez vêt-ent	vêt-is
§ 394. ten-ir *to hold*	ten-ant ten-u	tien-s tien-s tien-t ten-ons ten-ez tien-n-ent	tin-s tin-s tin-t tîn-mes tîn-tes tin-rent
§ 395. ven-ir *to come*	ven-ant ven-u	vien-s vien-s vien-t ven-ons ven-ez vien-n-ent	vin-s vin-s vin-t vîn-mes vîn-tes vin-rent
§ 396. cour-ir *to run*	cour-ant cour-u	cour-s cour-s cour-t cour-ons cour-ez cour-ent	cour-us

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
fu-irai	fui-e fui-es fui-e fuy-ions fuy-iez fui-ent	s'enfuir, *to flee*
vêt-irai	vêt-e vêt-es vêt-e vêt-ions vêt-iez vêt-ent	dévêtir, *to divest* revêtir, *to cover*
tien-d-rai	tien-n-e tien-n-es tien-n-e ten-ions ten-iez tien-n-ent	s'abstenir, *to abstain* appartenir, *to belong* contenir, *to contain* détenir, *to detain* entretenir, *to keep up* maintenir, *to maintain* obtenir, *to obtain* retenir, *to retain* soutenir, *to assert*
vien-d-rai	vien-n-e vien-n-es vien-n-e ven-ions ven-iez vien-n-ent	circonvenir, *to circumvent* convenir, *to suit, to agree* devenir, *to become* intervenir, *to intervene* parvenir, *to reach* revenir, *to return* se souvenir de, *to remember*
cour-rai	cour-e cour-es cour-e cour-ions cour-iez cour-ent	accourir, *to hasten* concourir, *to concur* discourir, *to discourse* parcourir, *to traverse* secourir, *to help* (see § 463)

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 397. mour-ir *to die*	mour-ant mort	meur-s meur-s meur-t mour-ons mour-ez meur-ent	mour-us
§ 398. acquér-ir *to acquire*	acquér-ant acquis	acquier-s acquier-s acquier-t acquér-ons acquér-ez acquièr-ent	acqu-is

THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 399. recev-oir *to receive*	recev-ant reç-u	reçoi-s reçoi-s reçoi-t recev-ons recev-ez reçoiv-ent	reç-us
§ 400. dev-oir *to owe*	dev-ant dû (fem. due)	doi-s doi-s doi-t dev-ons dev-ez doiv-ent	d-us
§ 401. mouv-oir *to move*	mouv-ant mû (fem. mue)	meu-s meu-s meu-t mouv-ons mouv-ez meuv-ent	m-us
§ 402. pleuv-oir (impersonal) *to rain*	pleuv-ant plu	pleu-t	pl-ut

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
mour-rai	**meur-e** **meur-es** **meur-e** mour-ions mour-iez **meur-ent**	(see § 464)
acquer-rai	**acquièr-e** **acquièr-es** **acquièr-e** acquér-ions acquér-iez **acquièr-ent**	conquérir, *to conquer* s'enquérir, *to inquire* requérir, *to require* (see § 465)

THIRD CONJUGATION.

recev-rai	**reçoiv-e** **reçoiv-es** **reçoiv-e** recev-ions recev-iez **reçoiv-ent**	apercevoir, *to perceive* concevoir, *to conceive* décevoir, *to deceive* percevoir, *to levy* (taxes)
dev-rai	**doiv-e** **doiv-es** **doiv-e** dev-ions dev-iez **doiv-ent**	redevoir, *to owe still*
mouv-rai	**meuv-e** **meuv-es** **meuv-e** mouv-ions mouv-iez **meuv-ent**	(see § 467)
pleuv-ra	pleuv-e	

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 403. sav-oir *to know*	sach-ant su	sai-s sai-s sai-t sav-ons sav-ez sav-ent	s-us
§ 404. pouv-oir *to be able*	pouv-ant pu	peu-x or pui-s peu-x peu-t pouv-ons pouv-ez peuv-ent	p-us
§ 405. voul-oir *to wish*	voul-ant voul-u	veu-x veu-x veu-t voul-ons voul-ez veul-ent	voul-us
§ 406. val-oir *to be worth*	val-ant val-u	vau-x vau-x vau-t val-ons val-ez val-ent	val-us
§ 407. fall-oir (impersonal) *to be necessary*	fall-u	fau-t	fall-ut
§ 408. v-oir *to see*	voy-ant vu	voi-s voi-s voi-t voy-ons voy-ez voi-ent	v-is

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
sau-rai	sach-e sach-es sach-e sach-ions sach-iez sach-ent	(see § 468)
pour-rai	puiss-e puiss-es puiss-e puiss-ions puiss-iez puiss-ent	(see § 469)
vou-d-rai	veuil-l-e veuil-l-es veuil-l-e voul-ions voul-iez veuil-l-ent	(see § 470)
vau-d-rai	vail-l-e vail-l-es vail-l-e val-ions val-iez vail-l-ent	équivaloir, *to be equivalent* (see § 471)
fau-d-ra	faill-e	
ver-rai	voi-e voi-es voi-e voy-ions voy-iez voi-ent	entrevoir, *to catch a glimpse* revoir, *to see again* (see § 472)

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ **409.** asse-oir *to seat, to set*	**assey-ant** **assis**	**assied-s** **assied-s** **assied** assey-ons assey-ez assey-ent	**ass-is**
§ **410.** surse-oir (legal term) *to defer*	**sursoy-ant** **sursis**	**sursoi-s** **sursoi-s** **sursoi-t** sursoy-ons sursoy-ez **sursoi-ent**	surs-is
§ **411.** déch-oir *to decay*	**déch-u**	**déchoi-s** **déchoi-s** **déchoi-t** **déchoy-ons** **déchoy-ez** **déchoi-ent**	**déch-us**
§ **412.** av-oir *to have*	**ay-ant** **eu**	**ai** **as** **a** **av-ons** **av-ez** **ont**	**e-us**

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ **413.** connaî-t-re *to know*	**connai-ss-ant** **conn-u**	**connai-s** **connai-s** **connaî-t** connai-ss-ons connai-ss-ez connai-ss-ent	**conn-us**

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
assié-rai	assey-e assey-es assey-e assey-ions assey-iez assey-ent	s'asseoir, *to sit down* rasseoir, *to put back* se rasseoir, *to sit down again* (see § 473)
surseoi-rai	sursoi-e sursoi-es sursoi-e sursoy-ions sursoy-iez sursoi-ent	
décher-rai	déchoi-e déchoi-es déchoi-e déchoy-ions déchoy-iez déchoi-ent	(see § 474)
au-rai	ai-e ai-es ai-t ay-ons ay-ez ai-ent	(see § 495)

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

connaî-t-rai	connai-ss-e connai-ss-es connai-ss-e connai-ss-ions connai-ss-iez connai-ss-ent	méconnaître, *not to recognise* reconnaître, *to recognise*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 414. paraî-t-re *to appear*	parai-ss-ant par-u	parai-s parai-s paraî-t parai-ss-ons parai-ss-ez parai-ss-ent	par-us
§ 415. repaî-t-re *to feed*	repai-ss-ant repu	repai-s repai-s repaî-t repai-ss-ons repai-ss-ez repai-ss-ent	rep-us
§ 416. croî-t-re *to grow*	croi-ss-ant crû (fem. crue)	croî-s croî-s croî-t croi-ss-ons croi-ss-ez croi-ss-ent	cr-ûs cr-ûs cr-ût cr-ûmes cr-ûtes cr-ûrent
§ 417. naî-t-re *to be born*	nai-ss-ant né	nai-s nai-s naî-t nai-ss-ons nai-ss-ez nai-ss-ent	naqu-is
§ 418. plai-re *to please*	plai-s-ant plu	plai-s plai-s plaî-t plai-s-ons plai-s-ez plai-s-ent	pl-us
§ 419. li-re *to read*	li-s-ant lu	li-s li-s li-t li-s-ons li-s-ez li s-ent	l-us

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
paraî-t-rai	parai-ss-e parai-ss-es parai-ss-e parai-ss-ions parai-ss-iez parai-ss-ent	apparaître, *to appear* comparaître, *to appear in court* disparaître, *to disappear* reparaître, *to reappear*
repaî-t-rai	repai-ss-e repai-ss-es repai-ss-e repai-ss-ions repai-ss-iez repai-ss-ent	(see § 475)
croî-t-rai	croi-ss-e croi-ss-es croi-ss-e croi-ss-ions croi-ss-iez croi-ss-ent	(see § 476)
naî-t-rai	nai-ss-e nai-ss-es nai-ss-e nai-ss-ions nai-ss-iez nai-ss-ent	(see § 477)
plai-rai	plai-s-e plai-s-es plai-s-e plai-s-ions plai-s-iez plai-s-ent	complaire, *to humour* déplaire, *to displease*
li-rai	li-s-e li-s-es li-s-e li-s-ions li-s-iez li-s-ent	élire, *to elect* réélire, *to re-elect* relire, *to read again*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ **420.** tai-re *to keep secret*	**tai-s-ant** **tu**	**tai-s** **tai-s** **tai-t** tai-s-ons tai-s-ez tai-s-ent	**t-us**
§ **421.** boi-re *to drink*	**bu-v-ant** **bu**	**boi-s** **boi-s** **boi-t** bu-v-ons bu-v-ez **boi-v-ent**	**b-us**
§ **422.** croi-re *to believe*	**croy-ant** **cru**	**croi-s** **croi-s** **croi-t** croy-ons croy-ez **croi-ent**	**cr-us**
§ **423.** conclu-re *to conclude*	**conclu-ant** **conclu**	**conclu-s** **conclu-s** **conclu-t** conclu-ons conclu-ez conclu-ent	**concl-us**
§ **424.** mou-d-re *to grind*	**mou-l-ant** **mou-l-u**	**mou-d-s** **mou-d-s** **mou-d** mou-l-ons mou-l-ez mou-l-ent	**moul-us**
§ **425.** absou-d-re *to absolve*	**absol-v-ant** **absou-s** (f. **absou-te**)	**absou-s** **absou-s** **absou-t** absol-v-ons absol-v-ez absol-v-ent	——

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
tai-rai	tai-s-e tai-s-es tai-s-e tai-s-ions tai-s-iez tai-s-ent	se taire, *to be silent*
boi-rai	**boi-v-e** **boi-v-es** **boi-v-e** bu-v-ions bu-v-iez **boi-v-ent**	
croi-rai	**croi-e** **croi-es** **croi-e** croy-ions croy-iez **croi-ent**	mécroire, *to disbelieve* (see § 478)
conclu-rai	conclu-e conclu-es conclu-e **conclu-ïons** **conclu-ïez** conclu-ent	exclure, *to exclude*
mou-d-rai	mou-l-e mou-l-es mou-l-e mou-l-ions mou-l-iez mou-l-ent	émoudre, *to sharpen* rémoudre, *to re-sharpen* remoudre, *to grind again*
absou-d-rai	absol-v-e absol-v-es absol-v-e absol-v-ions absol-v-iez absol-v-ent	dissoudre, *to dissolve* (see § 479)

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 426. résou-d-re *to resolve*	résolv-ant résou-s (*dissolved*) résol-u (*determined*)	résou-s résou-s résou-t résol-v-ons résol-v-ez résol-v-ent	résol-us
§ 427. viv-re *to live*	viv-ant véc-u	vi-s vi-s vi-t viv-ons viv-ez viv-ent	véc-us
§ 428. cou-d-re *to sew*	cou-s-ant cou-s-u	cou-d-s cou-d-s cou-d cou-s-ons cou-s-ez cou-s-ent	cou-s-is
§ 429. vainc-re *to conquer*	vainqu-ant vainc-u	vainc-s vainc-s vainc vainqu-ons vainqu-ez vainqu-ent	vainqu-is
§ 430. crain-d-re *to fear*	craign-ant crain-t	crain-s crain-s crain-t craign-ons craign-ez craign-ent	craign-is
§ 431. pein-d-re *to paint*	peign-ant pein-t	pein-s pein-s pein-t peign-ons peign-ez peign-ent	peign-is

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
résou-d-rai	résol-v-e résol-v-es résol-v-e résol-v-ions résol-v-iez résol-v-ent	
viv-rai	viv-e viv-es viv-e viv-ions viv-iez viv-ent	revivre, *to revive* survivre, *to survive*
cou-d-rai	cou-s-e cou-s-es cou-s-e cou-s-ions cou-s-iez cou-s-ent	découdre, *to unsew* recoudre, *to sew again*
vainc-rai	vainqu-e vainqu-es vainqu-e vainqu-ions vainqu-iez vainqu-ent	convaincre, *to convince*
crain-d-rai	craign-e craign-es craign-e craign-ions craign-iez craign-ent	plaindre, *to pity* se plaindre, *to complain* contraindre, *to compel*
pein-d-rai	peign-e peign-es peign-e peign-ions peign-iez peign-ent	atteindre, *to reach* astreindre, *to compel* ceindre, *to gird* enfreindre, *to infringe* éteindre, *to extinguish* feindre, *to feign* restreindre, *to restrict* teindre, *to dye.* (See § 480)

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 432. join-d-re *to join*	joign-ant join-t	join-s join-s join-t joign-ons joign-ez joign-ent	joign-is
§ 433. condui-re *to conduct*	condui-s-ant condui-t	condui-s condui-s condui-t condui-s-ons condui-s-ez condui-s-ent	condui-s-is
§ 434. instrui-re *to instruct*	instrui-s-ant instrui-t	instrui-s instrui-s instrui-t instrui-s-ons instrui-s-ez instrui-s-ent	instrui-s-is
§ 435. cui-re *to cook*	cui-s-ant cui-t	cui-s cui-s cui-t cui-s-ons cui-s-ez cui-s-ent	cui-s-is
§ 436. nui-re *to harm*	nui-s-ant nui	nui-s nui-s nui-t nui-s-ons nui-s-ez nui-s-ent	nui-s-is
§ 437. écri-re *to write*	écri-v-ant écri-t	écri-s écri-s écri-t écri-v-ons écri-v-ez écri-v-ent	écri-v-is

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
join-d-rai	joign-e joign-es joign-e joign-ions joign-iez joign-ent	conjoindre, *to unite* déjoindre, *to separate* enjoindre, *to enjoin* rejoindre, *to rejoin* oindre, *to anoint*
condui-rai	condui-s-e condui-s-es condui-s-e condui-s-ions condui-s-iez condui-s-ent	déduire, *to deduct* éconduire, *to show out* introduire, *to introduce* produire, *to produce* réduire, *to reduce* séduire, *to seduce* traduire, *to translate* (see § 481)
instrui-rai	instrui-s-e instrui-s-es instrui-s-e instrui-s-ions instrui-s-iez instrui-s-ent	construire, *to construct* détruire, *to destroy* (see § 482)
cui-rai	cui-s-e cui-s-es cui-s-e cui-s-ions cui-s-iez cui-s-ent	recuire, *to cook again*
nui-rai	nui-s-e nui-s-es nui-s-e nui-s-ions nui-s-iez nui-s-ent	luire, *to shine* reluire, *to gleam* These have no past definite.
écri-rai	écri-v-e écri-v-es écri-v-e écri-v-ions écri-v-iez écri-v-ent	décrire, *to describe* inscrire, *to inscribe* prescrire, *to prescribe* proscrire, *to proscribe* souscrire, *to subscribe* transcrire, *to transcribe*

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 438. trai-re *to milk*	tray-ant trai-t	trai-s trai-s trai-t tray-ons tray-ez trai-ent	——
§ 439. suiv-re *to follow*	suiv-ant suiv-i	sui-s sui-s sui-t suiv-ons suiv-ez suiv-ent	suiv-is
§ 440. ri-re *to laugh*	ri-ant ri	ri-s ri-s ri-t ri-ons ri-ez ri-ent	r-is
§ 441. suffi-re *to suffice*	suffi-s-ant suffi	suffi-s suffi-s suffi-t suffi-s-ons suffi-s-ez suffi-s-ent	suff-is
§ 442. confi-re *to pickle*	confi-s-ant confi-t	confi-s confi-s confi-t confi-s-ons confi-s-ez confi-s-ent	conf-is
§ 443. di-re *to say*	di-s-ant di-t	di-s di-s di-t di-s-ons di-t-es di-s-ent	di-s di-s di-t dî-mes dî-tes di-rent

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
trai-rai	**trai-e** **trai-es** **trai-e** tray-ions tray-iez **trai-ent**	abstraire, *to abstract* distraire, *to distract* extraire, *to extract* soustraire, *to subtract*
suiv-rai	suiv-e suiv-es suiv-e suiv-ions suiv-iez suiv-ent	s'ensuivre (impersonal), *to result* poursuivre, *to pursue*
ri-rai	ri-e ri-es ri-e ri-ions ri-iez ri-ent	sourire, *to smile*
suffi-rai	suffi-s-e suffi-s-es suffi-s-e suffi-s-ions suffi-s-iez suffi-s-ent	circoncire, *to circumcise* (past part. **circoncis**)
confi-rai	confi-s-e confi-s-es confi-s-e confi-s-ions confi-s-iez confi-s-ent	déconfire, *to discomfit*
di-rai	di-s-e di-s-es di-s-e di-s-ions di-s-iez di-s-ent	redire, *to say again* (see § 483)

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indic.	Past Def.
§ 444. maudi-re *to curse*	maudi-ss-ant maudi-t	maudi-s maudi-s maudi-t maudi-ss-ons maudi-ss-ez maudi-ss-ent	maud-is
§ 445. fai-re *to make, to do*	fai-s-ant fai-t	fai-s fai-s fai-t fai-s-ons fai-t-es font	f-is
§ 446. prend-re *to take*	pren-ant pris	prend-s prend-s prend pren-ons pren-ez pren-n-ent	pr-is
§ 447. mett-re *to put*	mett-ant mis	met-s met-s met mett-ons mett-ez mett-ent	m-is
§ 448. batt-re *to beat*	batt-ant batt-u	bat-s bat-s bat batt-ons batt-ez batt-ent	batt-is
§ 449. êt-re *to be*	ét-ant ét-é	suis es est som-mes êt-es sont	f-us

Future.	Present Subj.	Compounds, etc.
maudi-rai	maudi-ss-e maudi-ss-es maudi-ss-e maudi-ss-ions maudi-ss-iez maudi-ss-ent	
fe-rai	**fa-ss-e** **fa-ss-es** **fa-ss-e** **fa-ss-ions** **fa-ss-iez** **fa-ss-ent**	contrefaire, *to feign* défaire, *to undo* se défaire de, *to get rid of* refaire, *to do again* satisfaire, *to satisfy* surfaire, *to overcharge*
prend-rai	**pren-n-e** **pren-n-es** **pren-n-e** pren-ions pren-iez **pren-n-ent**	apprendre, *to learn* comprendre, *to understand* entreprendre, *to undertake* se méprendre, *to be mistaken* reprendre, *to resume* surprendre, *to surprise*
mett-rai	mett-e mett-es mett-e mett-ions mett-iez mett-ent	admettre, *to admit* commettre, *to commit* compromettre, *to compromise* omettre, *to omit* permettre, *to permit* soumettre, *to subdue* transmettre, *to transmit*
batt-rai	batt-e batt-es batt-e batt-ions batt-iez batt-ent	se battre, *to fight* abattre, *to beat down* combattre, *to fight* débattre, *to dispute* (see § 485)
se-rai	**soi-s** **soi-s** **soi-t** **soy-ons** **soy-ez** **soi-ent**	

NOTES ON THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ **450.** 1. **Aller.**—The irregularities of **aller** are due to the fact that its various forms are derived from three different verbs—the Low Latin **alare**, and the Latin verbs **vadere** and **ire.**

§ **451.** The imperative, formed according to rule, is **va, allons, allez,** the second person singular being written **vas** before **en** or **y** ; *e.g.* **Vas en chercher,** *Go and look for some ;* **Vas-y,** *Go there.*

§ **452.** The reflexive **s'en aller,** *to go away,* has exactly the same forms as **aller** ; but as the combination of the reflexive pronoun with the particle **en** is somewhat confusing, its conjugation is here given in full. It should be noticed that the word **en** is always placed **immediately after the reflexive pronoun.**

§ 453. CONJUGATION OF THE REFLEXIVE S'EN ALLER.

INFINITIVE, PRESENT : **s' * en aller,** *to go away.*

PARTICIPLE, PRESENT : **s' * en allant,** *going away.*

INFINITIVE, PERFECT : **s' * en être allé,** *to have gone away.*

PARTICIPLE, PERFECT : **s' * en étant allé,** *having gone away.*

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

(*I go away.*)

je m'en vais, etc.

IMPERFECT.

(*I was going away.*)

je m'en allais, etc.

PAST DEFINITE.

(*I went away.*)

je m'en allai, etc.

FUTURE.

(*I shall go away.*)

je m'en irai, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.

(*I have gone away.*)

je m'en suis allé or **allée,** etc.

PLUPERFECT.

(*I had gone away.*)

je m'en étais allé or **allée,** etc.

PAST ANTERIOR.

(*I had gone away.*)

je m'en fus allé or **allée,** etc.

FUTURE PERFECT.

(*I shall have gone away.*)

je m'en serai allé or **allée,** etc.

* **Se** may here be replaced by **me, te, nous,** or **vous,** and **allé** by **allée, allés,** or **allées,** according to the context.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.
(*I may go away.*)
je m'en aille, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE.
(*I may have gone away.*)
je m'en sois allé or allée, etc.

IMPERFECT.
(*I might go away.*)
je m'en allasse, etc.

PLUPERFECT.
(*I might have gone away.*)
je m'en fusse allé or allée, etc.

CONDITIONAL MOOD.

PRESENT.
(*I should go away.*)
je m'en irais, etc.

PERFECT.
(*I should have gone away.*)
je m'en serais allé or allée, etc.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT.

va-t'en, *go away*
allons-nous-en, *let us go away*
allez-vous-en, *go away*

§ **454.** NEGATIVE CONJUGATION OF THE PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE OF s'en aller.

(*I have not gone away.*)

je ne m'en suis pas allé or allée
tu ne t'en es pas allé or allée
il ne s'en est pas allé
elle ne s'en est pas allée

nous ne nous en sommes pas allés or allées
vous ne vous en êtes pas allés or allées
ils ne s'en sont pas allés
elles ne s'en sont pas allées

§ **455.** INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION OF THE PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE OF s'en aller.

(*Have I gone away?*)

m'en suis-je allé or allée?
t'en es-tu allé or allée?
s'en est-il allé?
s'en est-elle allée?

nous en sommes-nous allés or allées?
vous en êtes-vous allés or allées?
s'en sont-ils allés?
s'en sont-elles allées?

§ 456. NEGATIVE-INTERROGATIVE CONJUGATION OF THE PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE OF **s'en aller.**

(*Have I not gone away?*)

ne m'en suis-je pas allé or **allée?**
ne t'en es-tu pas allé or **allée?**
ne s'en est-il pas allé?
ne s'en est-elle pas allée?
ne nous en sommes-nous pas allés or **allées?**
ne vous en êtes-vous pas allés or **allées?**
ne s'en sont-ils pas allés?
ne s'en sont-elles pas allées?

§ 457. **Envoyer.**—The only other compound of the obsolete simple verb **-voyer** which has the irregular future is **renvoyer**, *to send back*. Others, such as **convoyer**, *to convoy*, **dévoyer**, *to mislead*, follow the usual conjugation of verbs in **-yer** (see § 362).

SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 458. 1. **Bouillir.**—The transitive verb *to boil* is rendered by **faire bouillir.**

§ 459. 2. **Partir.**—The verb **répartir**, *to divide*, is regular, and has present participle **répartissant**, etc.

§ 460. 3. **Servir.**—The verb **asservir**, *to enslave*, is regular, and has present participle **asservissant**, etc.

§ 461. 4. **Sortir.**—(*a*) The verb **assortir**, *to sort*, is regular, and has present participle **assortissant**, etc. (*b*) The compound **ressortir de**, *to be in the jurisdiction* (*of*), is also regular; but **ressortir**, *to go out again*, is conjugated like **sortir.**

§ 462. 5. **Saillir.**—**Saillir**, *to gush*, is regular, and has present participle **saillissant**, future **saillirai**, etc.

§ 463. 6. **Courir.**—An older form, **courre**, *to make to run*, still exists in the infinitive; *e.g.* **courre** (or **laisser courre**) **les chiens**, *to slip the dogs.*

§ 464. 7. **Mourir.**—The reflexive verb **se mourir**, *to be dying*, is only used in the present and imperfect indicative.

§ **465.** 8. **Acquérir.**—The simple verb **quérir**, *to seek*, is only found in such expressions as **aller quérir, envoyer quérir,** and its use is limited to the present infinitive.

§ **466.** 9. **Bénir,** *to bless*, **fleurir**, *to bloom*, **haïr**, *to hate*, though not included among the irregular verbs, exhibit certain peculiarities.

(*a*) Besides the regular past participle **béni**, *blessed*, there is a form **bénit**, *consecrated*, which is chiefly used as an adjective; *e.g.* **pain bénit**, *consecrated bread;* **eau bénite**, *holy water.*

(*b*) When **fleurir** means *to bloom* (literally) it follows the regular conjugation, but in the sense of *to flourish* (metaphorically) the forms **florissant** and **florissais** are used for the present participle and imperfect indicative respectively.

Les arts florissaient sous Louis XIV.
Art flourished under Louis XIV.

(*c*) The diaeresis over the **i** in **haïr** is dropped in the singular of the present indicative (**je hais, tu hais, il hait**), and in the second person singular of the imperative. Owing to the presence of the diaeresis, the circumflex is omitted in the first and second persons plural of the past definite, and in the third person singular of the imperfect subjunctive (**nous haïmes, vous haïtes, il haït**)

Obs. **Haïr** is the only verb which has not a circumflex in these three parts of its conjugation.

Third Conjugation.

§ **467.** 1. **Mouvoir.**—The compounds **émouvoir**, *to agitate*, and **promouvoir**, *to promote*, are conjugated like **mouvoir**, but have no circumflex on the past participle (**ému, promu**).

§ **468.** 2. **Savoir.**—(*a*) The imperfect indicative **savais** is not formed from the stem of the irregular present participle **sachant.** (This verb and **avoir** are the only two of which the imperfect indicative is not formed from the present participle.) (*b*) The imperative is **sache, sachons, sachez,** formed from the stem of the present subjunctive, as in the case of **avoir** and **être.**

§ **469.** 3. **Pouvoir.**—(*a*) The alternative form of the first person singular present indicative **puis** is always used interrogatively, and may be used negatively. (*b*) **Pouvoir** has no imperative.

§ **470.** 4. **Vouloir.**—The imperative **veux, voulons, voulez** is admitted by the French Academy, but its use is not recommended. **Veuillez,** the older form of the imperative, now means *have the goodness to . . . .*

§ **471.** 5. **Valoir.**—The present subjunctive of the compound **prévaloir,** *to prevail,* is **prévale.** In other respects **prévaloir** is conjugated like **valoir.**

§ **472.** 6. **Voir.**—The compound **pourvoir,** *to provide,* has past definite **pourvus,** and future **pourvoirai** ; while **prévoir,** *to foresee,* has future **prévoirai,** but follows **voir** in the past definite **prévis.**

§ **473.** 7. **Asseoir.**—(*a*) The simple verb **seoir,** *to be fitting,* is defective ; it has only present participle **seyant** or **séant,** third person singular present indicative **sied,** imperfect **seyait,** future **siéra,** present conditional **siérait.** It has also a past participle **sis,** *situated.* (*b*) The usual forms of **asseoir** are given in the table. The following are also found : present participle **assoyant** ; present indicative **assois** ; present subjunctive **assoie** ; future **assoirai** or **asseyerai.** (*c*) This verb is more often found in the reflexive form **s'asseoir,** *to sit down.*

§ **474.** 8. **Déchoir.**—(*a*) Although this verb has no present participle, it has an imperfect **déchoyais.** (*b*) Only the past participle **chu** of the simple verb **choir,** *to fall,* survives. (*c*) **Échoir** is given among the defective verbs (§ 494).

Fourth Conjugation.

§ **475.** 1. **Repaître.**—The simple verb **paître,** *to feed,* has no past definite, and the past participle **pu** is only used as a technical term in falconry.

§ **476.** 2. **Croître.**—This verb, like all others ending in **-ître,** retains the circumflex before **t** to mark the suppression of an **-s-.** It also for purposes of distinction takes a circumflex over the **i** or **u** in all parts which are spelt like those of **croire,** *i.e.* in the past participle **crû,** present indicative singular **croîs, croîs, croît,** and throughout the past definite indicative **crûs** and the imperfect subjunctive **crûsse.** This accent is omitted in the compounds **accroître,** *to increase,* and **décroître,** *to decrease,* because there is no verb **décroire,** while **accroire** is used in the infinitive only.

§ **477.** 3. **Naître.**—The compound **renaître,** *to be born again*, has no past participle or past definite.

§ **478.** 4. **Croire.**—The compound **accroire** is only used in the infinitive with **faire** in the expression **faire accroire,** *to make believe.*

§ **479.** 5. **Absoudre.**—This verb and **dissoudre,** *to dissolve*, have not the double form of the past participle found in **résoudre.** The words **absolu, dissolu** exist, but are only used as adjectives, meaning *absolute* and *dissolute.*

§ **480.** 6. **Peindre.**—All verbs in **-eindre** are conjugated like **peindre**; as they are very numerous, only the most important have been given.

§ **481.** 7. **Conduire.**--The simple verb **duire** is obsolete.

§ **482.** 8. **Instruire.**--The simple verb **struire** is obsolete.

§ **483.** 9. **Dire.**—Only one compound, **redire,** *to repeat*, exactly follows the conjugation of **dire.** The verbs **contredire,** *to contradict*, **dédire,** *to retract*, **interdire,** *to forbid*, **médire,** *to slander*, **prédire,** *to predict*, form the second person plural present indicative in **-disez**—*e.g.* **vous contredisez.** The conjugation of **maudire** is given separately.

§ **484.** 10. **Faire.**—The form **faites** is preserved in all compounds. It should be noticed that the only simple verbs which have the ending **-tes** in the second person plural present indicative are **dire, faire,** and **être.** These forms, **dites, faites** and **êtes,** are the correct etymological equivalents of the Latin **dicitis, facitis, estis,** accented on the first syllable.

§ **485.** 11. **Battre.**—The only irregularity of **battre** consists in the oss of one **t** in the singular of the present indicative.

CHAPTER XIX.—DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ **486.** The following are the chief defective verbs which are met with in modern French. Those which are of importance to the learner are marked with an asterisk (*).

Obs. A few verbs which are only slightly defective have been given in the tables, and some simple verbs which are now obsolete have been mentioned in the Notes on their compounds.

First Conjugation.

§ **487.** **Est-er,** *to stand.*—Used, in the infinitive only, in the legal phrases **ester à droit,** *to be "sub iudice,"* **ester en jugement,** *to appear in court.*

Second Conjugation.

§ **488.** **Fér-ir,** *to strike.*—Used only in the phrase **sans coup férir,** *without striking a blow.*

§ **489.** * **Gés-ir,** *to lie.*—Present participle: **gisant.** Indicative present: 3rd singular, **gît**; plural, **gisons, gisez, gisent.** Imperfect: **gisais,** etc. **Ci-gît,** *here lies.*

§ **490.** **Iss-ir,** *to issue.*—Past participle: **issu,** *descended* (from).

§ **491.** * **Ou-ïr,** *to hear.*—Past participle: **ouï,** in such phrases as **j'ai ouï dire**; hence the substantive **un ouï-dire,** *a rumour.*

Third Conjugation.

§ **492.** **Appar-oir** (legal term), *to be evident.*—Indicative present (3rd singular): **appert.**

§ **493.** **Compar-oir** (legal term), *to appear.*—Equivalent to **comparaître.** This verb is used in the infinitive only.

§ **494.** * **Éch-oir,** *to fall due.*—Participles: **échéant, échu.** Used only in the third person singular of each tense. Indicative present: **échoit** or **échet.** Imperfect: **échoyait.** Past definite: **échut.** Future: **écherra.** Subjunctive present: **échoie.** Imperfect: **échût.** For the simple verb **choir,** see § 474.

495. **Rav-oir,** *to have again.*—This verb is used in the infinitive only.

Fourth Conjugation.

§ 496. **Brai-re**, *to bray.*—Indicative present (3rd person): **brait, braient.** Future: **braira, brairont.** Conditional present: **brairait, brairaient.**

§ 497. **Brui-re**, *to rustle.*—Participles: **bruyant** or **bruissant, bruit.** Indicative present (singular): **bruis, bruis, bruit.** Imperfect: **bruyais** or **bruissais**, etc.

§ 498. **Clo-re**, *to close.*—Past participle: **clos.** Indicative present: **clos, clos, clôt,** and **closent.** Future: **clorai.** Subjunctive present: **close.** Imperative: **clos. Enclo-re,** *to enclose,* and **déclore,** *to remove an enclosure,* have similar forms.

§ 499. **Éclo-re**, *to be hatched.*—Past participle: **clos.** Indicative present: **éclôt, éclosent.** Subjunctive present (3rd singular): **éclose.**

§ 500. * **Fri-re**, *to fry.*—Past participle: **frit.** Indicative present (singular): **fris, fris, frit.** The missing parts are supplied from the verb **faire frire.**

§ 501. **Poind-re**, *to dawn.* Indicative future (3rd singular): **poindra.** The old meaning, *to prick,* is seen in the adjective **poignant,** *piercing.*

§ 502. **Sourd-re**, *to spring.*—Used only in the third person of the indicative present: **sourd, sourdent.** It is usually found in such expressions as **Les eaux sourdent,** *The waters rise.*

§ 503. **Reclu-re**, *to confine.*—Past participle: **reclus.**

§ 504. **Tist-re** (infinitive obsolete), *to weave.*—Past participle: **tissu.**

CHAPTER XX.—INDEX TO VERBS.

The numbers refer to the sections.

abattre . . 448
absoudre . . 425
abstenir (s') . 394
abstraire . . 438
accourir . . 396
accroire . . 478
accroître . . 476
accueillir . . 388
acquérir . . 398
adjoindre . . 432
admettre . . 447
advenir . . 395
aller . . . 375
apercevoir . . 399
apparaître . . 414
apparoir . . 492
appartenir . 394
apprendre . . 446
assaillir . . 385
asseoir . . 409
astreindre . . 431
atteindre . . 431
aveindre . . 431
avoir . . . 412

battre . . 448
bénir . . . 466
boire . . . 421
bouillir . . 377
braire . . 496
bruire . . 497

ceindre . . 431
choir . . . 474
circoncire . . 441
circonscrire . 437
circonvenir . 395
clore . . . 498
combattre . . 448
commettre . 447
comparaître . 414
comparoir . . 493
complaire . . 418
comprendre . 446
compromettre . 447
concevoir . . 399
conclure . . 423
concourir . . 396
conduire . . 433
confire . . 442
conjoindre . 432
connaître . . 413
conquérir . . 398
consentir . . 382
construire . . 434
contenir . . 394
contraindre . 430
contredire . . 483
contrefaire . 445
contrevenir . 395
convaincre . 429
convenir . . 395
coudre . . 428
courir . . 396
couvrir . . 389
craindre . . 430
croire . . 422
croître . . 416
cueillir . . 388
cuire . . . 435

débattre . . 448
décevoir . . 399
déchoir . . 411
déclore . . 498
déconfire . . 442
déconstruire . 434
découdre . . 428
découvrir . . 389
décrire . . 437
décroître . . 476
décuire . . 435
dédire . . 483
déduire . . 433
défaillir . . 386
défaire . . 445
déjoindre . . 432
démentir . . 379
démettre . . 447
départir . . 380
dépeindre . . 431
déplaire . . 418
dépourvoir . 472
déprendre . . 446
désapprendre . 446
desservir . . 383
déteindre . . 431
détenir . . 394
détruire . . 434
devenir . . 395
dévêtir . . 393
devoir . . 400
dire . . . 443
disconvenir . 395
discourir . . 396
disjoindre . . 432
disparaître . 414
dissoudre . . 425
distraire . . 438
dormir . . 378
ébattre (s'). . 448
ébouillir . . 377
échoir . . 494
éclore . . 499
éconduire . . 433
écrire . . 437
élire . . . 419
emboire . . 421
émettre . . 447
émoudre . . 424
émouvoir . . 467
empreindre . 431
enceindre . . 431
enclore . . 498
encourir . . 396
endormir . . 378
enduire . . 433
enfreindre . . 431
enfuir (s') . . 392
enjoindre . . 432
enquérir (s') . 398
ensuivre (s') . 439
entremettre (s'). 447
entreprendre . 446
entretenir . . 394
entrevoir . . 408
entr'ouvrir . 391
envoyer . . 376
épreindre . . 431
éprendre (s') . 446
équivaloir . . 406
ester . . . 487
éteindre . . 431
être . . . 449
étreindre . . 431
exclure . . 423
extraire . . 438

faillir . . 386
faire . . . 445
falloir . . 407
feindre . . 431
férir . . . 488
fleurir . . 466
forfaire . . 445
frire . . . 500
fuir . . . 392

geindre . . 431
gésir . . . 489

haïr . . . 466

induire . . 433
inscrire . . 437
instruire . . 434

interdire . . 483
intervenir . . 395
introduire . . 433
issir . . . 490

joindre . . 432

lire . . . 419
luire . . . 436

maintenir . . 394
malfaire . . 445
maudire . . 444
méconnaître . 413
mécroire . . 422
médire . . 483
méfaire . . 445
mentir . . 379
méprendre (se) . 446
mettre . . 447
moudre . . 424
mourir . . 397
mouvoir . . 401

naître . . 417
nuire . . . 436

obtenir . . 394
offrir . . . 390
oindre . . 432
omettre . . 447
ouïr . . . 491
ouvrir . . 391

paître . . 475
paraître . . 414
parcourir . . 396
parfaire . . 445
parvenir . . 395
partir . . 380
peindre . . 431
percevoir . . 399
permettre . . 447
plaindre . . 430
plaire . . 418
pleuvoir . . 402
poindre . . 501
poursuivre . 439
pourvoir . . 472
pouvoir . . 404
prédire . . 483
prélire . . 419
prendre . . 446
prescrire . . 437
pressentir . . 382
prévaloir . . 471
prévenir . . 395
prévoir . . 472
produire . . 433
promettre . . 447
promouvoir . 467
proscrire . . 437
provenir . . 395

quérir . . 465

rabattre . . 448
rapprendre . 446
rasseoir . . 409
ravoir . . 495
rebattre . . 448
reboire . . 421
rebouillir . . 377
recevoir . . 399
reclure . . 503
reconduire . . 433
reconnaître . 413
reconquérir . 398
reconstruire . 434
recoudre . . 428
recourir . . 396
recouvrir . . 389
récrire . . 437
recroître . . 416
recueillir . . 388
recuire . . 435
redevenir . . 395
redevoir . . 400
redire . . 443
réduire . . 433
réélire . . 419
refaire . . 445
rejoindre . . 432
relire . . . 419
reluire . . 436
remettre . . 447
remoudre . . 424
rémoudre . . 424
renaître . . 477
rendormir (se) . 378
renduire . . 433
rentraire . . 438
renvoyer . . 376
repaître . . 415
reparaître . . 414
repartir . . 380
repeindre . . 431
repentir (se) . 381
reprendre . . 446
reproduire . . 433
requérir . . 398
résoudre . . 426
ressentir . . 382
ressortir . . 384
ressouvenir (se) . 395
restreindre . 431
retenir . . 394
retraire . . 438
revenir . . 395
revêtir . . 393
revivre . . 427
revoir . . 408
rire . . . 440
rouvrir . . 391

saillir . . 387
satisfaire . . 445
savoir . . 403
secourir . . 396
séduire . . 433
sentir . . 382
seoir . . . 473
servir . . 383
sortir . . 384
souffrir . . 390
soumettre . . 447
sourdre . . 502
sourire . . 440
souscrire . . 437
soustraire . . 438
soutenir . . 394
souvenir (se) . 395
subvenir . . 395
suffire . . 441
suivre . . 439
surcroître . . 416
surfaire . . 445
surprendre . 446
surseoir . . 410
survenir . . 395
survivre . . 427

taire . . . 420
teindre . . 431
tenir . . . 394
tistre . . 504
traduire . . 433
traire . . . 438
transcrire . . 437
transmettre . 447
tressaillir . . 385

vaincre . . 429
valoir . . 406
venir . . . 395
vêtir . . . 393
vivre . . . 427
voir . . . 408
vouloir . . 405

CHAPTER XXI.—ELEMENTARY SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

I.—THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

§ **505**. The subjunctive is the mood of **doubt or hypothesis.** It is used much more extensively in French than in English, and constitutes the greatest difficulty in the language, since its employment is often decided by very slight shades of meaning. Roughly speaking, it may be said to occur only in **subordinate clauses** introduced by the conjunction **que.**

Six main rules can be given.

§ **506**. 1. The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause depending on a verb expressing **wish** or **command.**

J'exige qu'il obéisse.	**J'exigeai qu'il obéît.**
I require him to obey.	*I required him to obey.*

Obs. The construction of the accusative and infinitive, so common in English and Latin, is replaced in French by the conjunction **que** and a subordinate clause.

§ **507**. 2. The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause depending on a verb expressing **emotion** of any kind.

Je suis surpris que vous ne l'ayez pas vu.
I am surprised that you have not seen him.

Nous craignions qu'il ne nous rencontrât.
We were afraid he might meet us.

Obs. Words denoting **fear**, when used affirmatively, require **ne** (cp. Lat. **ne**, *lest*) with the following subjunctive.

§ **508**. 3. The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause depending on a verb expressing **uncertainty.**

Croyez-vous qu'il l'ait fait ?	**Je doute qu'ils soient ici.**
Do you think he has done so ?	*I doubt their being here.*

§ **509.** 4. The subjunctive is generally used in a subordinate clause introduced by any of the following impersonal verbs:—

il faut, / **il est nécessaire,** } *it is necessary.*
il importe, / **il est important,** } *it is important.*
il est juste, *it is just.*
il est possible, / **il se peut,** } *it is possible.*
il semble, *it seems.*
il est temps, *it is time.*
il vaut mieux, *it is better.*

Il est juste qu'il soit récompensé.
It is right that he should be rewarded.

Il vaut mieux qu'il se taise.
It is better that he should hold his tongue.

Obs. The use of the subjunctive with these impersonal verbs falls in most cases under one or other of the first three rules given above (§§ 506—508).

§ **510.** 5. The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause introduced by one of the following conjunctions:—

afin que, *in order that.*
avant que, *before.*
bien que, *although.*
pour que, *in order that.*
pourvu que, *provided that.*
quoique, *although.*
supposé que, *supposing that.*
à moins que . . . ne, *unless.*
de crainte que . . . ne, / **de peur que . . . ne,** } *for fear that, lest.*

Parlez plus haut, afin que je vous entende.
Speak louder, in order that I may hear you.

Je n'irai pas à moins que vous ne m'accompagniez.
I shall not go unless you accompany me.

§ **511.** 6. The subjunctive is used in a relative clause dependent on a superlative, or on the words premier, *first*, dernier, *last*, seul, *only*, which are virtually superlatives.

Il est le meilleur acteur que j'aie jamais vu.
He is the best actor I have ever seen.

Vous êtes le seul ami sur qui je puisse compter.
You are the only friend on whom I can count.

Obs. These rules are by no means of universal application, but they serve to give a general idea of the employment of this mood. The further consideration of the subject would lead us too far into the region of syntax.

II.—THE INFINITIVE.

§ **512**. The syntax of the infinitive is a wide subject. We here deal only with its use—

(1) as the complement of another verb;
(2) after certain prepositions.

It will be seen that the two uses overlap to some extent.

1. The Infinitive Dependent on a Verb.

§ **513**. In English the infinitive, dependent on a verb, is generally preceded by *to*; *e.g. I want to go, I beg you to go.* More rarely it follows immediately without any connecting word; *e.g. I must go.* In French the place of the English *to* is supplied by one of the prepositions à or de, but a great many French verbs (considerably more than in English) are followed by an infinitive without preposition. We mention these first.

§ **514**. *Infinitive without a Preposition.*—The following are the most important verbs followed by the infinitive without a preposition:—

aimer mieux, *to prefer.*
aller, *to go.*
croire, *to believe.*
désirer, *to wish.*
devoir, *to be obliged*, etc.
entendre, *to hear.*
espérer, *to hope.*
faire, *to make, to cause.*
falloir, *to be necessary.*
laisser, *to allow.*
oser, *to dare.*
penser, *to think.*
pouvoir, *to be able.*
préférer, *to prefer.*
savoir, *to know (how).*
sentir, *to feel.*
venir, *to come.*
voir, *to see.*
vouloir, *to wish.*

Allez chercher le médecin.
Go for the doctor.

Il ne faut jamais désespérer.
Never say die.

Je l'entends venir.
I hear him coming.

Pouvez-vous sortir ?
Can you go out?

Obs. It will be seen that many of the above correspond to the so-called auxiliaries of mood, *can, will*, etc. which in English are followed by a simple infinitive.

§ **515**. *Infinitive preceded by* de *or* à.—The following lists contain only a selection of those verbs which take de or à respectively before a following infinitive. Rules on this point cannot be made sufficiently definite to be of service to the beginner; the difficulty can only be overcome by reading and practice.

(*a*) The following verbs take de before a following infinitive:—

achever, *to finish.*
avertir, *to warn.*
cesser, *to cease.*
commander, *to command.*
craindre, *to fear.*
dire, *to tell, to bid.*
finir, *to finish.*
menacer, *to threaten.*
mériter, *to deserve.*
offrir, *to offer.*
oublier, *to forget.*
parler, *to speak.*
permettre, *to allow.*
persuader, *to persuade.*
prier, *to beg.*
promettre, *to promise.*
proposer, *to propose.*
recommander, *to recommend.*
refuser, *to refuse.*
regretter, *to regret.*
soupçonner, *to suspect.*
tâcher, *to try.*

Ils craignaient de vous offenser.
They feared to offend you.

Vous méritez d'être puni.
You deserve to be punished.

Priez-le de rester.
Beg him to stop.

(*b*) The following verbs take à before an infinitive dependent on them:—

accoutumer, *to accustom.*
aider, *to help.*
aimer, *to like.*
apprendre, *to learn, to teach.*
aspirer, *to aspire.*
chercher, *to seek.*
commencer, } *to begin.*
se mettre, }
consentir, *to consent*
encourager, *to encourage.*
enseigner, *to teach.*
exhorter, *to exhort.*
hésiter, *to hesitate.*
inviter, *to invite.*
parvenir, *to succeed.*
penser, *to think.*
préparer, *to prepare.*
réussir, *to succeed.*
servir, *to serve.*
songer, *to think.*

Aimez-vous à danser?
Do you like dancing?

Je vous apprendrai à vivre.
I will teach you to behave.

On l'a encouragé à persévérer.
He has been encouraged to persevere.

Obs. The preceding lists contain only the commonest verbs. Many others might be added, including several reflexive verbs. There are also a few which take either **à** or **de**, in some cases with a slight distinction of meaning.

(2) The Infinitive after the Prepositions sans, après, pour, par.

§ **516.** It will have been observed from the foregoing examples that the French infinitive is frequently used for the English gerund in *-ing*: this is especially the case after the prepositions **sans**, **après**, **pour**, **par**, and after all prepositions compounded with **de**.

Il partit sans rien dire.
He started without saying anything.

Après avoir dit cela, il se tut.
After having said that, he was silent.

Nous le ferons pour vous plaire.
We will do it to please you.

Ils finirent par céder.
They ended by yielding.

Note.—The preposition **en** alone is followed by the present participle.

Il pâlit en disant cela.
He turned pale on saying that.

Obs. In this usage the present participle would be more correctly called a "gerund"; **en disant** = Lat. **in dicendo.**

III.—THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

§ **517.** The present participle, when used with its true verbal force, is invariable.

Voyez ces petites filles jouant dans le jardin.
Look at those little girls playing in the garden.

§ **518**. The present participle, when used as an adjective, agrees with its substantive in gender and number.

Ces jeunes filles sont charmantes.
These girls are charming.

IV.—THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

§ **519**. The rules for the agreement of the past participle fall under five heads :

1. The past participle used as an adjective.
2. The past participle used with the verb être.
3. The past participle used with the verb avoir.
4. The past participle of reflexive verbs.
5. The past participle of impersonal verbs.

1. The Past Participle as an Adjective.

§ **520**. The past participle used as an adjective agrees in number and gender with the substantive or pronoun to which it refers.

Des hommes armés se précipitèrent dans l'église.
Armed men rushed into the church.

2. The Past Participle with être.

§ **521**. The past participle used with être agrees with the subject in gender and number.

Vos sœurs sont arrivées.
Your sisters have arrived.

Nos maisons ont été vendues.
Our houses have been sold.

3. The Past Participle with avoir.

§ **522**. The past participle used with avoir agrees with a preceding direct object; otherwise it is invariable.

Où avez-vous rencontré ces dames ?
Where did you meet these ladies?

But,

Voilà les dames que (object) **j'ai rencontrées.**
There are the ladies that I met.
Où les (object) **avez-vous rencontrées ?**
Where did you meet them ?

4. The Past Participle of Reflexive Verbs.

§ **523**. The auxiliary **être**, used in forming the compound tenses of reflexive verbs, is really equivalent to **avoir**, and hence agreement takes place if the direct object precedes the verb.

Elles se (object) **sont trompées.**
They have made a mistake.

In order to decide whether the past participle should agree or not, it is only necessary in most instances to see whether the reflexive pronoun is accusative (direct object) or dative (indirect object). Thus :—

Elle s'est blessée au doigt.
Elle s'est blessé le doigt.
She has hurt her finger.

In the first sentence (lit. *She has hurt herself in the finger*) **se** is accusative, and agreement takes place. In the second (lit. *She has hurt to herself the finger*) **se** is dative, and the past participle remains invariable.

Note.—The past participle of a reflexive verb may, however, have a preceding direct object other than the reflexive pronoun : in such cases agreement takes place.

Elles se sont rappelé ces faits.
They have recalled these facts.

Voici les faits qu'elles se sont rappelés.
These are the facts which they have recalled.

Here **rappelés** agrees with **faits**, **se** being dative.

5. The Past Participle of Impersonal Verbs.

§ **524**. The past participle of impersonal verbs is invariable.

Les chaleurs qu'il a fait cette semaine ont été insupportables.
The heat that there has been this week has been unbearable.

CHAPTER XXII.—ADVERBS.

§ **525**. Adverbs may be classified in French in the same way as in English :

1. Adverbs of place and time;
2. Adverbs of quantity or degree;
3. Adverbs of affirmation, negation, etc.;
4. Adverbs of manner.

Adverbs of manner are, for the most part, formed from adjectives and admit of degrees of comparison. Of the rest, only adverbs of quantity call for notice as differing in usage from English adverbs.

I.—POSITION OF THE ADVERB.

§ **526**. Adverbs are usually placed immediately after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses.

Je vois rarement votre ami.	**Il s'est rarement trompé.**
I seldom see your friend.	*He has seldom been mistaken.*

NOTE.—The two words **en** and **y** when used in their original capacity of adverbs of place take the same position as when they are employed as pronouns.

Nous en sommes revenus.	**J'y suis, j'y reste.**
We have returned thence.	*There I am, and there I stop.*

Obs. For the position of negative adverbs, see §§ 324-326.

II.—ADVERBS OF QUANTITY AND DEGREE.

§ **527**. A number of words, which French grammarians call **adverbs of quantity**, might with greater accuracy be termed neuter substantives ; they are represented in English by such substantives or by adjectives. The following are the most common words of this class :—

assez, *enough.*
autant, *as much, as many.*
beaucoup, *much, many.*
bien, *much, many.*
combien, *how much, how many.*
moins, *less, fewer.*
peu, *little, few.*
plus, *more.*
que, *how much, how many.*
tant, *so much, so many.*
trop, *too much, too many.*
un peu, *a little, a few.*

§ **528**. These adverbs of quantity, when used before a substantive, must be followed by **de** without the article.

Si j'avais beaucoup d'argent, j'aurais plus d'amis.

If I had much money, I should have more friends.

NOTE.—**Bien** alone takes the partitive article with the following substantive; *e.g.* **Dites-lui bien des choses de ma part,** *Give him* (or *her*) *my very kind regards.*

Obs. The adverb **beaucoup** may not be modified by another adverb. The English phrases *so much, too much, very much*, etc., are translated in French by single words followed by **de**.

§ **529**. The adverb **tout**, when used before a feminine adjective not beginning with a vowel or h mute, has a feminine form like an adjective, being the only exception to the rule that adverbs are invariable.

Elle était tout aimable, tout heureuse.

She was quite amiable, quite happy.

Elle était toute surprise, toute honteuse.

She was quite surprised, quite ashamed.

III.—FORMATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ **530**. 1. Adverbs of manner are formed from adjectives ending in a consonant, by adding -ment to the feminine.

complet	**complètement**	*completely*
doux	**doucement**	*gently*
franc	**franchement**	*frankly*
heureux	**heureusement**	*happily*
net	**nettement**	*clearly*
premier	**premièrement**	*first*

§ **531**. 2. Adjectives ending in a vowel add -ment to the masculine.

triste	**tristement**	*sadly*
aisé	**aisément**	*easily*
poli	**poliment**	*politely*
absolu	**absolument**	*absolutely*
dû	**dûment**	*duly*

Obs. The rule is thus stated for the sake of convenience. Strictly speaking, the -e mute of the feminine of adjectives ending in a vowel other than e mute has been dropped, and in the case of adjectives ending in e mute in the masculine, the feminine form is of course the same.

§ **532**. 3. Adjectives ending in -ant, -ent change -nt into -mment. In these cases the final letters of the adjective have become assimilated to the adverbial termination.

courant	**couramment**	*fluently*
prudent	**prudemment**	*prudently*
savant	**savamment**	*learnedly*

Exceptions to Rule 1.

§ **533**. Nine adjectives ending in a consonant take an acute accent over the -e of the feminine form. They are—

commun	**communément**	*commonly*
confus	**confusément**	*confusedly*
diffus	**diffusément**	*diffusely*
exprès	**expressément**	*expressly*
importun	**importunément**	*importunately*
obscur	**obscurément**	*obscurely*
précis	**précisément**	*precisely*
profond	**profondément**	*profoundly*
profus	**profusément**	*profusely*

Exceptions to Rule 2.

§ **534**. The following adverbs formed from adjectives in -u indicate the loss of the -e of the feminine by means of a circumflex :—

aigu	**aigûment**	*acutely*
assidu	**assidûment**	*assiduously*
congru	**congrûment**	*congruously*
continu	**continûment**	*continuously*
cru	**crûment**	*crudely*
goulu	**goulûment**	*greedily*
incongru	**incongrûment**	*incongruously*
indu	**indûment**	*unduly*
nu	**nûment** (or **nuement**)	*nakedly*

With the above may be classed—

gai	**gaîment** (or **gaiement**)	*gaily*

Obs. Several of the above are rarely used.

§ **535**. The following adverbs formed from adjectives with two forms in the masculine singular (§ 116) should be noticed :—

beau (bel)	**bellement**	*gently*
fou (fol)	**follement**	*madly*
mou (mol)	**mollement**	*softly*
nouveau (nouvel)	**nouvellement**	*newly*

§ **536**. Eight adjectives ending in -e mute take an acute accent over that -e when used to form adverbs.

aveugle	**aveuglément**	*blindly*
commode	**commodément**	*conveniently*
conforme	**conformément**	*conformably*
énorme	**énormément**	*enormously*
immense	**immensément**	*immensely*
incommode	**incommodément**	*inconveniently*
opiniâtre	**opiniâtrément**	*obstinately*
uniforme	**uniformément**	*uniformly*

Exceptions to Rule 3.

§ **537**. Three adjectives in -ent follow Rule 1, and add -ment to the feminine.

lent	**lentement**	*slowly*
présent	**présentement**	*at present*
véhément	**véhémentement**	*vehemently*

Adverbs Irregularly Formed.

§ 538	**bref**	**brièvement**	*briefly*
	impuni	**impunément**	*with impunity*
	gentil	**gentiment**	*prettily*
	traître	**traîtreusement**	*treacherously*

Note on the Termination -ment.

§ 539. The ending **-ment** comes from the Latin **mente** (abl. of **mens**, f., *mind*); *e.g.* **cruellement** = **crudeli mente**, *with cruel mind*. Hence the use of the feminine of the adjective in forming these adverbs. Adjectives which had only two terminations in Latin, such as **crudelis**, **prudens**, etc., had only one form for the masculine and feminine in old French, and accordingly such forms as **cruelment** are found in early texts. These were later on made to conform to the general rule, but in the case of adjectives ending in **-ant**, **-ent**, the assimilation of these endings with the **-m** of the adverbial suffix has preserved the original form.

IV.—ADJECTIVES USED AS ADVERBS.

§ 540. As in English, many adjectives may be employed in French as adverbs. This is one of the few traces of the survival of the neuter gender in French.

bas	**parler bas**	*to speak low*
bon	**tenir bon**	*to hold fast*
cher	**coûter cher**	*to cost dear*
clair	**voir clair**	*to see clearly*
doux	**filer doux**	*to be all submission*
droit	**se tenir droit**	*to stand upright*
dur	**entendre dur**	*to be hard of hearing*
exprès	**venir exprès**	*to come on purpose*
faux	**chanter faux**	*to sing out of tune*
ferme	**tenir ferme**	*to stand firm*
haut	**parler haut**	*to speak loud*
juste	**chanter juste**	*to sing in tune*
net	**parler net**	*to speak plainly*
soudain	**sortir soudain**	*to go out suddenly*
vite	**aller vite**	*to go quickly*
vrai	**dire vrai**	*to speak the truth*

V. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 541. Adverbs which are capable of comparison form their comparative by prefixing plus or moins, and their superlative relative by prefixing le plus or le moins.

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
sagement, *wisely*	**plus sagement**	**le plus sagement**
longtemps, *long*	**plus longtemps**	**le plus longtemps**
près, *near*	**plus près**	**le plus près**

Obs. The above are examples of the comparative and superlative relative of **superiority**; the corresponding degrees of **inferiority** are formed by substituting **moins** for **plus**.

§ 542. The following are irregular:—

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
bien, *well*	**mieux**	**le mieux**
mal, *ill*	**pis** / **plus mal**	**le pis** / **le plus mal**
peu, *little*	**moins**	**le moins**
beaucoup, *much*	**plus**	**le plus**

Obs. These forms should be carefully distinguished from those of the **corresponding adjectives** (§ 145).

CHAPTER XXIII.—PREPOSITIONS.

§ **543.** Prepositions are divided in French into simple and compound. The former consist of one word only (though in many cases representing older compounds), and the latter of two or more words, for which reason they are sometimes called prepositional phrases.

§ **544.** The chief simple prepositions are—

à, *to, at*
après, *after*
avant, *before*
avec, *with*
chez, *at the house of*
contre, *against*
dans, *in*
de, *of, from*
depuis, *since*
derrière, *behind*
dès, *from, since*
durant, *during*
en, *in*
entre, *between*
envers, *towards*
excepté, *except*
hormis, *except*
jusque, *until*
malgré, *in spite of*
moyennant, *by means of*
outre, *besides*
par, *by*
parmi, *among*
pendant, *during*
pour, *for*
sans, *without*
sauf, *except*
selon, *according to*
sous, *under*
suivant, *according to*
sur, *on, upon*
vers, *towards*

§ **545.** Compound prepositions or prepositional phrases are numerous. Examples are—

à côté de, *beside*
au dessous de, *below*
au dessus de, *above*
au devant de, *in front of*
au lieu de, *instead of*
au milieu de, *amid*
auprès de, *near*
autour de, *around*
à travers } *through*
au travers de }
en dehors de, *outside*
en face de, *opposite*
faute de, *for lack of*
jusqu'à, *until*
le long de, *along*
par delà, *beyond*
par rapport à, *with regard to*
près de, *near*
quant à, *with regard to*
vis-à-vis de, *opposite*

Notes on the Use of the Prepositions.

§ **546.** *In* and *to* before the name of a country are both translated by **au** if the name of the country is masculine in French, and by **en** without the article if the name of the country is feminine.

Il a demeuré en France et au Danemark.
He has lived in France and in Denmark.
Nous allons en Amérique et de là au Japon.
We are going to America and thence to Japan.

NOTE.--When the name of a country is preceded by an adjective, **dans** is used for **en** and is followed by the article.

Je demeurerai toujours dans la belle France.
I shall always live in fair France.

Il est allé dans la Grande Bretagne.
He has gone to Great Britain.

§ **547.** Ordinarily *in* is translated by **dans** before a word preceded in French by the definite article or other determining words, otherwise by **en.**

Dans la guerre de '70.
In the war of 1870.

En temps de guerre.
In time of war.

§ **548.** The English preposition *with* is usually translated by **de** when it introduces the instrument.

Armé d'une épée.
Armed with a sword.

Ivre de joie.
Wild with joy.

§ **549.** The English construction of a preposition followed by the gerund is represented in French by a preposition followed by the infinitive, except in the case of **en,** which takes the present participle (§ 516).

L'art de danser.
The art of dancing.

Sans coup férir.
Without striking a blow.

En agissant ainsi vous réussirez.
By acting thus you will succeed.

§ **550**. *For*, when used of time, should be translated by **pendant**, not by **pour**.

J'ai demeuré ici pendant trois mois.
I have lived here for three months.

§ **551**. *Before*, referring to **time**, is translated by **avant**; referring to **place**, by **devant**.

Avant deux heures.
Before two o'clock.

Devant le juge.
Before the judge.

§ **552**. **Vers** and **envers** both mean *towards*, but the latter is only used of feelings.

Vers midi.
Towards noon.

Vers Londres.
Towards London.

Il était charitable envers les pauvres.
He was charitable to the poor.

§ **553**. **Pour** is used with an infinitive in place of the English *to*, *in order to*, to express purpose emphatically.

Que faut-il pour réussir ?
What is necessary in order to succeed ?

Further rules on the use of prepositions are given in the "Tutorial French Syntax."

CHAPTER XXIV.—CONJUNCTIONS.

§ **554**. Conjunctions may be divided, according to their use, into **co-ordinating** and **subordinating**. A co-ordinating conjunction links two words, phrases, clauses, or sentences together; a subordinating conjunction introduces a dependent clause.

I.—Co-ordinating Conjunctions.

§ **555**. The following are the most common co-ordinating conjunctions:—

car, *for*	**mais**, *but*
cependant, *nevertheless*	**ni**, *nor*
et, *and*	**ou**, *or*
et . . . et, *both . . . and*	**ou . . . ou**, *either . . . or*
ni . . . ni, *neither . . . nor*	**soit . . . soit**, *either . . . or*

Note.—With **ni . . . ni**, the accompanying verb requires the negative particle **ne**.

Il n'a ni parents ni richesse.
He has neither kin nor wealth.

II.—Subordinating Conjunctions.

§ **556**. Subordinating conjunctions are either **simple** or **compound**.

§ **557**. The chief simple subordinating conjunctions are—

comme, *as*	**quand**, *when*
comment, *how*	**que**, *that*
pourquoi, *why*	**si**, *if*

§ **558**. Compound subordinating conjunctions are always formed with the simple conjunction que : in a few cases the words have ceased to be written separately. The following are the most important :—

*à condition que, *on condition that*
*afin que, *in order that*
*à moins que . . . ne, *unless*
après que, *after*
aussitôt que, *as soon as*
*avant que, *before*
*bien que, *although*
*de crainte que ... ne, *for fear that*
de manière que, *so that*
de même que, *just as*
*de peur que . . . ne, *for fear that*
depuis que, *since*
de sorte que, *so that*
dès que, *as soon as*
*en cas que, *in case*
*jusqu'à ce que, *until*
lorsque, *when*
parce que, *because*
pendant que, *while*
*pour que, *in order that*
*pourvu que, *provided that*
puisque, *since*
*quoique, *although*
*sans que, *without*
selon que, *according as*
si ce n'est que, *unless*
*supposé que, *supposing that*
tandis que, *while*
tellement que, *so that*
vu que, *seeing that*

NOTE.—The conjunctions marked with an asterisk (*) are followed by a verb in the subjunctive. Some of them have already been mentioned (§ 510). Further details will be found in the *Tutorial French Syntax*.

APPENDIX.

(A.) HOMONYMS.

§ 559. The term homonyms is applicable, strictly speaking, only to words of identical pronunciation, but it is here extended to a number of words which are sufficiently alike to cause confusion. Some true homonyms (*e.g.* **saut**, *leap*, and **sot**, *foolish*; **signe**, *sign*, and **cygne**, *swan*) which differ considerably in spelling are not included, since they are not likely to be associated in the learner's mind.

air (m.), *air*
aire (f.), *eyrie, threshing-floor*

anoblir, *to raise to the peerage*
ennoblir, *to ennoble*

appas (m. pl.), *charms*
appât (m.), *bait*

aveuglement (m.), *blindness*
aveuglément, *blindly*

baîller, *to yawn*
bailler, *to lease*

bal (m.), *ball, dance*
balle (f.), *bullet*

bière (f.), *beer*
bière (f.), *coffin*

bout (m.), *end, extremity*
boue (f.), *mud*

brocard (m.), *jeer*
brocart (m.), *brocade*

bu, p.p. of **boire**, *to drink*
but (m.), *end, purpose*

ça (cela), *this*
çà, *here*

capital (m.), *capital* (money)
capitale (f.), *capital* (town)

chaîne (f.), *chain*
chêne (m.), *oak*

chair (f.), *flesh*
chaire (f.), *pulpit*

chasse (f.), *chase*
châsse (f.), *shrine*

cimeterre (m.), *scimitar*
cimetière (m.), *cemetery*

comte (m.), *earl*
compte (m.), *account*
conte (m.), *tale*

coup (m.), *blow*
coupe (f.), *cup*

cour (f.), *court*
cours (m.), *course*
court, *short*

cru, *raw*
cru, p.p. of **croire**, *to believe*
cru (m.), *growth*
crû, p.p. of **croître**, *to grow*
crue (f.), *rise* of) water)

- **date** (f.), *date* (of time)
- **datte** (f.), *date* (fruit)

- **des**, *some, of the*
- **dé** (m.), *thimble*
- **dès**, *since*

- **dégoûter**, *to disgust*
- **dégoutter**, *to trickle*

- **dessin** (m.), *drawing*
- **dessein** (m.), *plan*

- **dessus**, *above*
- **dessous**, *below*

- **envi** (m.), *emulation*
- **envie** (f.), *envy*

- **été** (m.), *summer*
- **été**, p.p. of **être**, *to be*

- **fil** (m.), *thread*
- **fils** * (m.), *son*

- **foi** (f.), *faith*
- **foie** (m.), *liver*
- **fois** (f.), *time* (in enumeration)

- **fond** (m.), *bottom*
- **fonds** (m.), *fund*

- **foret** (m.), *gimlet*
- **forêt** (f.), *forest*

- **frais**, *fresh*
- **frais** (m. pl.), *expenses*

- **gaz** * (m.), *gas*
- **gaze** (f.), *gauze*

- **goût** (m.), *taste*
- **goutte** (f.), *drop*

- **grêle** (f.), *hail*
- **grêle**, *slender*

- **guère**, *hardly*
- **guerre** (f.), *war*

- **jeûne** (m.), *fast*
- **jeune**, *young*

- **lieu** (m.), *place*
- **lieue** (f.), *league*

- **louer**, *to praise* (Lat. **laudare**)
- **louer**, *to hire* (Lat. **locare**)

- **martyr** (m.), *martyr*
- **martyre** (m.), *martyrdom*

- **mat**, *dim*
- **mat** * (m.), *mate* (at chess)
- **mât** (m.), *mast*

- **matin** (m.), *morning*
- **mâtin** (m.), *mastiff*

- **mine** (f.), *mine*
- **mine** (f.), *aspect*

- **moral** (m.), *spirit*
- **morale** (f.), *morality*

- **mur** (m.), *wall*
- **mûr**, *ripe*
- **mûre** (f.), *mulberry*

- **noyer**, *to drown*
- **noyer** (m.), *walnut-tree*

- **nu**, *naked*
- **nue** (f.), *cloud*

- **or**, *now*
- **or** (m.), *gold*

- **ou**, *or*
- **où**, *where*

- **parti** (m.), *party, faction*
- **partie** (f.), *part*

- **pêche** (f.), *peach*
- **pêche** (f.), *fishing*

- **pécher**, *to sin*
- **pêcher**, *to fish*
- **pêcher** (m.), *peach-tree*

- **plu**, p.p of **plaire**, *to please*
- **plu**, p.p of **pleuvoir**, *to rain*

* The final letter of this word is sounded.

plus tôt, *sooner*
plutôt, *rather*

poignet (m.), *wrist*
poignée (f.), *handful*

poison (m.), *poison*
poisson (m.), *fish*

port (m.), *harbour*
porte (f.), *door*

prémices (f.), *first fruits*
prémisses (f.), *premises* (in logic)

près, *near*
prêt, *ready*
prêt (m.), *loan*
pré (m.), *meadow*

quoique, *although*
quoi que, *whatever*

railler, *to chaff*
rallier, *to rally*

repartir, *to set out again, to retort*
répartir, *to divide*

ris (m.), *laugh*
riz (m.), *rice*

roue (f.), *wheel*
rue (f.), *street*

sale, *dirty*
salle (f.), *hall*

satire (f.), *satire*
satyre (m.), *satyr*

sceau (m.), *seal, signet*
seau (m.), *bucket*

sel (m.), *salt*
selle (f.), *saddle*

son, *his, her, its*
son (m.), *sound*
son (m.), *bran*

sur, *upon*
sur, *sour*
sûr, *sure*

tache (f.), *stain*
tâche (f.), *task*

ton, *thy*
ton (m.), *tone*

trait (m.), *feature*
trait (m.), *dart*
traite (f.), *trade*

tribu (f.), *tribe*
tribut (m.), *tribute*

ver (m.), *worm*
verre (m.), *a glass*
vers (m.), *verse*
vers, *towards*
vert, *green*

voie (f.), *way*
voix (f.), *voice*

voler, *to fly*
voler, *to steal*

B.) ENGLISH AND FRENCH WORDS OF SIMILAR FORM BUT DIFFERENT MEANING.

§ **560.** Many French words bear a resemblance, sometimes accidental, to English words from which they differ in meaning. The following are the most important examples :—

French.	English.	English.	French.
actuel,	*of the present day.*	*actual,*	réel.
agréer,	*to approve.*	*agree,*	convenir.
alléger,	*to lighten.*	*allege,*	alléguer.
allouer,	*to assign.*	*allow,*	permettre.
arme (f.),	*weapon.*	*arm,*	bras (m.).
assistant (m.),	*bystander.*	*assistant,*	aide (m.).
avertir,	*to warn.*	*avert,*	détourner.
axe (f.),	*axis.*	*axe,*	hache (f.).
bail (m.),	*lease.*	*bail,*	caution (f.).
blesser,	*to wound.*	*bless,*	bénir.
bride (f.),	*bridle.*	*bride,*	nouvelle mariée.
cane (f.),	*duck.*	*cane,*	canne (f.).
canon (m.),	*cannon.*	*canon,*	chanoine (m.).
cap (m.),	*promontory.*	*cap,*	bonnet (m.).
casquette (f.),	*cap.*	*casket,*	cassette (f.).
cave (f.),	*cellar.*	*cave,*	antre (m.).
chair (f.),	*flesh.*	*chair,*	chaise (f.).
coin (m.),	*corner.*	*coin,*	pièce de monnaie.
contrée (f.),	*district.*	*country,*	pays (m.), patrie (f.), campagne (f.).
corne (f.),	*horn.*	*corn,*	blé (m.).
courtier (m.),	*broker.*	*courtier,*	courtisan (m.).
crâne (m.),	*skull.*	*crane,*	grue (f.).
crosse (f.),	*butt-end, crosier.*	*cross,*	croix (f.).
curé (m.),	*vicar, parson.*	*curate,*	vicaire (m.).
défiance (f.),	*distrust.*	*defiance,*	défi (m.).
destitution (f.),	*dismissal.*	*destitution,*	dénûment (m.)
dérober,	*to steal.*	*disrobe,*	déshabiller.
deviser,	*to talk.*	*devise,*	projeter.
dot (f.),	*dowry.*	*dot,*	point (m.).
dresser,	*to erect, to train.*	*dress,*	habiller.
éditeur (m.),	*publisher.*	*editor,*	rédacteur (m).

French.	English.	English.	French.
fat * (m.),	*fop, foppish.*	*fat,*	**gras.**
filer,	*to spin.*	*file,*	**limer.**
gardien (m.),	*keeper.*	*guardian,*	**tuteur** (m.).
gendre (m.),	*son-in-law.*	*gender,*	**genre** (m.).
gland (m.),	*acorn.*	*gland,*	**glande** (f.).
grief (m.),	*wrong.*	*grief,*	**chagrin** (m.).
habit (m.),	*coat.*	*habit,*	**habitude** (f.).
halle (f.),	*market.*	*hall,*	**salle** (f.).
hardi,	*bold.*	*hardy,*	**robuste.**
hisser,	*to hoist.*	*hiss,*	**siffler.**
hurler,	*to howl.*	*hurl,*	**jeter.**
injure (f.),	*insult.*	*injury,*	**blessure** (f.).
instance (f.),	*entreaty.*	*instance,*	**exemple** (m.).
journée (f.),	*day, day's work,* etc.	*journey,*	**voyage** (m.).
labourer,	*to plough.*	*labour,*	**travailler.**
large,	*broad.*	*large,*	**grand.**
lecture (f.),	*reading.*	*lecture,*	**conférence** (f.).
libraire (m.),	*bookseller.*	*librarian,*	**bibliothécaire** (m.).
lime (f.),	*file* (tool).	*lime,*	**chaux** (f.).
marchand (m.),	*tradesman.*	*merchant,*	**négociant** (m.).
mare (f.),	*pool.*	*mare,*	**jument, cavale** (f.).
mat * (m.),	*mate* (at chess).	*mat,*	**natte** (f.).
mat,	*dull.*		
mâture (f.),	*rigging.*	*mature,*	**mûr.**
ménager,	*to economize.*	*manage,*	**diriger.**
misérable (m.),	*wretch.*	*miserable,*	**malheureux.**
net,	*clean.*	*net,*	**filet** (m.).
noise (f.),	*quarrel.*	*noise,*	**bruit** (m.).
pain (m.),	*bread.*	*pain,*	**douleur** (f.).
pair (m.),	*peer.*	*pair,*	**paire** (f.).
parent (m.),	*relative.*	*parent,*	**père, mère.**
parti (m.),	*faction.*	*party,*	**compagnie** (f.).
partie (f.),	*part.*		
patron (m.),	*master.*	*patron,*	**protecteur** (m.).
physicien (m.),	*scientist.*	*physician,*	**médecin** (m.).
pie (f.),	*magpie.*	*pie,*	**pâté** (m.).

* The final letter of this word is sounded.

French.	English.	English.	French.
pin (m.),	*pine-tree.*	*pin,*	épingle (f.).
plaisant.	*funny.*	*pleasant,*	agréable.
plat (m.),	*dish.*	*plate,*	assiette (f.).
préjudice (m.),	*harm.*	*prejudice,*	préjugé (m.).
prétendre,	*to claim.*	*pretend,*	feindre.
propriété (f.),	*property.*	*propriety,*	bienséance (f.).
propreté (f.),	*cleanliness.*		
pupille (m. or f.),	*ward, pupil of the eye.*	*pupil,*	élève (m. or f.).
rate (f.),	*spleen.*	*rate,*	taux (m.).
regarder,	*to look at.*	*regard,*	respecter.
reins (m. pl.),	*loins.*	*reins,*	rênes (f. pl.).
relever,	*to raise again.*	*relieve,*	soulager.
rente (f.),	*income.*	*rent* (of a house),	loyer (m.).
		rent (*tear*),	déchirure (f.).
replier,	*to fold back.*	*reply,*	répondre.
reste (m.),	*remainder.*	*rest,*	repos (m.).
ride (f.),	*wrinkle.*	*ride,*	course (f.) à cheval.
roman (m.),	*novel.*	*Roman,*	Romain (m.).
sable (m.),	*sand.*	*sable,*	zibeline (f.).
sale,	*dirty.*	*sale,*	vente (f.).
sensible,	*sensitive.*	*sensible,*	sensé.
servant (m.),	*gunner.*	*servant,*	serviteur (m.).
solliciteur (m.),	*petitioner.*	*solicitor,*	avoué (m.).
sort (m.),	*fate.*	*sort,*	espèce (f.).
spectacle (m.),	*sight, theatre.*	*spectacles,*	lunettes (f. pl.).
store (m.),	*a blind.*	*store,*	dépôt (m.).
supplier,	*to supplicate.*	*supply,*	fournir.
traîner,	*to drag.*	*train,*	élever, dresser.
traiteur (m.),	*restaurant-keeper.*	*traitor,*	traître (m.).
travailler,	*to work.*	*travel,*	voyager.
trépas (m.),	*death.*	*trespass,*	péché (m.).
trouble (m.),	*agitation.*	*trouble,*	peine (f.).
tuteur (m.),	*guardian.*	*tutor,*	précepteur (m.).
user,	*to wear out.*	*use,*	se servir de, employer.
verge (f.),	*rod.*	*verge,*	bord (m.).
verger (m.),	*orchard.*	*verger,*	marguillier (m.), porte-verge (m.).

(C.) NAMES OF COUNTRIES, ETC.

§ **561.** The following list contains the French names of the countries of Europe and a few others, and also the corresponding adjectives.

Europe,	**l'Europe** (f.).	*European,*	**européen.**
Asia,	**l'Asie** (f.).	*Asiatic,*	**asiatique.**
Africa,	**l'Afrique** (f.).	*African,*	**africain.**
America,	**l'Amérique** (f.).	*American,*	**américain.**
Australia,	**l'Australie** (f.).	*Australian,*	**australien**
Austria,	**l'Autriche** (f.).	*Austrian,*	**autrichien**
Belgium,	**la Belgique.**	*Belgian,*	**belge.**
Canada,	**le Canada.**	*Canadian,*	**canadien.**
China,	**la Chine.**	*Chinese,*	**chinois.**
Denmark,	**le Danemark.**	*Danish,*	**danois.**
Egypt,	**l'Égypte** (f.).	*Egyptian,*	**égyptien.**
England,	**l'Angleterre** (f.).	*English,*	**anglais.**
France,	**la France.**	*French,*	**français.**
Germany,	**l'Allemagne** (f.).	*German,*	**allemand.**
Greece,	**la Grèce.**	*Greek,*	**grec** (§ 113).
Holland,	**la Hollande.**	*Dutch,*	**hollandais.**
Hungary,	**la Hongrie.**	*Hungarian,*	**hongrois.**
India,	**l'Inde** (f.).	*Indian,*	**indien.**
"	**l'Hindoustan** (m.).	"	**hindou.**
Ireland,	**l'Irlande** (f.).	*Irish,*	**irlandais.**
Italy,	**l'Italie** (f.).	*Italian,*	**italien.**
Japan,	**le Japon.**	*Japanese,*	**japonais.**
Morocco,	**le Maroc.**	*Moorish,*	**marocain.**
Norway,	**la Norvège.**	*Norwegian,*	**norvégien.**
Poland,	**la Pologne.**	*Polish,*	**polonais**
Portugal,	**le Portugal.**	*Portuguese,*	**portugais.**
Prussia,	**la Prusse.**	*Prussian,*	**prussien.**
Russia,	**la Russie.**	*Russian,*	**russe.**
Scotland,	**l'Écosse** (f.).	*Scotch,*	**écossais.**
Spain,	**l'Espagne** (f.).	*Spanish,*	**espagnol.**
Sweden,	**la Suède.**	*Swedish,*	**suédois.**
Switzerland,	**la Suisse.**	*Swiss,*	**suisse.**
Turkey,	**la Turquie.**	*Turkish,*	**turc** (§ 113).
Wales,	**le pays de Galles.**	*Welsh,*	**gallois.**

The British Isles, **Les Îles-Britanniques.**
The United States, **Les États-Unis.**

INDEX.

The numbers refer to the pages of the book.

I.—GRAMMATICAL TERMS, ETC.

Accent, Tonic, 2, 10.
Accents, 3, 5.
Adjective, 46-73; Qualifying, 46-61; Agreement of, 46-8; Feminine of, 48-52; Plural of, 53-4; Position of, 54-9; Comparison of, 60-61; Determining, 62-73; Numeral, 62-9; Possessive, 69-70; Demonstrative, 70; Interrogative, 71; Indefinite, 71-3; Compound Adjectives, 82; Adjectives used as Adverbs, 199.
Adverbs, 195-200; Position of, 195; Adverbs of Quantity, 195-6; Formation of Adverbs, 196-9; Comparison of, 200.
Agreement of Adjectives, 46-8; of Past Participle, 193-4.
Alphabet, 3.
Apostrophe, 4-5.
Article, definite, 12-14; indefinite, 14; partitive, 15.
Auxiliary Verbs, 106-9.

Capital letters, 3.
Cardinal Numbers, Notes on, 64.
Cedilla, 3, 8.
Collective Numerals, 67-8.
Colour, Adjectives denoting, 55, 82.
Comparison of Adjectives, 60-61; of Adverbs, 200.
Compound Substantives, 74-81; Adjectives, 82; Compound Tenses, 103-104.
Conditional Mood, 101.
Conjugations, Regular, 104-19; Irregular, 150-87.
Conjunctions, 204-5.
Conjunctive Pronouns, 84-90.
Consonants, 8—10; Combinations, of, 10; Liquid, 10.
Countries, Names of, 212.

Date, Method of expressing, 66.
Dative of Personal Pronouns, 84.
Days, Names of the, 66.
Defective Verbs, 184-5.
Definite Article, 12-14.
Degrees of Comparison of Adjectives, 60-61; of Adverbs, 200.
Demonstrative Adjective, 70; Pronouns, 92-3.
Derivation, Gender determined by, 25-7.
Determining Adjectives, 62-73.
Diaeresis, 4.
Diphthongs, 7.
Disjunctive Pronouns, 84-5; Notes on, 90-91.
Doublets, 2.

Elision, 4—5.

Feminine of Substantives, 39-45; of Adjectives, 48-52.
Foreign Substantives, Plural of, 36-7.
Foreign Words, 2.
Formation of Tenses, 105.
Fractional Numerals, 68.
Future Tense, 103; Future Perfect, 104.

Gender of Substantives, 16-31; by meaning, 16-19; Geographical Names, 19; by termination, 20-24; by derivation, 25-7; Varying Gender, 27-31.

Genitive Personal Pronoun, en, 89.
Geographical Names, Gender of, 19.

Homonyms, 206-8.
Hyphen, 4.

Imperative, Formation of, 105; Position of Pronouns governed by, 87.
Imperfect Tense, 102.
Impersonal Verbs, 129-31.
Indefinite Article, 14; Adjectives, 71-3; Pronouns, 99-100.
Infinitive, Syntax of, 190-92.
Interrogative Adjective, 71; Pronouns, 94-5.
Interrogative Conjugation, 136-42.
Intransitive Verbs, 122-3.
Irregular Verbs, 150-85; Alphabetical Index to, 186-7.

Latin, relation to French, 1-2.
Liaison, 10.

Months, Names of the, 66.
Mood, 101-2.
Multiples, 68.

Nationality, Adjectives of, 212.
Negative Conjugation, 132-6.
Negative-Interrogative Conjugation, 140-2.
Neuter Pronoun, 88.
Number, 104
Numerals, 62-9.

Ordinal Numerals, Notes on, 65-6.
Orthographic Signs, 3-4.

Participle, Present, 192-3; Past, 193-4.
Partitive Article, 15.
Parts of Speech, 11.
Passive Voice, 120-21.
Past Definite Tense, 102-3; Past Indefinite, 103; Past Anterior, 103.
Past Participle, Agreement of, 193-4.
Person, 104.
Personal Pronouns, 83-91; Conjunctive Personal Pronouns, Position of, 85-7; Notes on, 88-90; Disjunctive Personal Pronouns, Notes on, 90-91.
Pluperfect Tense, 103.
Plural of Substantives, 32-8; Substantives with two Plurals, 34; with no Plural, 34-5; used in Plural only, 35; with variant meaning in Plural, 36; Plural of Foreign Substantives, 36-7; of Proper Names, 37-8; of Adjectives, 53-4; of Compound Substantives, 77-80; of Compound Adjectives, 82.
Position of Adjectives, 54-9.
Possessive Adjectives, 69-70; Pronouns, 91-2.
Prepositions, 201-3; used in forming Compound Substantives, 80-81.
Present Tense, 102.
Present Participle, 192-3.
Principal Parts, 104-5.
Pronouns, 83-100; Personal, 83-91; Possessive, 91-2; Demonstrative, 92-3; Interrogative, 94-5; Relative, 96-9; Indefinite, 99-100.
Pronunciation, 5-10.
Proper Names, Plural of, 37-8.
Punctuation, 3.

Qualifying Adjectives, 46-61; Agreement of, 46-8; Feminine of, 48-52; Plural of, 53-4; Position of, 54-9; Comparison of, 60-61.
Quantity, Adverbs of, 195-6.
Quasi-Irregular Verbs of the First Conjugation, 143-9.

Reflexive Pronouns, 84; Verbs, 124-7.
Relative Pronouns, 96-9.

Subjunctive, Syntax of, 188-9.
Substantives, Gender of, 16-31; Plural of, 32-8; Feminine of, 39-45; Compound, 74-81; Derived from Numerals, 67-9.
Suffixes, 11.
Superlative of Adjectives, 61; of Adverbs, 200.

Tense Formation, 105, 119.
Tenses, Use of, 102-4.
Terminations, Masculine and Feminine, 20-24.
Than, translated by **que** or **de**, 60.
Time of Day, Method of expressing, 67.
Tonic Accent, 2, 10.
Transitive Verbs, 101-21.

Verbs, 101-94; Introductory, 101-5; Auxiliary, 106-9; Regular Conjugations, 110-19; Passive Voice, 120-21; Intransitive, 122-3; Reflexive, 124-7; Impersonal, 129-31; Negative and Interrogative Conjugation, 132-42; Quasi-Irregular Verbs, 143-9; Irregular and Defective, 150-87; Alphabetical list of, 186-7; Syntax, 188-94.
Voice, 101.
Vowels, Simple, 6; Compound, 7; Nasal, 8.

II.—FRENCH WORDS AND SUFFIXES.

For Irregular and Defective Verbs, see alphabetical list, pp. 186-7.

À, Used in forming Compound Substantives, 80-1.
Aïeul, 34.
Ail, 34.
-al, Plural of Adjectives in, 54.
Aller, as Auxiliary, 127; S'en aller, 178-80.
Amour, 29.
Asservir, 180.
Assortir, 180.
Aucun, 72, 132.
Aussi, 60.
Autrui, 99.
Avant and Devant, 203.

Beau, 51.
Beaucoup, 196.
Bénir, 181.
Bien, 196, 200.
Bon, 61.

Ce, Demonstrative Adjective, 70; Demonstrative Pronoun, 93.
Ce qui, 96-7.
C'est, ce sont, 91, 93.
Ceci, cela, 93.
Celui, celle, 92-3.
Cent, 64.
-cer, Verbs in, 148.
Certain, 71-2.
Chacun, 99.
Chaque, 72.
Chose, 29.
-ci, 70.
Ciel, 34.
Ci-inclus, ci-joint, 48.
Couple, 30.
Courre, 180.

De, Used in forming Compound Substantives, 81.
Délice, 29.
Demi, Adjective, 47; Fractional, 68; An Invariable Prefix, 82.
Devoir, as Auxiliary, 128.
Dont, 96, 98.

-eler, Verbs in, 144-5.
En, Pronoun, 89; Preposition, 192, 202.
Est-ce que . . .?, 140.
-eter, Verbs in, 144-5.
-eur, Feminine of Substantives and Adjectives in, 41-3.
Excepté, 48.

Faire, Used Impersonally, 131.
Feu (Adj.), 48.
Fleurir, 181.
Fois, 69.
Fou, 51.
Foudre, 30.

Garde-, 79.
Gens, 30, 33.
-ger, Verbs in, 148.
Grand', 52, 75.
Guère, 132.

Haïr, 181.
Héros, 43.
Hormis, 48.
Hymne, 30.

-ier, Verbs in, 149.
Il y a, 131.
Issu, 184.

Jamais, 132.

-là, 70.
Le, Definite Article, 12-4; Conjunctive Personal Pronoun, 88; Invariable Neuter Pronoun, 88.
Lequel, 94-7.
Leur, Possessive Adjective, 69; Conjunctive Personal Pronoun, 88; Possessive Pronoun, 91.
L'on *for* on, 100.
L'un et l'autre, 72.
L'un l'autre, 99.

Mal, 200.
Mauvais, 61.
Meilleur, 61.
-ment, Adverbial suffix, 199.
Même, 72.
Mieux, 200.
Mi-, 77, 82.
Mil, mille, 64.
Moindre, 61.
Moins, 200.
Mou, 51.

Ne, 132; after words denoting *fear*, 188.
Ni . . . ni, 204.
Non-compris, 48.
Nouveau, 51.
Nu, 47.
Nul, 59, 72, 132.

Œil, 34.
Œuvre, 30.
On, 99.
Orge, 31.
Orgue, 29.
Où, 98-9.
-ouer, Verbs in, 149.

Pâque, 31.
Pas, 132.
Période, 31.
Personne, Substantive, 31; Pronoun, 99; Ne . . . personne, 132.
Petit, 61.
Peu, 200.
Pire, 61.
Pis, 200.
Plus, 60, 132, 200.
Plusieurs, 72.
Point, 132.
Pour, with Infinitive, 203.
Premier, 65.

Quart, 68.
Que, Pronoun, 94-9.
Que, *than*, 60.
Quel, 71.
Quelconque, 71.
Quel que, 73.
Quelque, 73.
Quelque chose, 99.
Quelqu'un, 99.
Qui, 94-9.
Quiconque, 99.
Quoi, 94-7.

Répartir, 180.
Ressortir, 180.
Rien, Pronoun, 99; Ne . . . rien, 132.

Sauf, 48.
S'en aller, 178-80.
Second, 62, 65.
Si, *so*, 61; *if*, 204.
Soi, soi-même, 85.
Supposé, 48.

Tel, 73.
Tiers, 68.
Tout, 54, 73, 196.
Travail, 34.

-uer, Verbs in, 149.

Vapeur, 31.
Venir, as Auxiliary, 128.
Vieux, 51.
Vingt, 64-5.

Y, Pronoun, 89.
Y avoir, 131.
-yer, Verbs in, 147

EXERCISES.

Exercise 1. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 22-29.)

The student should also learn the indicative tenses of avoir, § 293; être, § 294; and porter, § 295.

Note 1.—All adjectives used in the feminine until Ex. 9 have the same form both for masculine and feminine, and the plural of all substantives and adjectives is found by adding **-s** to the singular.

La dame est jeune.	**Les dames sont jeunes.**
The lady is young.	*The ladies are young.*

1. Soldats! vous êtes les fils de la France.
2. La pauvre Louise a été malade.
3. L'argent est utile aux hommes.
4. Je donnerai un livre au garçon et une fleur à la fille.
5. Le fromage coûte un franc la livre.
6. Les soldats aiment le capitaine Ohnet.
7. Les paysans aiment le travail.
8. La vertu est toujours admirable.
9. Le fils du docteur Blanc demeure en Suisse.
10. Les soldats gagnent vingt francs par semaine.

1. War will be more agreeable to the soldiers than peace.
2. The daughters of General Dubois are young.
3. Little Charles is ill.
4. We love the beauty of Switzerland.
5. Princess Louise is the daughter of Queen Victoria.
6. Bordeaux wine costs two francs a bottle.
7. The boy has given a flower to the lady.
8. Peasants like wine and oil.
9. The cities of Europe are magnificent.
10. Virtue is more useful than beauty.

Exercise 2. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 30-33.)

Note 2.—The student should notice the negative and interrogative forms of the verb.

j'ai, *I have.*
ai-je ? *have I?*
je n'ai pas, *I have not.*
n'ai-je pas ? *have I not?*

il a, *he has.*
a-t-il ? *has he?*
il n'a pas, *he has not.*
n'a-t-il pas ? *has he not?*

vous avez, *you have.*
avez-vous ? *have you?*
vous n'avez pas, *you have not.*
n'avez-vous pas ? *have you not?*
etc. etc.

1. Nous avons du fromage.
2. Le capitaine Ollet a de riches amis.
3. Je n'ai pas de monnaie.
4. J'ai donné deux bouteilles de vin à la pauvre femme.
5. Le garçon a des fleurs et des livres.
6. Avez-vous du vin ? Oui, mais je n'ai pas de bon vin.
7. J'ai donné beaucoup d'argent aux pauvres paysans.
8. Le petit Charles a trouvé des fleurs.
9. La princesse a beaucoup d'enfants, mais elle n'a pas de filles.
10. Les pauvres n'ont pas d'amis.

1. Have you any meat ? Yes, and I have also some wine.
2. The boy has many books, but he has no good books.
3. We have not any gardens in the towns.
4. I have found some money.
5. Have you any friends in the town ?
6. I have given some good cheese and some oil to the peasant's son.
7. Have you any change ? I have no money.
8. I will give poor Louise a basket of flowers.
9. France has many brave soldiers.

Exercise 3. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 66-74.)

Note 3.—*Only* is translated by placing **ne** before and **que** after a verb.

Je n'ai que deux fils. *I have only two sons.*

Note 4.—*There is, there are*, should be translated by **il y a**.

Il y a un pommier dans le jardin.
There is an apple-tree in the garden.
Il y a des fleurs.
There are flowers.
Y a-t-il des fleurs?
Are there any flowers?

1. Nous avons des noix et du vin.
2. J'ai acheté des journaux.
3. Je donnerai des joujoux aux fils du général Hachette.
4. Les jeunes gens aiment les bals et les carnavals.
5. Un franc vaut (*is worth*) vingt sous.
6. Avez-vous des chevaux? Oui, et j'ai aussi de bons chiens.
7. La princesse a de magnifiques châteaux.
8. Beaucoup de bijoux ne sont que des cailloux.
9. Il y a beaucoup de choux dans les jardins.
10. La reine a vingt éventails.

1. There are stained-glass windows in the churches.
2. The sons of the peasants have not many presents.
3. Louise has two fans.
4. There are many owls in the castles.
5. The knives only cost tenpence (*say* twenty halfpence).
6. There are many evils in life.
7. The women love the voices of the children.
8. The horses of the generals are good.
9. Do you like pictures?
10. The queen has given some magnificent jewels to the princess.
11. The newspapers only cost a penny (*say* two halfpence).

Exercise 4. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 75-78.)

1. Dans le château il y a des vitraux et des œils-de-bœuf.
2. Les ancêtres de la princesse n'étaient que des paysans.
3. Nous admirons la beauté des yeux des enfants.
4. Les mouchettes coûtent vingt sous.

5. Le fils de Charles a trouvé les ciseaux de Louise.
6. La lunette (d'approche) est très utile.
7. Les garçons n'aiment pas les mathématiques.
8. Les travaux des paysans ne sont pas toujours agréables.
9. Il y a ici du poivre, du sel et de la moutarde.

1. The ancestors (*use* aïeul) of Queen Victoria have been very celebrated.
2. General Dupuy wears spectacles.
3. There are many gardens in the suburbs of the town.
4. We have passed our holidays at Paris.
5. A child has two grandfathers.
6. The man has found the chisel and the nails.
7. Louise's eyes are magnificent.
8. Ladies love jewellery.
9. The princess was wearing corals and cat's eyes.

Exercise 5. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 79-86.)

Note 5.—The English past tense, *I loved*, is generally translated by the French compound tense **j'ai aimé.**

J'ai été chez les Dupont.
I was at the Duponts'.

1. J'ai trouvé un ami chez les Morin.
2. Les deux Pline étaient très célèbres.
3. Aimez-vous les opéras de Wagner ?
4. Nous admirons le génie des Shakespeare et des Milton.
5. Mozart a composé des requiem.
6. Les Guises possédaient beaucoup de pouvoir.
7. Les Cornillier sont marchands de vin.
8. Les pianos de Bechstein sont très bons.
9. Il y a des Caxtons dans le musée.

1. Do you like Beethoven's Andantes ?
2. The Rothschilds are very rich.
3. The Stuarts were kings of England.
4. Germany has had Homers and Platos.
5. There are many tramways in Paris.
6. Were you at the Ohnets' ?
7. The Darwins, father and son, possessed much genius.
8. Vergils will always be rarer than Cæsars.
9. I admire the two Coquelins.

EXERCISE 6. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 87-98.)

NOTE 6.—The article is omitted in French before names of occupations and professions, used predicatively.

Louis est médecin, Paul est soldat.
Lewis is a doctor, Paul is a soldier.

1. La comtesse B. est toujours l'amie des pauvres.
2. La sœur du docteur Dupuy est institutrice chez la baronne X.
3. Les pêcheurs et les pêcheuses ont une vie pénible.
4. Les filles de la baronne X. sont les élèves de Mademoiselle Dupuy.
5. Les Grecs adoraient beaucoup de dieux et de déesses.
6. Il y aura toujours plus d'inventeurs que d'inventrices.
7. Dans le musée du Louvre à Paris il y a une statue de Diane chasseresse.
8. Madame Sara Bernhardt est très célèbre comme actrice.

1. The Marquis de Grammont is the brother of the Marchioness de Goncourt.
2. The cat has two young ones (*petit*).
3. The brother is an actor, the sister is a dancer.
4. Princess G. is the benefactress of the poor.
5. I have two male cousins and three female cousins.
6. Children love stories of ogresses and enchantresses.
7. Madame Adelina Patti is very celebrated as a singer.
8. The peasant women work in the fields.
9. In the menagerie there is a she-bear, a lioness and a tigress.

EXERCISE 7. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 99-100.)

1. La vieille est l'épouse du vieillard.
2. La coche a dix petits.
3. La cane a des canetons et des canettes.
4. Les yeux des Juives sont magnifiques.
5. Le loup est plus grand que la louve.
6. La pauvre veuve n'a pas d'argent.
7. Le czar est l'époux de la czarine.
8. Les chameaux et les mulets sont très utiles aux voyageurs.
9. Les filles du capitaine Monet sont jumelles.

1. The Empress Eugénie is the friend of Queen Victoria.
2. I have four sons and three daughters.
3. The queen will give money to the widows of the soldiers.

4. How many nephews have you? I have only one nephew, but I have three nieces.
5. In the forests of Scotland there are roebucks and roes.
6. The sailor has given Mary a male and a female parrot.
7. The buck is always fiercer than the doe.
8. The turkey-hen has ten eggs.
9. A negress is always a good nurse.
10. The old woman is younger than the old man.

Exercise 8. (*T. F. A.*, § 101.)

1. J'ai deux juments et trois chevaux.
2. Le gendre de Madame Daudet est peintre.
3. La tante de Marie est veuve.
4. Le taureau, le bœuf et la vache sont très utiles aux hommes.
5. La dinde et la poule ont des œufs.
6. Le mari n'est pas souvent plus jeune que la femme.
7. Il y a encore des sangliers et des laies dans les forêts de l'Europe.
8. La marraine de Marie est plus riche que le parrain de Henri.
9. Les garçons cherchent des lièvres.
10. Les chèvres donnent du lait.

1. Cows give milk to the peasants.
2. Bulls are very useful for labour.
3. In the menagerie there is one male monkey and three females.
4. The godfather and godmother have given presents to the baby.
5. The gander is larger and stronger than the goose.
6. The cock is handsomer than the hen.
7. William's uncle is a widower.
8. The daughter-in-law of Captain Ohnet is the daughter of the Countess P.
9. The sheep is very timid.
10. The ram is larger and fiercer.
11. I like boys better than girls.

Exercise 9. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 103-119.)

Note 7.—Adverbs are usually placed immediately after the verb in simple tenses, and between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses.

1. J'ai commandé une demi-bouteille de vin.
2. La petite fille est très heureuse, elle a une jolie poupée.
3. La vie est une cruelle énigme pour les pauvres.
4. La maison est très petite, mais elle est toujours très propre.
5. La ville de Londres est très ancienne.
6. Une femme jalouse n'est pas heureuse.
7. La question est un peu indiscrète.
8. La nouvelle année a bien commencé.
9. Marie est très gentille, elle est très bien élevée.
10. La figure de Madame Daudet est très douce.

1. Henry's grandmother likes children.
2. General Dupuy has a beautiful daughter.
3. The late queen was very devout.
4. Dr. Monet's mother is very old.
5. Have you William's last letter?
6. The walk will be too long for a little girl.
7. Life is very sweet for the rich.
8. Eliza is Charles' twin sister.
9. The smell of the flowers is very fresh.
10. I have still half a cup of coffee.
11. She is bare-headed and bare-footed.

Exercise 10. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 120-125.)

1. Les sœurs de Guillaume sont jumelles.
2. Les jeunes filles aiment les longues promenades.
3. Tous les hommes sont égaux devant Dieu.
4. Les vieilles femmes sont très lasses.
5. Les pauvres sont quelquefois plus heureux que les riches.
6. Les plaines de l'Australie sont très arides.
7. Les voix des enfants sont très douces.
8. De pareilles idées sont très sottes.
9. Les vieux amis sont les plus fidèles.

1. The roses are very fresh and very beautiful.
2. I bought some plump fowls in the market.
3. Royal personages are not always happy.
4. There are two old lionesses in the menagerie.
5. There are many public gardens in the town.

6. The griefs of life are very bitter.
7. Girls are not so active as boys.
8. Dr. Dupuy's sisters are very false and very jealous.
9. Grandmothers spoil children.
10. Mary's hair is very thick.

Exercise 11. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 126-134.)

1. Je parle toutes les langues européennes excepté la langue turque.
2. Nous avons visité la résidence officielle du président de la république française.
3. Je porterai une robe noire et des gants paille.
4. Nous n'aimons pas les enfants gâtés.
5. Nous admirons les corps souples des bêtes sauvages.
6. Le capitaine Monet est un jeune homme grand et beau.
7. Aimez-vous les fleurs exotiques ?
8. Il y a en France les meilleurs exemples de l'architecture gothique.
9. Un grand nombre d'étudiants français demeurent dans le quartier latin de Paris sur la rive gauche de la Seine.
10. La lumière électrique est meilleure que le gaz.

1. All countries have national games.
2. The young ladies were wearing white dresses and orange ribbons.
3. The father of Mr. C. married a Spanish lady.
4. The Greek language is extremely beautiful.
5. The lion is a ferocious beast.
6. The boys have several carrier pigeons.
7. There are no more slaves in Christian countries.
8. The old man has a face full of intelligence and goodness.
9. Old people often regret lost illusions.
10. She has two young and beautiful sisters.
11. Mary is John's favourite cousin.

Exercise 12. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 135-138.)

1. Il avait un mauvais air, mais il n'était pas un homme malhonnête.
2. Monsieur A. a de fausses dents.
3. Avez-vous du linge propre et une nouvelle robe ?
4. Le docteur Dupuy est un grand homme maigre.
5. Monsieur Ohnet, ancien sous-préfet de la ville demeure ici.
6. Je cherche ma chère petite chatte.

7. Voici une femme forte : elle étudie la médecine.
8. Un grand homme n'est pas toujours un homme grand.
9. La dame a une voix commune.
10. Voici un homme pauvre ; il est presque mort de faim.
11. J'étais à Paris l'année dernière.

1. Here is a clean shirt and a new coat.
2. Theft and murder are mortal sins.
3. An amusing story is often a true story.
4. I am studying ancient history and the Greek and Latin authors.
5. The last year of the war was very disastrous.
6. He is not the only child, but he is the only son.
7. The self-styled general was only a common soldier.
8. We like the pure blue sky of the South.
9. Here is bread and water. It is a scanty meal.
10. The same king sought a new pleasure because he was tired of life.
11. The soldiers praise the general with one accord.

Exercise 13. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 139-145.)

1. L'argent est moins utile que le fer.
2. L'argent n'est pas aussi (*or* si) utile que le fer.
3. Le chien n'est pas aussi (*or* si) fort que le cheval.
4. Le chat est plus joli que le chien.
5. Rien n'est meilleur qu'une bonne réputation.
6. La vie la plus heureuse est la vie la plus utile.
7. La poule a plus de douze œufs.
8. La sœur aînée est plus aimable que la cadette.
9. Le pire des hommes n'est pas tout à fait mauvais.
10. Les moindres choses sont quelquefois les plus importantes.
11. Les pauvres travaillent plus que les riches.
12. Les animaux les moins beaux sont souvent les plus utiles.

1. The prettiest women are not always the most amiable.
2. The best friends are not the most flattering.
3. A sincere friend is better than a flattering friend.
4. The boy is more active than the girl.
5. The town is less agreeable than the country.
6. The moon is not so large as the sun.
7. A man eats more than a woman.
8. Generally there is not more than one lion in a menagerie.
9. Selfishness and pride are the worst advisers for a young man.
10. Dr. Ohnet is the most learned doctor in (*de*) the town.

Exercise 14. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 146-152.)

1. Il y a trois cent soixante-cinq jours dans une année.
2. Il y a neuf cents soldats dans la ville.
3. Il y a quatre-vingts élèves à l'école.
4. Il y a quinze mille livres dans la bibliothèque de la ville.
5. J'ai visité plus de cent villes.
6. Le meilleur vin coûte trente sous la demi-bouteille.
7. J'ai passé onze mois à Paris.
8. Il a seize cousins et quatorze cousines.
9. Il y a sept jours dans une semaine.
10. Il y a soixante et une maisons dans la rue.
11. Le prince a deux cents chevaux et mille chiens.
12. Les chasseurs ont tué quatre-vingt-quinze perdrix.

1. There were two hundred and thirty-one persons in the train.
2. The general has ordered two thousand guns.
3. There are more than one thousand two hundred books in the doctor's library.
4. There are seventy-three sailors in the ship.
5. I have twenty-three nephews and nieces.
6. We were thirteen at table.
7. There are fifty-two weeks in a year.
8. There were ninety men and eighty ladies at the ball.
9. The merchant has sixty-one pears and ninety-five apples.
10. There are fifty thousand nine hundred and seventy-five inhabitants in the town.

Exercise 15. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 153-159.)

1. Jacques six, roi d'Écosse, fut aussi Jacques premier d'Angleterre.
2. Trouvez chapitre cinq, page cent cinquante.
3. Le pape Sixte-Quint était très savant.
4. Marie est la troisième de la classe, Joséphine est la quinzième, Louise est la vingt et unième et Caroline est la vingt-troisième.
5. Vous allez chez les Dupont le mercredi.
6. Il mourut le premier février, mil huit cent quatre-vingt-deux.
7. Il y a une statue du roi Henri quatre sur le Pont-Neuf à Paris.

8. Elle arrivera lundi.
9. La duchesse mourut le treize août, mil huit cent soixante-quinze.
10. Décembre est le douzième mois de l'année.

1. Charles the First, King of England, was killed by his subjects, 1649.
2. Study the twenty-first chapter, page two hundred and seventy-seven.
3. Philip the Second, King of Spain, was the son of the Emperor Charles the Fifth.
4. On Tuesdays I study ancient history, on Thursdays French grammar, and on Fridays mathematics.
5. The duke died on July 18th, 1700.
6. January is the first month of the year, February is the second, and June is the sixth.
7. We shall have a holiday on November 11th.
8. They live in St. James' Street, number twenty-three.
9. Saturday is the seventh day of the week.
10. We go to church on Sundays.

EXERCISE 16. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 160-166.)

1. J'ai été en France deux fois ; la première fois j'ai passé une quinzaine de jours à Paris.
2. Le train arrivera à minuit vingt-cinq.
3. Le général a cinquante ans.
4. J'ai acheté une douzaine de pommes.
5. J'ai une leçon trois fois par semaine.
6. Vingt-quatre est le quadruple de six et le triple de huit.
7. Il n'y avait qu'une trentaine de personnes à l'église.
8. Nous avons un rendez-vous à dix heures moins un quart.
9. Le bébé n'a que six mois.
10. J'ai mangé une dizaine d'huîtres.

1. I have an engagement at half-past two.
2. The king is seventy-two years of age.
3. The fowl has more than a dozen eggs.
4. Peasants are a thousand times happier than soldiers.
5. Seventy-five is five times fifteen.
6. The clock strikes the hours and the halves.
7. I have bought three-quarters of a pound of cherries
8. There were about fifty ladies at the concert.
9. He has a lesson at five minutes to twelve a.m.
10. I have been here more than a quarter of an hour.

Exercise 17. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 167-175.)

Note 8.—The English verb *to belong to* may be translated by the French **être à**.

Ces fleurs sont à ma mère.
These flowers belong to my mother.

1. Mon père et ma mère sont anglais.
2. Mes amis les plus intimes arriveront à midi.
3. Les pères aiment leurs enfants.
4. Où sont vos gants et votre habit ?
5. Cette plume est très bonne, mais cette encre est mauvaise.
6. Ces fleurs sont à ma petite sœur.
7. Louis a donné de jolis cadeaux à ses amis.
8. Ces livres-ci sont à Guillaume et ces plumes-là sont à Pierre.
9. J'ai acheté ces fleurs, cette poupée et ce livre pour mes enfants.
10. Une de mes cousines a épousé votre oncle.
11. Cet œuf n'est pas frais.

1. Where are their pens ? They are on the table.
2. The peasant loves his garden and his sheep.
3. I have ordered one of these beautiful books for my pupils.
4. One of my best friends died on February 15th, 1894.
5. Love your parents, my children.
6. Thy friend will arrive this evening at five minutes past nine.
7. This money belongs to my brother and sister.
8. These children love their mother.
9. We go to our grandmother's on Sundays.
10. This child has fine black eyes.

Exercise 18. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 176-181.)

Note 9. Instead of **ne pas**, **ne** only is employed with **nul** and **aucun**, or with **ni** repeated.

Nul homme n'est parfait.
No man is perfect.

1. Nul homme n'est prophète dans son propre pays.
2. Quelles sont vos idées sur ce sujet ?
3. Dans quel magasin avez-vous acheté ces gants ?
4. Je ne trouve pas une excuse quelconque pour votre mauvaise conduite.

5. Ma sœur aînée demeure avec moi ; les deux autres sont en Angleterre.
6. Quel dommage ! Cette dame ne parle pas français.
7. Je n'ai trouvé aucune trace de mes amis.
8. Ce jeune homme n'a pas d'autres amis dans cette ville.
9. Certains auteurs ont pensé que la lune est habitée.
10. Les uns chantaient, les autres dansaient.

1. What a pretty little boy ! How old is he ?
2. Do you prefer straw-coloured gloves or white gloves ? I like neither.
3. No king has been more loved than Henry the Fourth.
4. What languages do you speak ? I speak only French.
5. We have no wine whatever.
6. Of what country are you ? I am English.
7. Do you prefer roses or violets ? I like both.
8. Certain French poets have employed this word.
9. There are nowhere more learned men than in France.
10. No friend is more sincere than our parents.

Exercise 19. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 182-187.)

1. Chaque soir ce vieillard raconte ses aventures à ses enfants.
2. Nous travaillons nous-mêmes tous les jours.
3. Quelles que soient vos excuses, votre conduite n'est pas bonne.
4. J'aime le gibier mieux que toute autre viande.
5. Toutes les sociétés scientifiques ont leurs bibliothèques.
6. Dans la ménagerie il y a beaucoup de bêtes sauvages, telles que le lion, la lionne, le tigre, la tigresse, l'ours et l'ourse.
7. Les guerres civiles sont plus terribles que toutes les autres.
8. Tout le monde est chez les Dupont le lundi.
9. Quelques arbres conservent leurs feuilles pendant l'hiver.
10. Les mêmes personnes n'aiment pas toujours les mêmes choses.
11. Tels sont les hommes ; ils aiment tous le plaisir mieux que le travail.

1. Every man has the defects of his qualities.
2. We do not always like the same friends.
3. All animals love their young.
4. Some persons have never seen the sea.
5. Have you bought all these flowers to-day ?
6. Every day all the children play in this little garden.

7. Virtuous people have never praised such conduct.
8. Some towns are larger than Athens, but none is more beautiful.
9. My brother speaks about twenty languages.
10. All men love pleasure more than work.
11. However poor he may be, he is always happy.
12. Such is the life of men—much work, little pleasure.

Exercise 20. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 188-204.)

1. J'ai acheté deux casse-noisettes.
2. N'écoutez pas les ouï-dire.
3. Je n'ai pas de timbres-poste.
4. Mesdames, regardez ces garde-robes.
5. Mes enfants aiment les vers-à-soie.
6. Mes deux petites-filles demeurent en Suisse.
7. Les romans de cet auteur sont des chefs-d'œuvre.
8. J'aime les longues après-midi d'été.
9. Ce monsieur raconte toujours des coq-à-l'âne.
10. Les sous-officiers gagnent plus que les simples soldats.
11. Il y a deux oiseaux-mouches dans le musée.

1. Cauliflowers cost threepence (*say* six halfpence) each.
2. There are more than two hundred gendarmes in the town.
3. I have two brothers-in-law and three sisters-in-law.
4. My two grandmothers live in Paris.
5. Gentlemen, what are your names?
6. There were many demi-gods in the Greek mythology.
7. There will be a fête at Mid-Lent.
8. There are sometimes two rainbows at once.
9. I have had several private conversations with that gentleman.
10. Put some towels in my room.

Exercise 21. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 205-209.)

1. Garçon, donnez-moi du potage aux marrons, des perdrix aux pommes de terre, une crême à la vanille, et une bouteille de vin blanc.
2. Mes sœurs ont acheté des robes de laine et des bas de soie.
3. Voici des cadeaux pour vos enfants, deux montres d'argent et deux chaînes d'or.

4. Donnez-moi deux paires de gants de soie.
5. Il n'y a pas beaucoup de chemins de fer dans l'Amérique du Sud.
6. Pendant l'été il y a toujours beaucoup de monde aux bains de mer.
7. Il y a eu un grand incendie ce matin à l'hôtel de ville ; malheureusement il n'y avait pas d'eau pour les pompes à incendie.
8. Il y a des courses de taureaux tous les dimanches à Madrid.
9. Arles est une petite ville aux rues étroites et sales.
10. Regardez cet homme à la barbe brune et aux yeux noirs.

1. The flower market is near the railway-station.
2. I have ordered a cup of tea, but the waiter has brought a tea-cup.
3. There are no wine-glasses on the table.
4. Give these potatoes to the cook.
5. Give me two cups of coffee with milk.
6. The steam-boats arrive on Tuesdays and Fridays.
7. There are some magnificent town-halls in the Flemish towns.
8. In this hotel there are four dining-rooms and fifty bedrooms.
9. Do you like omelettes with sugar ?
10. I have ordered two mutton cutlets with mushrooms.
11. I admire that little girl with blue eyes.

Exercise 22. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 210-213.)

1. Cette femme n'a jamais eu qu'un seul enfant, une fille aveugle-née.
2. Je n'aime pas ces cerises aigres-douces.
3. La nouvelle mariée est une jolie blonde de vingt ans.
4. Les enfants nouveau-nés ne sont intéressants que pour leurs mères.
5. Quelques personnes aiment toujours les derniers-venus.
6. Voici des roses fraîches-cueillies.
7. Dans ce jardin il y a des pommes de terre et des choux-fleurs clairsemés.
8. Regardez ce jeune homme aux yeux bleu foncé et aux cheveux châtain clair.
9. Cette pauvre femme est demi-morte de faim.
10. Les étudiants portent des rubans mi-partis de noir et de jaune.

1. The newly-married couple were at church this morning.
2. The poor woman has a new-born daughter and her husband is dead.
3. The new-comers are English.
4. Give this freshly-plucked rose to your sister.
5. There is not much vegetation in this country, only some thinly-sown trees.
6. How much (*Que de*) drunkenness there is in this town! I have already seen three men dead-drunk.
7. She has beautiful bright brown hair.
8. My sisters are only little girls in short frocks.
9. I shall wear a straw hat with pale pink ribbons.
10. First-born children are often spoiled.
11. The new-comer was a Spanish lady with a brown complexion and black eyes.

Exercise 23. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 215-231.)

Note 10.—*Must* is translated by the impersonal verb **il faut** followed by the subjunctive, if the statement is made about some special person.

Il faut que je parle.
I must speak.
Il faut que vous parliez.
You must speak.

If the statement is general the infinitive must be used.

Il faut parler.
It is necessary to speak.

Note 11.—The past participle, conjugated with **avoir**, agrees with its direct object in gender and number, **when the direct object precedes the participle.**

Voici une jolie montre ; je l'ai achetée hier.
Here is a pretty watch ; I bought it yesterday.

1. Où est votre frère ? Je ne l'ai pas vu.
2. Écoutez-moi : je vous ai donné l'argent et vous l'avez perdu.
3. Vous avez ma plume ; donnez-la-moi, et ne la lui donnez pas.
4. Avez-vous donné ces fleurs aux enfants ? Non, je les leur donnerai cette après-midi.
5. J'ai de beaux livres chez moi ; je vous en donnerai.

6. Donnez m'en aussi, je n'ai pas de livres.
7. Voici un joli canif. Gardez-le et ne me le donnez pas.
8. J'admire ces tableaux ; où les avez-vous achetés ?
9. Ma sœur a acheté des gâteaux pour votre petit frère ; elle les lui donnera demain.
10. Avez-vous mes gants de soie ? Oui, votre sœur me les a donnés.
11. Goûtez ces cerises ; je les ai apportées pour vous.
12. Il ne faut pas toujours parler de soi.
13. Il faut que je leur donne de l'argent.

1. Here is a big mouse ; do not kill it.
2. It is necessary to love one's friends as much as oneself.
3. I have received a letter from your brother. I must show it to you.
4. Have you looked for my shoes ? Yes, and I have found them.
5. There is some red wine and some white wine ; taste them.
6. You have a gun ; lend it me.
7. You have bought some toys for these children, but you have not given them to them.
8. This poor man has no money ; lend him some (*en*).
9. What a beautiful dog ! Yes, my uncle has given him to me.
10. You have no wine, gentlemen ; I must give you some (*en*). Do not give me any (*en* I do not like it.

Exercise 24. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 232-246.)

Note 12.—The second person singular is used in French when persons are on terms of affectionate familiarity, such as parents and children, brothers and sisters, and very intimate friends.

Donne-moi des fleurs, chère maman, je te prie.
Give me some flowers, dear mamma, I beg you.

1. Êtes-vous les enfants de feu Madame Dupuy ? Nous les sommes.
2. Les rois n'ont pas d'amis, mais les pauvres en ont souvent de très fidèles.
3. Henri et moi sommes amis.
4. Combien de livres y a-t-il dans la bibliothèque ? Il y en a quinze mille.
5. Personne n'est plus malheureux que moi ; j'ai besoin d'argent et je n'en ai pas.

6. L'oncle de ces jeunes gens est plus riche que moi, mais moi je suis plus riche qu'eux.

7. C'est toi, mon cher ami ! entre, nous parlions de toi.

8. Mon père n'aime pas le théâtre, mais moi je l'adore.

9. Êtes-vous fatiguées, mesdames ? Nous le sommes.

10. Je suis le premier de ma classe ; mon père en est très content.

11. J'étais à Paris avec lui, mais je n'y ai passé que quelques jours.

1. My sister was educated at the convent, and there she spent the happiest days of her life.

2. She often speaks to me of it, and she always thinks of it.

3. You are sad, my daughter. Yes, my father, I am.

4. Are you these children's governess, miss ? Yes, sir, I am.

5. How many dining-rooms are there in the queen's palace ? There are five.

6. These ladies are looking for you ; are you going with them to the theatre ?

7. War has had its heroes, but peace has had still more.

8. Think of me sometimes, my friends.

9. Everybody admires this picture, but, as for me, I do not admire it at all.

10. Your brother is older than I, but I am taller than he.

Exercise 25. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 247-250.)

1. Mon père est plus âgé que le vôtre.

2. Cette montre est la mienne ; ne la lui donnez pas.

3. Donnez ces fleurs aux enfants, ce sont les leurs.

4. Ma mère n'est pas aussi (*or* si) belle que la leur.

5. Ce canif-ci est à vous, mais cette plume-là est à moi.

6. Je pense à vos frères plus souvent qu'aux miens.

7. Je n'ai pas reçu une lettre de votre tante, mais j'en ai reçu une de la mienne.

8. Ce chien n'est pas le leur, c'est le vôtre.

9. Mes gants sont plus jolis que les siens.

10. Ma robe est de soie, mais la sienne est de laine.

1. I have not received any news of my sisters : have you received any of yours ? des vôtres

2. This poor woman is very fond of children, but she has lost hers.

3. You never think of your friends, but your brothers often think of theirs.

4. These gloves are mine, this hat is yours, and these shoes are theirs.
5. I have no ink; lend me some of thine.
6. I have no bread; give me some of yours.
7. Your eyes are very like his.
8. My sister is younger than theirs, but she is not so pretty.
9. Your wine is better than his; give him some.
10. Your penknife is better than theirs; do not give it to them.

Exercise 26. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 251-255.)

Note 13.—*In order to, to*, is translated by the preposition **pour** followed by the infinitive.

Je suis venu à Paris pour vous voir.
I have come to Paris in order to see you.

1. Ces fleurs-ci ressemblent beaucoup à celles-là.
2 Ce cheval est beaucoup plus fort que celui de mon père.
3. Celui-ci est mon fils unique; il est un peu plus jeune que le vôtre.
4. C'est une bonne femme; elle travaille beaucoup pour élever ses enfants.
5. Ceci coûte plus que cela.
6. Goûtez ces cerises-ci; elles sont meilleures que celles-là.
7. Nul miel n'était aussi (*or* si) doux que celui du mont Hymette.
8. De ces deux messieurs, celui-ci est le plus instruit.
9. Les murs de l'église sont plus hauts que ceux du château.
10. J'ai acheté des fraises et des framboises; je garderai celles-là, mais je vous donnerai celles-ci.

1. Here are some diamonds and some pearls; do you prefer these or those?
2. This is my cousin; he is here to study natural history.
3. There are no statues so beautiful as those of ancient Greece.
4. The mountains of Switzerland are higher than those of England.
5. There are two doors; the smaller is the servants', the other is the master's.
6. The most important discovery of the Middle Ages (*sing.*) was that of printing.
7. These pictures are finer than those.
8. That is very important; every one is talking of it.
9. I like this, but I don't like that.
10. I have bought this to make a dress.

Exercise 27. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 256-261.)

1. Laquelle de ces deux fleurs préférez-vous? Je pense que celle-ci est plus belle que celle-là.
2. À qui pensez-vous, mon ami?
3. À laquelle de ces dames avez-vous envoyé un bouquet?
4. Que cherchez-vous? Je cherche mes gants. Qui les a vus?
5. À quoi bon parler de cela? Je n'y pense plus.
6. Qui est-ce qui frappe à la porte?
7. Auxquels de vos amis est cette maison?
8. De quoi parlez-vous? Qui est-ce qui le demande? Moi
9. Lequel de ces garçons est votre fils? Celui-là.
10. Avec qui étiez-vous hier au théâtre?
11. Lesquels de ces livres avez-vous acheté pour moi? Ceux-là.

1. What! you have no money! To whom then have you given it?
2. Whom are you looking for? I am looking for a doctor.
3. Of which of my sons are you the friend?
4. Which of the two sisters is the prettier? This one is the prettier, but that one is the more amiable.
5. On account of what are you sad?
6. To which of these little girls have you given the toys? To those.
7. Of whom are you talking? We are talking of Captain Dupuy.
8. What are you working at? I am studying natural history.
9. To which of these gentlemen have you spoken of me?
10. To whom have you given your silk gloves?

Exercise 28. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 262-274.)

1. Vers minuit le feu, qui avait commencé à neuf heures et demie, ne brûlait plus.
2. Il y eut une scène d'horreur et de confusion, au milieu de laquelle je m'échappai.
3. Paris a de très riches bibliothèques dont l'une est la plus importante du monde.
4. Ces édifices ajoutent à leur propre intérêt celui que leur donnent les souvenirs historiques.
5. J'admire ce qui est grand et beau.
6. Donnez ce bouquet à la sœur de votre ami laquelle aime beaucoup les fleurs.

7. Ceux qui ne travaillent pas ne sont jamais heureux.
8. Les dames dont vous parlez sont Anglaises.
9. Au moment où l'incendie commença tout le monde était au théâtre.
10. Personne n'est plus malheureux que celui que sa conscience tourmente.

1. Here is the pen with which he wrote his first book.
2. The house of which I speak is near the church.
3. The man (*say* He) who gave me this book was a friend of your brother.
4. I do not like her of whom you speak.
5. Send these flowers to the little girl's brother who is ill.
6. Here is the poor woman whose son was killed by the soldiers.
7. It is the house where I spent the happiest days of my life, of which I often think.
8. Those who have no friends are more unfortunate than those who have no money.
9. The horse, whose strength is so great, is generally very gentle.
10. The man of whom you speak was formerly my best friend.
11. It was one of those summer nights of which the remembrance is extremely vivid.
12. Here is the door by which we enter the church.

Exercise 29. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 275-277.)

1. On n'aime pas souvent ce qu'on a et l'on désire ce qu'on n'a pas.
2. Quiconque ne pense qu'à soi est toujours malheureux.
3. Il ne faut pas prendre l'argent d'autrui.
4. On ne gagne rien sans effort.
5. Qui a été ici ? Personne. Mais il y a eu quelqu'un qui a laissé ces fleurs sur la table.
6. Ce tableau est magnifique ; je n'ai rien vu de plus beau.
7. Quelques uns de vos amis m'ont parlé de vous.
8. J'ai ici de très jolies fleurs ; j'en donnerai deux à chacune de ces petites filles.
9. Je vous donnerai quelque chose de très beau que vous admirerez beaucoup.
10. L'un de ces enfants aura un cadeau.
11. Les œufs frais coûtent quatre sous chacun.
12. Les mères ne négligent rien pour faire plaisir à leurs enfants.

1. Each of these soldiers has killed enemies ; this man killed fourteen.
2. Whoever does not work gains nothing.
3. One of these watches is not going.
4. What have you bought ? Nothing.
5. I like some of these silk dresses.
6. Whoever visits this town passes some days there.
7. One must think of others as well as of oneself.
8. There is something magnificent in these Gothic churches.
9. Nobody thinks always of others.
10. People are talking a great deal of the courage of the young man of whom you are speaking.

Exercise 30. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 278-295.)

Note 14.—The future is not used after **si**, except in the sense of *whether*.

S'il vient je m'en irai.
If he comes I shall go away.
Je ne sais pas s'il viendra.
I do not know whether he will come.

1. Si j'avais de l'argent je voyagerais beaucoup.
2. La cuisinière pelait les pommes de terre.
3. J'exige que vous ne lui parliez plus.
4. Les circonstances semblaient très favorables, et il décida de commencer tout de suite.
5. Pourquoi regardez-vous ce jeune homme ?
6. Un violent orage éclata, et le vent du nord souffla avec fureur.
7. Le roi commanda qu'on préparât une nouvelle flotte.
8. Si vous aviez parlé ainsi hier nous aurions éprouvé la plus grande joie.
9. Il n'aura pas achevé son dîner avant huit heures.
10. Tout le monde avait versé des larmes en écoutant ces paroles.

1. Some of our steam-boats would have seemed like little towns to our ancestors.
2. At Paris we used to breakfast at midday, and we used to dine at six o'clock in the (*du*) evening.
3. Yesterday they breakfasted at midday and dined at seven o'clock in the evening.
4. You would never have thought of (*à*) that without his evil counsels.

5. Swear by your swords, soldiers, and be faithful to what you have sworn.

6. If he showed me the letter I would give him everything he asked.

7. He used to recount his adventures to the children, who listened to him with a lively interest.

8. We have visited all the towns of England.

9. You would have finished this task if you had worked better.

10. The soldiers wept at (*en*) leaving their wives and children.

11. I shall leave Paris when I have spent all my money.

Exercise 31. (*T. F. A.*, § 296.)

1. Je finissais mon travail quand il entra.

2. Les soldats brisent les portes, franchissent les remparts et tuent les habitants de la ville.

3. La pauvre femme remplissait la ville de ses cris.

4. Tous les pays européens lui fournirent leurs vaisseaux et leurs meilleurs marins.

5. Nous choisîmes le plus petit des livres, mais votre frère choisit le plus grand.

6. La poésie provençale fleurit pendant trois siècles.

7. J'espère que vous réussirez.

8. Ces eaux minérales ont guéri un grand nombre de malades.

9. Dans ce pays il y a beaucoup de métaux et de minéraux qui enrichiront ceux qui les exploiteront.

10. En gravissant la montagne nous avions de temps en temps des coups-d'œil magnifiques.

1. These cherries will refresh you ; taste some.

2. The kings of Persia embellished the large cities with magnificent buildings.

3. Even wild beasts nourish their young.

4. The poor woman groaned and wept, but no one spoke to her, and she spoke to no one.

5. You have turned pale ; are you ill ?

6. All Europe was ringing with (*de*) the noise of this discovery.

7. If the king furnishes money we will furnish men.

8. Fill this basket with (*de*) bread, butter, and meat, and give it to the poor widow.

9. Let them choose which of these books they like.

10. Your counsels filled me with (*de*) courage and hope.

11. Idleness and indulgence weaken many young men (*gens*).

Exercise 32. (*T. F. A.*, § 296.)

1. Cette maladie l'a beaucoup affaibli, mais il espère que son voyage le guérira.
2. Si vous n'obéissiez pas à votre institutrice elle vous punirait.
3. La fin du moyen âge fut marquée par quelques découvertes qui ont élargi tous nos horizons.
4. Si vous aviez réfléchi vous n'auriez pas agi ainsi.
5. Alexandre le Grand, roi de Macédoine, bâtit la ville d' Alexandrie.
6. Napoléon aimait la France et jouissait de sa gloire autant que de la sienne propre.
7. Ceux qui accomplissent beaucoup sont souvent ceux qui parlent peu.
8. Vous aviez mérité la célébrité dont vous jouissiez.
9. Il faut que nous obéissions à nos parents qui nous ont chéris pendant notre enfance.

1. Those who do not reflect do not always act well.
2. What have you chosen? I have not yet chosen, but I shall choose this.
3. I insist that you obey (*subj.*) me without any hesitation.
4. To (*pour*) unite the Greeks and the Persians Alexander married the daughter of King Darius, which (*ce qui*) greatly strengthened his empire.
5. Everywhere he respected the traditions which the nations cherished, and re-established their ancient cults.
6. If these doctors cure the queen the king will enrich and ennoble them.
7. Punish us if we do not obey you.
8. The Greeks banished Aristides on account of his probity.
9. If you had succeeded I should not have congratulated you.
10. What will you have accomplished at sixty?
11. If he were perishing with hunger I would not give him money.

Exercise 33. (*T. F. A.*, § 297.)

1. Les ambitieux sont souvent déçus dans leur attente.
2. Il faut visiter la Suisse pour en concevoir la beauté.
3. Nous reçûmes la semaine dernière une lettre de votre frère.
4. Il ne trahit aucune émotion en nous apercevant.
5. Les jeunes gens conçoivent de belles espérances pour l'avenir.

6. J'exige qu'il vous reçoive avec politesse.

7. Ceux qui perçoivent les taxes ne sont pas ceux qui en profitent.

8. Si vous gravissiez cette colline vous apercevriez les montagnes suisses.

9. En quittant l'église je m'aperçus que ma sœur n'était plus avec moi.

10. Si je l'aperçois je lui parlerai.

1. He receives his friends on Sundays and we receive ours on Mondays.

2. It is Mr. X. who will collect the revenues of this estate.

3. I perceived him, but he did not perceive me.

4. If you had received my letter you would not have acted thus.

5. The king commanded that the soldiers should receive (*subj.*) their pay.

6. We perceived that the man was ill.

7. You have deceived your father and you will deceive me also.

8. Receive my best wishes for the new year.

9. Everybody has conceived a high opinion of his capacity.

10. They will have received your letter at five o'clock.

11. Kings receive the oath of allegiance from their subjects.

Exercise 34. (*T. F. A.*, § 298.)

1. Cet arbre est si chargé de fruits qu'il va se rompre.

2. L'amitié rend l'adversité moins dure.

3. Le renard désirait les raisins qui pendaient de l'arbre.

4. Prétendez-vous avoir aucun droit?

5. Oui, je prétends que mon droit est incontestable.

6. Nous avons descendu la montagne très vite.

7. Vous perdiez votre temps en lui parlant ainsi.

8. Il y a des personnes qui ne rendent jamais ce qu'elles ont emprunté.

9. Le bonheur corrompt souvent ceux que la pauvreté aurait rendus vertueux.

10. Les généraux baisaient respectueusement la main que leur tendait la reine.

11. En descendant l'escalier j'ai aperçu une pauvre petite fille qui pleurait amèrement.

1. I am waiting for you; why are you so late?

2. I spoke because I desired to break this long silence.

3. The poor beggars stretched out their hands to the passers-by to ask them for money.

4. If you had lost my book I should not have returned you yours.
5. The sun melts the snow.
6. The dog has bitten some children.
7. On these mountains the clouds descend very quickly.
8. The reed bends, but it does not break.
9. This merchant does not sell good wine.
10. I have spoken to you twice, but you have not heard.
11. We sell flowers and fruit (*pl.*).

Exercise 35. (*T. F. A.*, § 298.)

1. Si je n'avais pas rencontré votre frère je vous aurais attendu jusqu'à cinq heures.
2. J'exige que vous répondiez.
3. Nous perdîmes tout, argent, amis, enfants, réputation.
4. Ce fut le luxe, la paresse et l'orgueil qui corrompirent le monde ancien.
5. Romps avec ces mauvaises habitudes, mon fils : ne perds plus ta jeunesse avec de tels compagnons.
6. Cet enfant est très maussade ; il ne répond ni à son père, ni à sa mère.
7. Si ces pauvres paysans avaient de l'argent ils ne vendraient pas leur vache.
8. Descendez tout de suite, votre mère vous attend.
9. Il y a un grand trou à votre sac ; vous perdrez vos livres.
10. Nous ne répondîmes rien à ses injures.
11. Avez-vous perdu mon canif ? Vous ne me l'avez pas rendu.

1. At Paris I shall stay with my uncle.
2. The king made no answer to these words, but he stretched out his hand to his son.
3. We shall lose our time ; do not speak to him further.
4. The woodcutter cleft the tree with the blows of his axe.
5. The flowers spread an agreeable odour.
6. I order you to return (*say* that you *subj.*) him the money.
7. The general forbade the soldiers to dismount.
8. Money must be found to-day (*say* It is necessary to find) ; to-morrow he will have sold the horse.
9. Your friends will return you your book if you ask them for it.
10. Melt some butter in a saucepan.
11. The king forbade the traitor to answer (*imperf. subj.*).

Exercise 36. (*T. F. A.*, § 301.)

1. Le corps humain est composé de plus de deux cents os.
2. Le roi Charles premier d'Angleterre fut tué par ses sujets.
3. Si vous aviez travaillé avec plus d'assiduité ce travail aurait été fini.
4. Vous n'avez pas de parapluie. Quel dommage! Nos chapeaux seront gâtés.
5. Notre chère mère était aimée de tout le monde.
6. La poudre à canon fut inventée par un Allemand nommé Schwartz.
7. Vous serez punis, jeunes gens, si vous n'êtes pas discrets.
8. Ils auront été assez punis sans être chassés de la ville.
9. Voici la bague qui fut donnée à ma mère par la reine d'Angleterre.
10. Les enfants ont été effrayés par ces chiens. Chassez-les.

1. Some peasants have been killed by the soldiers.
2. All the windows are shut because I have a cold.
3. You will be too fatigued, my children; do not play any more.
4. My brother was educated at Paris.
5. The king ordered that the spies should be (*subj.*) killed.
6. If this glass had been broken I should have been very sorry.
7. Printing was invented in Germany.
8. These ladies are very well educated; they have been admired everywhere.
9. My work is finished; I am very glad of that (*en*).
10. My dress has been spoiled by the rain.
11. If you are amiable, you will be loved, my children.

Exercise 37. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 302-306.)

1. Ce jeune homme a quitté Paris, où il était né, pour venir à Londres.
2. J'étais très fâché d'être sorti.
3. La reine Victoria a régné pendant plus de soixante ans.
4. Ce jeune poète est devenu très célèbre.
5. Je suis né à Paris, mais ma sœur est née en Angleterre.
6. Nous étions allés visiter le château de Blois.
7. Pourquoi êtes-vous arrivés si tard? Parce que nous n'avons pas marché assez vite.

8. Serez-vous partis demain à huit heures? Oui, nous serons partis.
9. Mesdames, êtes vous tombées?
10. J'ai rencontré hier les frères du docteur Blanc qui sont revenus d'Angleterre.

1. At Paris we went to the theatre every evening (*say* all the evenings).
2. I had fallen ill.
3. I have seen one of your friends who has arrived this morning from Paris.
4. The snow which had been falling during the night ceased at eight o'clock in the morning.
5. Did you remain long in London?
6. We shall have started by four o'clock.
7. Will you be at home to-morrow at noon? No, we shall have gone out.
8. Shall you be sorry to have remained, my sister?
9. He has slept more than ten hours.
10. He died (*est mort*) at Paris.
11. I shall punish these children because they have arrived so late.
12. I have only walked two miles.

Exercise 38. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 307-312.)

Note 15.—In French the passive is far less frequently employed than in English. When no definite agent is expressed or implied two constructions are admissible.

(i) A reflexive verb may be used.

Le lion se trouve en Afrique.
The lion is found in Africa.

(ii) The pronoun **on** may be used.

On trouve le chien partout.
The dog is found everywhere.

1. La pauvre femme s'évanouit.
2. Ils se moquèrent des bons conseils de leurs amis.
3. On trouvera toujours dans ce monde des pauvres et des malheureux.
4. Nous nous arrêtâmes quelques moments.
5. Nous nous coucherons demain à dix heures.

6. Les deux amis se séparèrent au coin de la rue.
7. Vous vous moquez de moi.
8. L'année dernière les livres de cet auteur ne se vendaient pas du tout, mais à présent ils se vendent très bien.
9. Je ne me rappelle pas le nom de ce jeune homme.
10. Il se trouva dans une salle grande et haute.

1. This book sells at twenty francs.
2. My son will marry the daughter of my old friend.
3. These children will never bathe.
4. We rise every day at six o'clock in (*de*) the morning.
5. Dress yourselves and go for a walk.
6. The enemy have taken possession of the town.
7. If I had books I should enjoy myself very well.
8. She turned to her sister.
9. These young people are interested in everything that happens.
10. Awake, my child, and dress yourself.
11. The flowers open and a sweet odour spreads in all directions.
12. The tiger is not found in Africa.

Exercise 39. (*T. F. A.*, § 312.)

1. Si j'avais eu un peu plus d'argent je me serais très bien amusé à Paris.
2. Les tours qui défendaient la ville s'étaient écroulées sous le feu de l'artillerie allemande.
3. Les enfants se seront couchés à dix heures.
4. Vous vous êtes levés de très bonne heure ce matin.
5. Le soleil s'était couché et la lune s'était levée.
6. Les Anglais se sont toujours distingués par l'énergie et par la patience.
7. Nos vacances se sont passées trop vite.
8. Si vous vous étiez couché de bonne heure vous vous seriez mieux porté.
9. Nous nous étions aperçus de son dessein, mais elle ne s'était pas aperçue du nôtre.

1. The unfortunate man killed himself.
2. I awoke with a start.
3. I insist on (*que*) your resting (*subj.*).
4. We enjoyed ourselves very much at the theatre.

5. These ladies have rarely been mistaken.
6. If I had wakened I should have got up.
7. Ladies, if you are sufficiently rested, we will show you the castle.
8. I am sure these children have perceived something.
9. My sisters went for a walk in the woods this morning.
10. If we had had towels we should have bathed in the sea.

Exercise 40. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 313-316.)

1. Allez-vous sortir ? Non, je viens d'entrer.
2. Vous auriez dû vous lever de bonne heure pour achever vos leçons.
3. J'ai dû dépenser beaucoup d'argent, mais je n'en gagne que fort peu.
4. Il venait d'entrer.
5. Nous venons de parler de vous.
6. Je devrais accompagner mes sœurs au théâtre.
7. J'ai faim. Je vais dîner.
8. Je viens de rencontrer votre frère ; il allait acheter un cadeau pour votre mère.
9. Je dois aller chez les Ohnet ce soir.
10. Je devrais y aller aussi, mais je suis trop fatigué.
11. Mon père va acheter des livres pour ma petite sœur, qui ne se porte pas très bien.

1. Six o'clock had just struck when I awoke.
2. What are you going to do ? I am going to take a walk.
3. I ought to have gone to London to-day, but I am not very well.
4. I have had to buy these books which I do not want.
5. I have just arrived.
6. My brother has just finished his lessons ; wait for him.
7. I ought to write some letters.
8. I did not find him ; he had just gone out.
9. My sisters have to go to the concert, and I have to accompany them.
10. Our friends have been obliged to sell their garden.
11. Do not shut the window ; I have just opened it.

Exercise 41. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 317-323.)

Note 16.—Before doing this exercise the student should consult § 509.

1. Il semble qu'il y ait dans le monde bien des malheurs.
2. Il a grêlé ce matin, mais à présent il tombe de la pluie.
3. Il semble que les pauvres soient souvent plus heureux que les riches.
4. Il ne faut pas disputer des goûts.
5. Il fait très chaud aujourd'hui.
6. Il est nécessaire que je vous accompagne chez Madame Dupuy.
7. Quel dommage ! il neige, et je dois sortir.
8. Il y aura une réception ce soir chez Madame Blanc.
9. Il est impossible que ces enfants se soient baignés.
10. Il y avait autrefois des bêtes sauvages en Angleterre, mais à présent il n'y en a plus.
11. Il éclaire, mais il ne tonne pas.
12. Il est possible qu'il y ait des fleurs dans le jardin, mais la pluie en a gâté beaucoup.

1. It often happens that it is foggy in London.
2. It seems that I have been mistaken (*subj.*).
3. To-day it freezes, yesterday it was hailing.
4. It is important that you should rest (*subj.*).
5. It is better that we should separate (*subj.*).
6. It is certain that she has married.
7. It often lightens in (*pendant*) summer.
8. It is a question of my honour.
9. It is fine to-day.
10. There are many fine pictures in the museum of the Louvre at Paris.
11. You are well, as it (*à ce qu'il*) seems.
12. It seems to me that you have grown.

Exercise 42. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 324-330.)

1. Je n'aime pas l'Angleterre, il y fait trop souvent du brouillard.
2. Je n'ai pas acheté de pommes parce qu'elles coûtaient trop cher.
3. Si je n'avais pas étudié le latin j'aurais trouvé le français très difficile.

4. Je ne suis pas entré dans l'église, mais j'ai l'intention d'y retourner.
5. Ma sœur n'est pas sortie, elle ne va pas sortir cette après-midi.
6. Ces dames n'ont pas été beaucoup admirées à Londres.
7. N'écoutez pas ses mauvais conseils.
8. S'il m'avait parlé ainsi je ne lui aurais pas obéi.
9. Il est impossible qu'ils ne soient pas encore arrivés.
10. Il vaut mieux que vous ne soyez pas flatté.
11. Le garçon apprend ses leçons pour n'être pas puni.

1. He is not liked because he easily loses his temper.
2. The ancients, not having the compass, did not dare to make long voyages.
3. Where is your brother? He has not arrived yet.
4. I have left my friends in order not to be too tired this evening.
5. He walked from London to Edinburgh in order not to spend money.
6. It is a long time since I received any news of you.
7. Do not disturb yourself; I have found what I was looking for.
8. You have not gone out yet; I am very glad of that (*en*).
9. This dress is not yet worn out, but I shall not wear it any more.
10. She has not lent me this book, she has given it to me.
11. This little girl has never seen the sea.

Exercise 43. (*T. F. A.*, § 331.)

1. Nous ne nous sommes pas baignés ce matin.
2. Cet homme ne s'occupe pas de ses affaires, mais il se mêle des affaires des autres.
3. Si je ne me porte pas mieux je serai obligé de quitter cette ville.
4. Si je ne me couchais pas de bonne heure je serais toujours malade.
5. Les hommes les plus illustres ne se sont pas développés très vite.
6. Ne vous fatiguez pas trop, mes enfants.
7. La crise ne s'est pas encore déclarée.
8. Mon père ne se sera pas couché à dix heures.

1. There have been many great men whose memory has not been preserved.
2. Do not lose your temper ; there is no occasion.
3. These children have not bathèd to-day.
4. If you did not go to bed so late you would be better.
5. My sisters had not enjoyed themselves in London.
6. I shall remain at home this afternoon in order (*pour*) not to be too tired.
7. He perceived my difficulty, but he did not stop.
8. The moon has not yet risen.
9. The English will not get possession of our country.

EXERCISE 44. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 332-341.)

1. Avez-vous chanté ce soir ? Non, monsieur, je n'ai pas chanté.
2. La fenêtre est-elle fermée ? Henri vient de la fermer.
3. Sommes-nous loués ou blâmés ? Vous n'êtes pas loués.
4. Votre sœur est-elle rentrée ? Elle n'est pas rentrée.
5. Est-ce qu'il neige ? Non, il grêle.
6. Ces fleurs-ci sont-elles à vous ? Elles ne sont pas à moi.
7. Voici mes gants, mais où sont les vôtres ?
8. Est-ce que vous vous portez bien ? Non, madame, je ne me porte pas bien.
9. Vous êtes-vous reposée, madame ? Oui, monsieur.
10. Dois-je aller chez Madame Dupont ?
11. Combien cette dame en a-t-elle acheté ?

1. This lady likes children ; how many has she ? She has none.
2. Is this boy ill ? He is not ill, but he is not very well.
3. At what hour does the steamboat arrive ?
4. Did you enjoy yourselves at the ball ?
5. At what hour did you get up this morning ?
6. Is your brother better ?
7. How much do these books cost ?
8. Have I lent you my penknife ?
9. Have I given you the book you asked me for ?
10. Is this your pen ? No, it is not mine.
11. May I go for a walk ? No, it is too cold.

Exercise 45. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 343-345.)

1. N'avez-vous pas reçu de ses nouvelles? Non, il y a longtemps que je n'en ai pas reçu.
2. La boussole ne fut-elle pas inventée par les Chinois?
3. Ne s'est-il pas aperçu que vous étiez malade?
4. Ne vous étiez-vous pas amusés à Paris?
5. N'ai-je pas été puni pour mes fautes? Ne me pardonnerez-vous jamais?
6. Ne serons-nous pas blâmés si nous punissons ces enfants?
7. Vos sœurs ne s'étaient-elles pas levées très tard ce matin?
8. Votre frère ne se sera-t-il pas blessé?
9. N'êtes-vous pas encore habillée, Marie?
10. Ne vous a-t-il pas donné le journal?
11. N'aurez-vous pas achevé vos leçons à huit heures?

1. If you had money would you not give me some?
2. Had he not repented of his faults? Had he not been punished?
3. Had they not perceived me?
4. Do you not like children? Have you none (*en*)?
5. Will not this little boy hurt himself?
6. Has not this town a fine situation?
7. Was not gunpowder invented by the Germans?
8. If you had not gone to bed so late, would you not be rested to-day?
9. Have you not bathed this morning, my sons?
10. Are not the daughters of Dr. Dubois in Switzerland?
11. Why have not these children been punished?

Exercise 46. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 346-355.)

1. Vous rappelez-vous le nom de ce livre? Je ne me le rappelle pas.
2. À quelle heure vous lèverez-vous demain?
3. Le monde se renouvelle chaque jour.
4. À quelle heure la lune se lèvera-t-elle?
5. Il gelait ce matin, et il gèlera ce soir.
6. J'achèterai ces gants. ci qui ne sont pas étiquetés.
7. Attelez les chevaux. Monsieur, je viens de les atteler.
8. Ces nouvelles le jetteront dans le désespoir.
9. On l'appelle le père de sa patrie.
10. Nos soldats harcèlent l'arrière-garde des ennemis.
11. Je pense que ceci pèse plus que cela.
12. Les paysans sèment des pois dans leurs jardins.

1. It is only in the country that one leads a peaceful and happy life.
2. I will buy these flowers for Henry's sister who is ill.
3. Do you call me? No, I am calling my brother.
4. What is this little boy called? He is called Robert.
5. I insist on your brother finishing (*say* that . . . finish) his lessons before five o'clock.
6. I will unseal this letter to show it to you.
7. They buy their books second-hand.
8. Do not turn over the leaves of this book; it is not mine.
9. If you were diligent you would finish this work to-day.
10. How is this word spelt?
11. If I find your things in my room I will throw them out of the window.

EXERCISE 47. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 356-368.)

1. Votre père me chargea de vous communiquer cette lettre.
2. Il s'efforçait de travailler tous les jours.
3. Le pauvre homme pleura en songeant à ses enfants.
4. Votre père défendit qu'on le dérangeât.
5. Vos sœurs vous envoient ces fleurs.
6. Ces enfants mangeaient trop.
7. Nous les priions de renvoyer nos livres.
8. Nous distribuïons du pain aux pauvres.
9. Le maître exigea que les élèves ne bougeassent pas.
10. Plaçons nos chapeaux ici.
11. Il remarqua un garçon qui nageait très bien.
12. Ce mot ne s'emploie plus.

1. The holidays begin to-morrow; at one time they used to begin later.
2. He judged himself with too much severity.
3. She changed her plans every day.
4. If you did not send me away I should stay.
5. Theories change every twenty years.
6. I sent you back your books yesterday.
7. I insisted on his eating something.
8. This child sometimes stammers: he ought to make an effort to speak very slowly.
9. I advanced you ten francs yesterday to pay this bill.
10. On (*en*) perceiving me she forced herself to smile.
11. We avowed (*imperf.*) to him that a great danger was threatening us.
12. I will not argue, but I shall think of it all the same.

Exercise 48. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 369-376.)

Note 17.—Before doing the following exercises the pupil should read through the rules on the use of the subjunctive mood, §§ 505-511.

1. Où allez-vous? Je vais au théâtre.
2. Permettez-vous que j'aille avec vous?
3. Nous irons ensemble; je n'aime pas à aller seul.
4. Envoyez-moi de vos nouvelles de temps en temps.
5. Mon père exige que je lui renvoie tout l'argent qu'il m'a donné.
6. Mon frère va au cercle, et mes sœurs vont à l'église.
7. J'irai à Paris l'année prochaine.
8. Mes sœurs allaient se promener dans le jardin.
9. Je vous enverrai le journal cette après-midi.
10. Qui vous a envoyé ces belles fleurs? C'est ma mère; elle m'en envoie tous les jours.

1. I insist on his not going to the theatre.
2. We shall go to the station to buy a time-table.
3. Our mother insisted on our going to church every Sunday.
4. He will not send back these books.
5. If I had money I would go to London.
6. I am going to buy a white dress and straw-coloured gloves.
7. Where is your brother going? He is going to the flower market.
8. My sisters send you these flowers with their best wishes.
9. You are going to eat something, are you not (*n'est-ce pas*)?
10. I will send you news of myself from time to time.

Exercise 49. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 450-456.)

1. Ce mendiant ne s'en ira-t-il pas?
2. J'exige qu'il s'en aille tout de suite.
3. Pourquoi ne vous en êtes-vous pas allé?
4. Monsieur, j'ai faim, mais si vous me donniez du pain je m'en irais.
5. Voici du pain, de la viande et de l'argent; mais allez-vous-en.
6. Le mendiant s'en est-il allé? Il s'en est allé.
7. Ces gens ne s'en vont jamais sans recevoir quelque chose.
8. Je ne m'en serais pas allé non plus sans de l'argent.

9. Comment, mes amis ! vous voilà encore ici ! Pourquoi ne vous en êtes-vous pas allés ?

10. Nous ne nous en sommes pas allés parce que le banquier ne nous a pas envoyé d'argent.

1. Go away, my child, I am busy.
2. I am going away, (my) father, but I am looking for my slippers.
3. What ! you are not gone yet ! What are you looking for ?
4. I dare not go away without my slippers, or mamma will scold me.
5. At last he has gone away, and now I must begin again.
6. The child went away and went to bed.
7. Where is my sister ? Has she gone away ?
8. She had not gone away half an hour ago.
9. Has she not gone away ? But, in that case, where is she ?
10. If she had gone away without me I should have been very sorry.

Exercise 50. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 377-383.)

1. Est-ce que l'eau bout ? Il n'y a pas d'eau, elle est toute ébouillie.
2. Dors-tu, mon enfant ? Non, maman, je ne dors pas.
3. Cet enfant ment toujours.
4. À quelle heure le train part-il ?
5. Je me repens de mes fautes.
6. J'exige qu'il parte cette après-midi.
7. Comment avez-vous dormi ?
8. Ne mentez jamais, mes enfants.
9. Vous êtes-vous endormi au théâtre ?
10. Je ne m'étais pas endormi, mais je ne songeais pas à ce qu'on jouait.
11. A quoi cela sert-il ? Cela ne sert à rien.
12. Merci, je n'achète jamais de choses qui ne servent à rien.

1. Work serves to render men stronger.
2. I do not consent to it and I will never consent to it.
3. He repents of his past life.
4. I start to-day for Australia.
5. Must you start to-day ?
6. Dinner is served ; let us go.
7. Those who lie are never loved.
8. This child is charming when he is sleeping.
9. The water must boil.
10. That is no use ; throw it away.
11. I had a foreboding that some danger was threatening him.

Exercise 51. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 384-390.)

1. Qui a découvert cette planète ?
2. Je ne sortirai pas aujourd'hui.
3. Il nous accueillit cordialement, et nous offrit du vin et des fruits.
4. La terre est couverte de neige ; il est impossible de sortir.
5. J'ai failli rencontrer votre beau-père à Paris.
6. Le pauvre enfant tressaille au moindre bruit.
7. Je vous ai offert tout mon argent ; qu'est-ce que vous désirez de plus ?
8. J'aime tous ceux qui souffrent, j'ai tellement souffert moi-même.
9. Les enfants cueillent des pommes dans le verger.
10. J'en cueillerai aussi, et j'en donnerai à la cuisinière.

1. I nearly fell.
2. He has offered me this pretty book.
3. Gather me some flowers. We have already gathered some.
4. Her head was covered with (*de*) a little black hat.
5. You are unwell, (my) mother. Yes, my son, I am very unwell.
6. Allow me to offer you some wine.
7. She was singing softly while (*en*) gathering the flowers she loved so much.
8. Is Mr. Cornillier at home ? No, sir, he has gone out : he goes out every day at two o'clock.
9. On (*en*) perceiving me she started.
10. I am going out again. I am not yet tired.

Exercise 52. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 391-395.)

1. Ne perdez pas ce livre ; j'y tiens beaucoup.
2. Se souvient-il de notre séjour en Suisse ? Il s'en souvient.
3. Toutes les fenêtres sont grandes ouvertes, fermez-les.
4. Après la mort du général les ennemis se sont enfuis.
5. Ils obtinrent de porter le corps du roi dans l'église.
6. Une réponse cruelle me vint sur les lèvres, mais je me contins.
7. Nous parvînmes bientôt au sommet.
8. J'obtiendrai une place pour ce jeune homme qui soutient sa mère et ses trois sœurs.

9. Elle était vêtue d'une jolie robe blanche.
10. Ce garçon deviendra célèbre.
11. Il soutint cette proposition avec beaucoup de zèle.
12. Quand revint-il ? Il n'est pas encore revenu.

1. The door opened, and a young man entered.
2. She always dresses with much taste.
3. This old lady remembers your grandmother.
4. My father is much attached to this house.
5. I hope they will return to-day.
6. What has become of him (*say* What is he become) ?
7. Our ancestors became very rich and very celebrated.
8. To whom do these books belong ?
9. Why are these windows shut ? I have just opened them.
10. When will your brother return ?
11. Do you not remember me ?
12. This cupboard contains all my books ; it belonged to my grandfather.

Exercise 53. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 396-400.)

1. Plusieurs soldats moururent de leurs blessures.
2. Le bruit court que son fils unique est mort.
3. Le seigneur acquit des droits même sur la vie de ses vassaux.
4. Je courrai à la poste pour expédier ces lettres.
5. Charlemagne mourut à Aix-la-Chapelle.
6. Les riches acquièrent peu à peu les terres des pauvres.
7. Je meurs de faim ; donnez-moi à manger.
8. Elle était très émue en m'apercevant.
9. Vous auriez dû recevoir cette lettre il y a quelques jours.
10. Ce prince acquerra de la gloire s'il ne meurt pas trop jeune.
11. Je dois assister aujourd'hui à la première représentation de cette pièce.
12. Tous concoururent au bien général.

1. The rumour ran that the king had been killed.
2. He died at Paris at the age of seventy-five.
3. England was conquered by the Normans.
4. Pay me the money you owe me.
5. Alexander conquered nearly all Asia.
6. We will die with our king.
7. You say that I owe you money.
8. We have traversed the whole town to find a doctor.
9. You should have gone to Dr. Cornillier's ; he is (*c'est*) the best doctor in (*de*) the town.

10. He is acquiring money; he is on the way to become very rich.

11. This poor woman will die of hunger. Give her some bread.

12. Where is he running so quickly? He is running to school.

Exercise 54. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 401-405.)

1. Il est important que vous sachiez la vérité.
2. Nos amis ne peuvent pas arriver ce soir; il faut nous coucher.
3. Cela ne vaudra pas la peine, il faudra bientôt revenir à la gare.
4. On pourrait s'imaginer être en pleine campagne.
5. Ces livres-ci valent plus que ceux-là.
6. Je voudrais lui faire un petit cadeau.
7. Pourrai-je me lever demain? Vous le pourrez si vous le voulez bien.
8. J'aurais tant voulu assister à la première représentation de cette pièce.
9. Qu'est-ce qui m'a valu l'honneur de cette visite?
10. Je ne saurais m'en passer.
11. Il a plu à midi, mais à présent il neige.
12. Veuillez me passer ce livre-là.

1. It is necessary to be at the theatre very early to find a place there.
2. I think it will rain this evening.
3. Do you know your lesson? I do not know it yet.
4. May I go out? No, you cannot go out to-day.
5. Will you lend me some money? With pleasure: how much will be necessary?
6. Good sense will prevail in (*à*) the end over (*de*) these prejudices.
7. I should like to go to Paris, but I do not yet know if I shall be able.
8. Will you accompany me to the ball? I shall not go to it because I cannot (*savoir*) dance.
9. Be kind enough to shut the window.
10. One cannot please everybody.
11. How much is this lace worth a yard?
12. It was necessary to burn the town to prevent the enemy from getting possession of it.

Exercise 55. (*T.F.A.*, §§ 406-413.)

1. La nature a pourvu à la célébrité du Niagara par la magnifique cataracte qui s'y trouve.
2. Ce fleuve est connu sous plusieurs noms dans les diverses parties de son cours.
3. Tout à coup nous vîmes un lion énorme qui nous regardait d'un œil menaçant.
4. Je voudrais revoir ma patrie.
5. Il s'assit sur un banc, près de la porte.
6. Elle paraît très jeune ; quel âge a-t-elle ?
7. Le chien a disparu dans la forêt.
8. Assieds-toi : je veux causer avec toi.
9. Connaissez-vous cette dame ? Je ne la connais pas, mais elle a connu ma sœur.
10. Son père connaissait mon oncle.
11. Elle paraissait souffrante.

1. The flowers disappear and the fruits commence to appear.
2. You must sit down again ; I have not yet finished.
3. We knew this lady in Italy.
4. You will never again see the young man who has just left us.
5. No one could have foreseen this event.
6. You will soon see that I am right.
7. I seated myself in an armchair.
8. The clouds have disappeared, it will not rain.
9. Having spoken thus he sat down again.
10. I caught a glimpse of your father yesterday.
11. I was looking for him everywhere, but he had disappeared

Exercise 56. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 414-421.)

1. On apprend beaucoup en lisant l'histoire.
2. Ces tableaux ne me plaisent pas.
3. Les muguets croissent dans les bois.
4. Il ne boit jamais d'eau ; n'avez-vous pas de vin ?
5. Tais-toi, tu parles trop.
6. Faut-il que je me taise ?
7. Où naquit Corneille ? Il naquit à Rouen.
8. Ces fleurs ne croîtront pas dans votre jardin ; il n'y a pas assez de soleil.
9. S'il y avait du café j'en boirais.
10. Est-ce que vous lisez le journal ? Non, je l'ai déjà lu.
11. Je suis né en Afrique.

1. This river begins to increase about the month of February
2. He was born in London, and died at Paris.
3. Give me some wine, if you please.
4. Have you read this book? No, but I shall read it.
5. Having spoken thus he was silent.
6. Here is some wine; drink some.
7. I will not drink any; I never drink wine.
8. You must drink to our health.
9. Must I drink? That displeases me a great deal
10. The olive does not grow in England.
11. Where were you born? We were born at Paris.
12. If I had more time I should read more.

Exercise 57. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 422-428.)

1. Mes parents vivent encore, mais ils sont très faibles.
2. Que cousez-vous? Je ne couds pas.
3. S'il avait vécu jusqu'à la fin de l'année il serait devenu très riche.
4. Il résolut de partir tout de suite pour découvrir les sources du fleuve.
5. La guerre dissout les liens de la société.
6. Cette farine n'est pas bien moulue.
7. Il conclut de vos paroles que vous ne l'aimez plus.
8. Les médecins croient que le malade ne survivra pas.
9. Vive l'Angleterre! Vivent les Anglais!
10. Il vécut à Paris, mais il mourut à Rouen.
11. Croyez-vous qu'il résolve ces questions?

1. Do you believe he is (*subj.*) dead?
2. I conclude from this letter that he will not come.
3. Where is the cook? She is grinding coffee.
4. Hitherto I have always believed you, but I shall not believe you another time.
5. Acids dissolve metals.
6. Have you been able to solve this problem?
7. Men generally live only seventy years.
8. Long live (*subj.*) the Republic!
9. None of the wounded survived.
10. My dress is unsewn; be kind enough to resew it.
11. I have resolved not to (*de*) return there.
12. Napoleon lived in the midst of the greatest dangers.

EXERCISE 58. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 429-432.)

NOTE 18.—**Craindre** is followed by the subjunctive, and, when used affirmatively, requires the insertion of **ne** before the subjunctive.

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.
I fear he will come.

but, **Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas.**
I fear he will not come.

1. C'est par la parole que l'homme communique ses pensées, perfectionne ses facultés, et atteint à son plus haut développement.
2. Ces ruisseaux rejoignent la rivière à l'endroit où elle se jette dans le lac.
3. Cette chandelle s'éteint ; il faut la rallumer.
4. Les Anglais vainquirent les Français à Azincourt.
5. Nous craignions qu'il ne vécût pas longtemps.
6. Il se plaint toujours de ses malheurs.
7. Il peignit ce tableau à Londres.
8. Les femmes sont ceintes d'une écharpe bleue.
9. Je crains que le feu ne s'éteigne.
10. Il me vainc chaque fois.
11. Vous ne le convaincrez jamais ; il croit toujours avoir raison.

1. Imagination will never attain to the reality.
2. The fire did not go out until after the firemen had gone away.
3. This painter paints all his pictures in the open (*plein*) air.
4. I fear you have not convinced him.
5. The brother was painting while the sister was sewing.
6. Alexander defeated the King of Persia at the battle of Arbela.
7. You must rejoin your friends at once.
8. Why do you complain so often of your misfortunes?
9. The soldiers compelled him to go away.
10. I was afraid he did not remember you.
11. These trees never attain their complete development in our country.

Exercise 59. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 433-437.)

1. Le fait qu'il n'entendit pas les signaux l'induisit en erreur sur sa position.
2. Une confusion inexprimable se produisit dans la ville.
3. Cette viande n'est pas cuite ; il faut que la cuisinière la recuise.
4. Il nuit à ses amis plus qu'à ses ennemis.
5. Tous les chemins conduisent à Rome.
6. Le sinistre s'est produit par l'imprudence d'un des ouvriers.
7. Voici ce magnifique palais construit par le dernier roi et dans lequel il mourut.
8. Les épées des soldats reluisent au soleil couchant.
9. Nous montâmes les cent vingt marches qui conduisaient à la tour.
10. Les ennemis ont détruit deux cents villes.
11. Vous écrivez que vous n'avez plus d'argent ; je vous en enverrai demain.

1. Write to me from time to time. I will write to you twice a (*par*) week.
2. They are translating the works of Fénelon.
3. The king constructed this town after having defeated the Russians.
4. I fear that my son does not often write to his friends.
5. This staircase leads to the queen's apartments.
6. Your cook cooks poultry very well. She is French, and I think all the French cook well.
7. I will write to my father to inform him of the accident which has just been caused.
8. He hurt his country a great deal.
9. I will take you to Madame Bonnet's this evening.
10. They had introduced themselves into the cellar, where they found a great deal of wine.
11. He translates very well at sight.
12. Fénelon wrote *Telemachus* for the young prince he was instructing.

Exercise 60. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 438-442.)

1. La mère sourit en voyant ses enfants.
2. Si vous suivez ce chemin vous arriverez à la gare.
3. Il rit beaucoup en nous racontant ce que le médecin lui avait dit.
4. Je confirai des poires et des prunes.
5. "Je suis mon maître, dit le chien, mais je ne suis pas mon maître."
6. Je vous dirai quelque chose que personne ne sait encore.
7. Les enfants qui ne sont pas encore nés maudiront ce jour.
8. Suivez-moi, soldats ; je vous conduirai à la gloire.
9. Les filles des paysans traient les vaches.
10. Dites-moi ce que mon père vous a dit.
11. Elle paraît distraite ; à quoi pense-t-elle ?

1. Napoleon the First dreamed of (*à*) invading India by (*en*) following the route of Alexander.
2. Why do these young girls laugh ?
3. It is said (*On dit*) that the king is dead. Do you believe it ?
4. Do not give me any more money ; that will be sufficient.
5. We followed the path which leads to the summit of the mountain.
6. We must work to distract ourselves from our grief.
7. Our first thought was to leave that accursed place.
8. What would your mother say if she saw you like that ?
9. Our soldiers did not pursue the enemy.
10. You say that you never eat preserved fruits.

Exercise 61. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 443-449.)

1. Ce grand roi a été soumis à l'épreuve la plus complète dans la guerre et dans le gouvernement.
2. Cet enfant ne prendra pas la peine de bien lire.
3. On apprit les détails de l'événement de ceux qui survécurent.
4. Une belle matinée nous promit une journée telle que nous la désirions.
5. Nous prîmes notre repas du soir et nous nous mîmes au travail.
6. Il fit un geste de désapprobation.

7. Mes sœurs se font faire des robes blanches.
8. Vous feriez mieux de vous en aller.
9. Le fleuve des Amazones prend sa source à une petite distance du Pacifique et se jette dans l'Atlantique.
10. Pourquoi battez-vous cet enfant? Je le bats parce qu'il a menti.
11. Vous faites des bêtises ; vous auriez dû prendre mon avis.
12. Permettez-moi de vous offrir ces belles fleurs.

1. Where is your sister? She is packing; she starts this evening for England.
2. Two and two make four.
3. Where have you put my gloves? There they are.
4. All the animals have been subdued by men.
5. I do not allow you to work on Sunday.
6. I will have a coat made, and a pair of trousers.
7. They wished to fight, but the king did not allow it.
8. In a few days he will have subdued all the country.
9. They are doing all they can to injure their enemies.
10. You must take some money for your journey.
11. He feared his brother would compromise himself.
12. I did not understand what he said.

Exercise 62. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 505-509.)

1. Alexandre prit des femmes parmi les peuples vaincus, et il voulut que ses soldats en prissent aussi.
2. Je désire que vous me payiez ce que vous me devez.
3. J'ai honte que vous ayez ignoré un fait de cette importance.
4. Nous craignons qu'il ne vienne.
5. J'exigeai qu'il ne détruisît pas ses livres.
6. Croyez-vous que ces nouvelles soient vraies?
7. Il vaut mieux que vous achetiez vos livres d'occasion.
8. J'étais surpris que l'enfant ne se souvînt pas de sa mère.
9. Il faut que vous vous baigniez tous les jours.
10. Il est important qu'il reçoive cette lettre aujourd'hui.
11. Croyez-vous que la ville soit prise?
12. Je doute que vous ayez raison.

1. I was surprised that your brother did not know mine.
2. It is just that you should pay his wages.
3. It is time for us to go to bed.
4. Do you believe the king is dead?
5. I doubted their coming.

6. I desire you to pack up and start this afternoon.
7. I am surprised that your brother does not know it.
8. I feared these children would not sleep.
9. The king commands that no one should go out of the town.
10. Do you think he perceives us?
11. It is impossible that the moon should be inhabited.
12. I forbid any one gathering these lilies of the valley.

Exercise 63. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 510-511.)

1. "Il m'importe peu, dit le roi, quelles mœurs aient ces peuples, pourvu qu'ils me soient fidèles."
2. Elle disparut sans que personne s'en aperçût.
3. Pour que la terre ne soit pas déchirée par les divisions et les haines il ne faut qu'une chose, c'est que les hommes se souviennent toujours des préceptes de l'Évangile.
4. A la vue d'une beauté naturelle, quelle qu'elle soit, notre premier besoin est d'admirer.
5. Venise est la plus belle ville que j'aie jamais visitée.
6. Il faut que vous vous en alliez de bonne heure afin que j'aie le temps d'écrire mes lettres.
7. C'est le seul médecin qui puisse vous guérir.
8. Quoiqu'il fût plus jeune que moi il était beaucoup plus grand.
9. La reine mourut avant qu'elle eût vu son enfant.
10. Le roi dit qu'il ne lèverait pas le siège à moins qu'on ne lui donnât tout l'or qui était dans la ville.
11. Je cueillis les plus belles fleurs qu'on pût trouver dans le jardin.

1. He sent his son to Paris in order to study the fine arts.
2. She is not the only woman who has travelled in Africa.
3. Although he was not well he continued his journey.
4. I have seen the largest diamond there is in (*à*) the world.
5. In order that you may be happy, you must be virtuous.
6. Unless I receive a letter I shall start to-morrow at noon.
7. I will not give you my purse for fear you should lose it.
8. Provided that your mother wishes it, I will accompany you to the theatre.
9. Supposing he has gone away, you must follow him.
10. Wave your handkerchief so that he may see us.
11. Provided it is fine we shall go for a walk in the woods.

Exercise 64. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 512-515 [*a*]).

1. J'ai promis d'y revenir l'année prochaine.
2. Priez-le de m'apporter une tasse de café.
3. Je viendrai vous voir demain.
4. Savez-vous nager ?
5. Ne parlez pas à ce méchant petit garçon ; laissez-le pleurer.
6. Cessez de vous conduire en enfant gâté.
7. J'ai oublié de commander une robe ; pouvez-vous m'en prêter une ?
8. Il menaçait de tout dire à mon père. J'ai dû lui donner beaucoup d'argent pour qu'il se taise.
9. Je vous recommande de congédier le domestique qui a refusé de vous obéir.
10. Préférez-vous aller au théâtre ou au concert ?
11. Tâchez de bien agir, afin que vous n'ayez rien à regretter.
12. Il n'est pas chez lui ; je l'ai vu sortir.

1. I would rather go out than (*que de*) remain indoors.
2. Your father will not allow you to go out : try to remain quiet.
3. If you go out without his permission you will deserve to be punished.
4. Will you accompany me to the theatre ?
5. Do you dare to say that your mother is not always right ?
6. I have forgotten to stamp the letter I have sent your brother.
7. He refused to return me the money I had lent him.
8. Do you know how to dance ? Yes, but I would rather skate.
9. I hear them coming ; let us go away.
10. Go and look for your hat ; we are going out.
11. I should like to buy some flowers, but I do not see any pretty enough.

Exercise 65. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 515 [*b*]-516.)

1. Il aspire à devenir plus riche que les Rothschild.
2. Il consentit à nous montrer sa bibliothèque après avoir longtemps hésité.
3. Il finit par dire qu'il refusait de nous donner le nom de son ami.
4. Je cherche à faire du bien à tout le monde.

5. Il commença par parler de celui qui venait de mourir.
6. Il s'était endormi sans se déshabiller.
7. J'aime à écouter le chant des oiseaux.
8. J'hésite à vous accompagner sans rien dire à mon père.
9. Je suis venu pour vous avertir du danger qui vous menace.
10. Il se mit à chanter sans faire attention à ce que disait sa mère.
11. Il parvint à découvrir les sources du Nil.

1. The citizens have sent three ambassadors to the king to beg for peace.
2. You are not accustomed to work.
3. I will never consent to it ; do not dream of persuading me.
4. He has gone away without saying good-bye to us.
5. After having spent all his money he set to work to borrow.
6. He will end by consenting to go away.
7. I have succeeded in finding what I require (*falloir*, impers.).
8. You must learn to speak French.
9. He invited us to enter and to taste his wine.
10. I like to be alone.
11. He left us after having promised to return in half an hour.
12. He has left the University without succeeding in passing his examinations.

Exercise 66. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 517-524.)

1. Elle s'est brûlé la main.
2. Le médecin à soigné la blessure qu'elle s'est faite.
3. Avez-vous remarqué ces enfants allant à l'église ?
4. Ces petites filles ne se sont pas lavées ce matin.
5. Aimez-vous la robe que je me suis faite ?
6. Votre mère est arrivée.
7. Retirée dans son palais, la reine passe ses jours à pleurer la mort du roi.
8. Que d'années il a fallu pour perfectionner cette invention !
9. Il y a longtemps qu'ils ne se sont pas parlé.
10. Je me rappelle une foule de choses que nous ne nous sommes pas communiquées.
11. Vous n'avez pas encore reçu les livres que vous avez commandés.

1. This play is very amusing ; you ought to see it.
2. They are spoiled children.
3. Where did you meet these children ? I met them playing on the beach.

4. Did you enjoy yourselves at the ball, ladies?
5. These are the flowers I promised you.
6. She injured herself a great deal by her bad conduct.
7. I have told them the words that they did not remember (*se rappeler*).
8. She has hurt her foot (*say* herself in the foot).
9. The slaves were terrified by what they had seen.
10. I recalled to her the words which she did not remember (*se souvenir*).
11. The great heat there has been since my arrival has prevented me from taking (*faire*) long walks.

Exercise 67. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 525-534.)

1. Elle était toute joyeuse de nous rencontrer.
2. Il a répondu prudemment à toutes les questions qu'on lui a posées.
3. Après l'avoir vu partir nous revînmes tristement.
4. Heureusement j'ai beaucoup d'argent, quoique je n'en aie pas autant que vous.
5. Sa santé est complètement rétablie.
6. Mangez un peu de ce bon fromage.
7. Mes sœurs sont tout heureuses de vous revoir.
8. L'enfant mangeait avidement.
9. C'est précisément à cause de cela que j'ai tant voulu vous voir.
10. Elle nous remercia poliment.
11. Ce jeune homme travaille assidûment.
12. Pourquoi avez-vous cueilli tant de fleurs.

1. He often makes promises, but he rarely remembers them.
2. Have you eaten enough? No, I will eat a little more.
3. How much do these lilies of the valley cost? They are already sold.
4. She left suddenly.
5. It is very sad that his son has died so young.
6. She was quite (*tout*) ready and was waiting for us.
7. Answer him politely that I cannot receive him.
8. She appeared quite agitated at seeing us.
9. She translates fluently at sight.
10. These flowers are quite fresh; I gathered them this morning.
11. It is absolutely necessary for me to start at once.
12. Tell me frankly how much that cost you.

She is 15 years older than [illegible] and [illegible] 15 years

Exercise 68. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 535-542.)

1. Cette maison est très commodément bâtie.
2. Les enfants revenaient lentement.
3. Ces fleurs coûtent très cher.
4. Parlez bas afin que les enfants n'entendent pas.
5. Faites cela au plus vite.
6. À vrai dire c'est l'enfant que j'aime le plus au monde.
7. Vous chantez faux ; tâchez de chanter juste.
8. Je suis venu exprès pour vous empêcher d'agir si opiniâtrément.
9. Vous avez parfaitement réussi à me récompenser de ma peine.
10. Tenez bon ; ne cédez pas à leurs importunités.
11. Conformément à mes ordres, je suis allé vite chez votre fils.

1. She believes blindly in everything he says.
2. She answered briefly that he had told a lie.
3. I will come as soon as possible.
4. Hold yourselves up, soldiers.
5. Go to the station quickly to prevent him from starting.
6. She sings better than her sister.
7. Speak out ; what do you want ?
8. He went out on a sudden without telling us why.
9. I believe that he did it on purpose.
10. I will work as well as I can.
11. One cannot act like that with impunity.
12. The river has swollen enormously since the morning.

Exercise 69. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 543-553.)

1. Où est le chien ? Il est sous la table.
2. Je suis très reconnaissant envers tous ceux qui m'ont aidé dans cette affaire.
3. Au milieu des situations les plus difficiles il garde un courage inébranlable.
4. Il pousse la finesse jusqu'à la duplicité.
5. Malgré les larmes de sa femme il s'en alla à la guerre.
6. J'irai au Japon et aux États-Unis avant de revenir en Europe.
7. La salle à manger est à côté du salon.
8. Sa robe était couverte de dentelle.
9. Je marchais à travers les champs et j'entrai dans la forêt.

10. En présence d'un inconnu l'Anglais a fréquemment l'attitude d'un ennemi.

11. Ce fut vers l'an cent cinquante avant notre ère que les Romains, appelés à secourir Marseille contre les incursions des barbares, occupèrent le bassin du Rhône.

12. Le vieillard s'était assis sur un banc devant la porte.

1. In time of peace provisions are not so expensive as in time of war.

2. She was dressed in black.

3. Have you been here long? I have been here for three weeks.

4. Executions are frequent among the Chinese.

5. He was very charitable towards the poor.

6. The duke swore by his sword that henceforth he would be faithful to the king.

7. He will remain at Paris till July 15th.

8. As for your brother, I like him very much in spite of his bad temper.

9. "All is lost save honour," wrote King Francis the First, after the battle of Pavia.

10. He has started for a journey round the world.

11. According to my idea there should be a little garden in front of the house, and an orchard behind.

12. There are trees along the roads.

Exercise 70. (*T. F. A.*, §§ 554-558.)

1. Lorsque nous vîmes le tableau nous fûmes frappés d'admiration.

2. La langue latine était très répandue en Europe puisque les lettrés écrivaient exclusivement en latin.

3. Restez ici jusqu'à ce que je vous permette de vous en aller.

4. J'ai puni cet enfant parce qu'il ne savait pas sa leçon.

5. Dès qu'il arriva en France il cessa de parler anglais.

6. Je voudrais m'en aller sans que mon père s'en aperçoive.

7. Depuis que ma tante est venue nous ne nous couchons jamais avant minuit.

8. Bien qu'il ne fût pas riche il était très charitable envers les pauvres.

9. Je m'en irai de très bonne heure avant que personne ne soit levé.

10. Je n'ai vu ni l'un ni l'autre.

11. Puisque vous avez déjà été puni, je vous pardonnerai.

12. Il n'y a que les riches qui pourront assister à cette fête, car les billets coûtent très cher.

1. This young man has neither friends nor money.
2. I know why you want so much money.
3. I will not give you the letter for fear of your not giving it me back.
4. While I was waiting for you I read one hundred and forty pages of this book.
5. When the children perceived their mother they uttered a cry of joy.
6. Directly he found himself ill he sent for a doctor.
7. I shall not return to Paris unless my mother comes.
8. I should like to die before I become too old.
9. Since you left us everybody has been ill.
10. Work assiduously that you may learn quickly.
11. Although Alexander died so young, he had rendered himself master of the world.
12. According to what philosophers say, we are all descended from monkeys.

VOCABULARY.

I.—FRENCH—ENGLISH.

A

à, *prep.*, at, in, into, by, for, to. *d'***abord**, *adv.*, at once, at first.
accompagner, *v.t.*, accompany.
accomplir, *v.t.*, accomplish.
accueillir, *v.t.*, (§ 388), receive, welcome.
acheter, *v.t.*, buy.
achever, *v.t.*, finish.
acquérir, *v.t.*, (§ 398), acquire.
act-eur, -rice, *s.m.f.*, actor, actress.
admirable, *adj.*, admirable.
admiration, *s.f.*, admiration.
admirer, *v.t.*, admire.
adorer, *v.t.*, adore.
adversité, *s.f.*, adversity.
affaiblir, *v.t.*, weaken, enfeeble.
affaire, *s.f.*, business, affair, thing.
affranchir, *v.t.*, pre-pay.
afin que, *conj.*, in order that.
âge, *s.m.*, age. *Le moyen âge*, the Middle Ages.
âgé, -e, *adj.*, aged, old; *âgé de dix ans*, ten years old.
aggrandir, *v.t.*, to enlarge, aggrandize.
agir, *v.i.*, do, act.
agréable, *adj.*, agreeable.
aider, *v.t.*, aid, help.
aigre-doux, -douce, *adj.*, sour-ish, bitter-sweet.
aimable, *adj.*, amiable.
aimer, *v.t.*, like, love, be fond of. *Aimer mieux*, prefer.
aîné, -e, *adj.*, elder, oldest.
ainsi, *adv.*, thus, so, therefore.
air, *s.m.*, air.
ajouter, *v.t.*, add.
Alexandre, *s.m.*, Alexander.
Alexandrie, *s.f.*, Alexandria.
allemand, -e, *adj.*, German.
Allemagne, *s.f.*, Germany.
aller, *v.i.* (§ 375), go. *S'en aller*, go away.
Amazone, *s.m.*, Amazon.
ambitieu-x, -se, *adj.*, ambitious.
amèrement, *adv.*, bitterly.
Amérique, *s.f.*, America. *Amérique du sud*, South America.
ami, -e, *s.m.f.*, friend.
amitié, *s.f.*, friendship.
amuser, *v.t.*, amuse.
*s'***amuser**, *v.r.*, amuse oneself, enjoy oneself.
an, *s.m.*, year.
ancêtres, *s.m. pl.*, ancestors.
ancien, -ne, *adj.*, ancient, old, past, former, retired.
anglais, -e, *adj.*, English.
Angleterre, *s.f.*, England.
animal, *s.m.*, animal.
année, *s.f.*, year,
antique, *adj.*, ancient, antique.
août, *s.m.*, August.

apercevoir, *v.t.* (§ 399), see, perceive. *S'apercevoir,* perceive.
appeler, *v.t.*, call. *S'appeler,* call oneself, be called, be named.
apporter, *v.t.*, bring.
apprendre, *v.t.* (§ 446), learn.
après, *prep.*, after. *Après-midi, s.m.*, afternoon.
arbre, *s.m.*, tree.
architecture, *s.f.*, architecture.
argent, *s.m.*, silver; money.
aride, *adj.*, dry.
arrêter, *v.t.*, make to stop, stop. *S'arrêter,* stop oneself, stop.
arrière-garde, *s.f.*, rearguard.
arriver, *v.i.*, arrive.
artillerie, *s.f.*, artillery.
aspirer, *v.i.*, aspire.
s'asseoir, *v.r.* (§ 409), seat oneself, sit down.
assez, *adv.*, enough.
assiduité, *s.f.*, assiduity.
assidûment, *adv.*, assiduously.
assister, *v.i.*, be present.
Atlantique, *s.m.*, Atlantic.
atteindre, *v.t. & i.* (§ 431), attain.
atteler, *v.t.*, harness.
attendre, *v.t. & i.*, expect, wait for, wait.
attente, *s.f.*, expectation.
attention, *s.f.*, attention. *Faire attention à*, pay attention to.
attitude, *s.f.*, attitude.
aucun, -e, *adj.*, any; (with neg.) no, none. *Aucune part*, anywhere.
aucun, -e, *indef. pron.*, any one; (with neg.) no one.
aujourd'hui, *adv.*, to-day.
aussi, *adv. & conj.*, also, too, so, as. *Aussi riche que*, as rich as.
Australie, *s.f.*, Australia.
autant, *adv.*, as much, so much.
auteur, *s.m.*, author.
autre, *adj. & pron.*, other, another. *L'un . . . l'autre*, one . . . another.
autrefois, *adv.*, formerly, once.
autrui, *indef. pron.*, others, other people.
aux, contr. of *à les*, to the.
avant, *prep.*, before (of time).
avant que, *conj.*, before.
avec, *prep.*, with.
avenir, *s.m.*, future.
aventure, *s.f.*, adventure.
avertir, *v.t.*, warn.
aveugle-né, -é, *adj.*, born blind.
avidement, *adv.*, greedily.
avis, *s.m.*, advice, opinion.
avoir, *v.t.* (§ 412), have. *Avoir faim*, be hungry; *avoir honte*, be ashamed; *avoir raison*, be right.

B

bague, *s.f.*, ring.
se **baigner,** *v.r.*, bathe oneself, bathe.
bain (*s.m.*) **de mer,** watering-place.
baiser, *v.t.*, kiss.
bal, *s.m.*, ball, dance.
banc, *s.m.*, bench.
banquier, *s.m.*, banker.
barbare, *s.m.*, barbarian.
barbe, *s.f.*, beard.
baron, -ne, *s.m.f.*, baron, baroness.
bas, *s.m.*, stocking.
bas, -se, *adj.*, low.
bassin, *s.m.*, basin.
bâtir, *v.t.*, build.
battre, *v.t.* (§ 448), go.
beau (or **bel**), **belle,** *adj.*, beautiful, fine, handsome.
beaucoup, *adv.*, much, many, a great deal, a good deal, a good many.
beau-père, *s.m.*, father-in-law.
beauté, *s.f.*, beauty.
bébé, *s.m.*, baby.
bén-in, -igne, *adj.*, benign.
besoin, *s.m.*, want, need, necessity. *Avoir besoin de*, want.
bête, *s.f.*, beast.
bêtise, *s.f.*, stupid blunder.
bibliothèque, *s.f.*, library.

bien, *s.m.*, good, wealth, property.
bien, *adv.*, well, very; much, many, plenty.
bien que, *conj.*, although.
bientôt, *adv.*, soon, presently.
bijou, *s.m.*, jewel.
billet, *s.m.*, ticket.
blâmer, *v.t.*, blame.
blanc, -he, *adj.*, white.
blesser, *v.t.*, wound. *Se blesser*, hurt oneself.
blessure, *s.f.*, wound.
bleu, -e, *adj.*, blue.
bleu foncé, *adj.*, dark blue.
blond, -e, *adj.*, fair.
bœuf, *s.m.*, ox.
boire, *v.t. & i.* (§ 421), drink.
bois, *s.m.*, wood.
bon, -ne, *adj.*, good. *De bonne heure*, early.
bonheur, *s.m.*, happiness.
bouger, *v.i.*, stir, move.
bouillir, *v.i.* (§ 377), boil.
bouquet, *s.m.*, bouquet.
boussole *s.f.*, compass.
bouteille, *s.f.*, bottle.
brebis, *s.f.*, sheep, ewe.
briser, *v.t.*, break.
brouillard, *s.m.*, fog.
bruit, *s.m.*, noise, rumour.
brûler, *v.t. & i.*, burn.
brun, -e, *adj.*, brown.

C

cadeau, *s.m.*, gift, present.
cadet, -te, *adj.*, younger.
caillou, *s.m.*, pebble.
campagne, *s.f.*, country. *En pleine campagne*, in the heart of the country.
canard, *s.m.*, drake.
cane, *s.f.*, duck.
caneton, *s.m.*, duckling.
canette, *s.f.*, duckling.
canif, *s.m.*, penknife.
capitaine, *s.m.*, captain.
car, *conj.*, for
carnaval, *s.m.*, carnival.
casse-noisettes, *s.m.*, pair of nut-crackers.
cataracte, *s.f.*, cataract.
à cause de, *prep.*, on account of.
causer, *v.i.*, talk, chat.
ce, cette, ces, *dem. adj.*, this, that; these, those.
ceci, *dem. pron.*, this.
céder, *v.i.*, give way, yield.
ceindre, *v.t.* (§ 431), gird.
ceinture, *s.f.*, girdle.
cela, *dem. pron.*, that.
célèbre, *adj.*, celebrated.
célébrité, *s.f.*, celebrity.
celui, celle, *dem. pron.*, he, she, that; *pl.* **ceux, celles**, they, those.
cent, *num. adj.*, hundred.
cercle, *s.m.*, club.
cerise, *s.f.*, cherry.
certain, -e, *adj.*, certain.
cesser, *v.i.*, cease.
chacun, -e, *pron.*, every one, each.
chaîne, *s.f.*, chain.
chameau, *s.m.*, camel.
champ, *s.m.*, field.
chandelle, *s.f.*, candle.
chant, *s.m.*, song.
chanter, *v.t. & i.*, sing.
chapeau, *s.m.*, hat.
chapitre, *s.m.*, chapter.
chaque, *adj.*, each, every.
charger, *v.t.*, charge, load.
charitable, *adj.*, charitable.
chasser, *v.t. & i.*, hunt, drive away.
chasseresse, *s.f.*, huntress.
chasseu-r, -se, *s.m.f.*, hunter, huntress.
chat, -te, *s.m.f.*, cat. *Chat-tigre*, tiger-cat.
châtain clair, *adj.*, auburn, light-brown.
château, *s.m.*, castle.
chaud, -e, *adj.*, hot.
chef-d'œuvre, *s.m.*, masterpiece.
chemin, *s.m.*, road, way. *Chemin de fer*, railway.

cher, chère, *adj.*, dear, expensive.
chercher, *v.t.*, look for, seek.
chérir, *v.t.*, love, cherish.
cheval, *s.m.*, horse.
cheveux, *s.m. pl.*, hair.
chèvre, *s.f.*, she-goat.
chez, *prep.*, at the house of.
chien, *s.m.*, dog.
chinois, -e, *adj.*, Chinese.
choisir, *v.t.*, choose.
chose, *s.f.*, thing.
chou, *s.m.*, cabbage.
chou-fleur, *s.m.*, cauliflower.
cinq, *num. adj.*, five.
cinquantaine, *s.f.*, about fifty.
cinquante, *num. adj.*, fifty.
circonstance, *s.f.*, circumstance.
ciseau, *s.m.*, chisel; (pl.) scissors.
civil, -e, *adj.*, civil.
clairsemé, -e, *adj.*, thinly-sown.
classe, *s.f.*, class.
coche, *s.f.*, sow.
cochon, *s.m.*, pig, hog.
coin, *s.m.*, corner.
colline, *s.f.*, hill.
combien, *adv.*, how much, how many.
commander, *v.t.*, & *i*, command.
comme, *adv.* & *conj.*, as, like, how.
commencer, *v.t.* & *i.*, begin.
comment, *adv.*, how.
commodément, *adv.*, conveniently.
commun, -e, *adj.*, common.
communiquer, *v.t.*, communicate.
compagn-on, -e, *s.m.f.*, companion.
complètement, *adv.*, completely.
composer, *v.t.*, compose.
comte, -sse, *s.m.f.*, count, countess.
concert, *s.m.*, concert.
concevoir, *v.t.* (§ 399), conceive.
conclure, *v.t.* (§ 423), conclude, infer.
concourir, *v.i.* (§ 396), concur.
conduire, *v.t.* (§ 433), conduct, lead.
conduite, *s.f.*, conduct.
confire *v.t.* (§ 442), preserve, pickle.
conformément, *adv.*, conformably.
confusion, *s.f.*, confusion.
congédier, *v.t.*, discharge, dismiss.
connaître, *v.t.* (§ 413), know.
conscience, *s.f.*, conscience.
conseil, *s.m.*, counsel, advice.
consentir, *v.i.* (§ 382), consent.
conserver, *v.t.*, preserve.
construire, *v.t.* (§ 434), construct.
contempler, *v.t.*, contemplate.
se **contenir,** *v.r.* (§ 394), contain oneself.
content, -e, *adj.*, contented, pleased, glad.
contre, *prep.*, against.
convaincre, *v.t.* (§ 429), convince.
coq-à-l'âne, *s.m.*, cock-and-bull story.
cordialement, *adv.*, kindly.
corps, *s.m.*, body.
corrompre, *v.t.*, corrupt.
à **côté de,** *prep.*, by the side of.
se **coucher,** *v.r.*, go to bed.
couchant, -e, *adj.*, setting.
coudre, *v.t.* & *i.* (§ 428), sew.
coup d'œil, *s.m.*, glance.
couper, *v.t.*, cut.
courage, *s.m.*, courage.
courir, *v.i.* (§ 396), run.
cours, *s.m.*, course.
course, *s.f.*, race.
course (*s.f.*) **de taureau,** bull-fight.
cousin, -e, *s.m.f.*, cousin.
coûter, *v.t.* & *i.*, cost. *Coûter cher*, be expensive.
couvrir, *v.t.* (§ 389), cover.
craindre, *v.t.* (§ 430), fear.
crême, *s.f.*, cream.
cri, *s.m.*, cry.

crise, *s.f.*, crisis.
croire, *v.t. & i.* (§ 422), believe.
croître, *v.i.* (§ 416), grow, increase.
cruel, -le, *adj.*, cruel.
cueillir, *v.t.* (§ 388), gather.
cuire, *v.t.* (§ 435), cook.
cuisinière, *s.f.*, cook.
czar, -ine, *s.m.f.*, czar, czarina.

D

dame, *s.f.*, lady.
dans, *prep.*, in.
danser, *v.i.*, dance.
décembre, *s.m.*, December.
décevoir, *v.t.* (§ 399), deceive.
déchirer, *v.t.*, tear.
décider, *v.t.*, decide.
découverte, *s.f.*, discovery.
découvrir, *v.t.* (§ 389), discover.
déesse, *s.f.*, goddess.
défendre, *v.t.*, defend; forbid.
déjà, *adv.*, already.
demain, *adv.*, to-morrow. *Après-demain*, the day after to-morrow.
demander, *v.t.*, ask, ask for, demand.
demeurer, *v.i.*, reside, live.
demi, -e, *adj.*, half. *Demi-bouteille*, *s.f.*, a half-bottle; *demi-heure*, *s.f.*, half an hour; *demi-mort*, *-e*, *adj.*, half dead.
dent, *s.f.*, tooth.
dentelle, *s.f.*, lace.
dépenser, *v.t.*, spend.
depuis que, *conj.*, since.
déranger, *v.t.*, disturb, disarrange.
derni-er, -ère, *adj.*, last. *Dernier-venu*, last comer.
désapprobation, *s.f.*, disapprobation.
descendre, *v.t. & i.*, descend; bring down.
description, *s.f.*, description.
désespoir, *s.m.*, despair.
se **déshabiller**, *v.r.*, undress.
désirer, *v.t.*, desire, wish.
dès que, *conj.*, as soon as.
dessein, *s.m.*, design.
détail, *s.m.*, detail.
détruire, *v.t.* (§ 434), destroy.
deux, *num. adj.*, two.
devant, *prep.*, before (of place).
développement, *s.m.*, development.
se **développer**, *v.r.*, to develop.
devenir, *v.i.* (§ 395), become.
devoir, *s.m.*, duty.
devoir, *v.t.* (§ 400), owe; (as an auxiliary), have to, must, ought to.
dieu, *s.m.*, god.
difficile, *adj.*, difficult.
dimanche, *s.m.*, Sunday.
dind-on, -e, *s.m.f.*, turkey-cock, turkey-hen.
dîner, *s.m.*, dinner.
dîner, *v.i.*, dine.
dire, *v.t.* (§ 443), say.
discr-et, -ète, *adj.*, discreet.
disparaître, *v.i.* (§ 414), disappear.
disputer, *v.t. & i.*, dispute.
dissoudre, *v.t.* (§ 425), dissolve.
distance, *s.f.*, distance.
distinguer, *v.t.*, distinguish.
distraire, *v.t.* (§ 438), distract, divert.
distrait, -e, *adj.*, absent minded.
distribuer, *v.t.*, distribute.
divers, -e, *adj.*, different.
division, *s.f.*, division.
dix, *num. adj.*, ten.
dizaine, *s.f.*, about ten.
docteur, *s.m.*, doctor.
dommage, *s.m.*, pity; harm.
donner, *v.t.*, give.
dont, *rel. pron.*, of which, of whom.
dormir, *v.i.* (§ 378), sleep.
doucement, *adv.*, gently.
dou-x, -ce, *adj.*, sweet, gentle.
douzaine, *s.f.*, dozen.
douze, *num. adj.*, twelve.
douzième, *num. adj.*, twelfth.

droit, -e, *adj.*, straight, erect, upright, right.
droit, *s.m.*, right.
duc, -hesse, *s.m.f.*, duke, duchess.
duplicité, *s.f.*, duplicity.
dur, -e, *adj.*, hard.

E

eau, *s.f.*, water.
ébouillir, *v.i.* (§ 377), boil away.
*s'***échapper**, *v.r.*, escape.
écharpe, *s.f.*, scarf, sash.
éclairer, *v. impers.*, lighten.
éclater, *v.i.*, burst, explode, break.
école, *s.f.*, school.
Ecosse, *s.f.*, Scotland.
écouter, *v.t.*, listen to, hear.
écrire, *v.t. & i.* (§ 437), write.
*s'***écrouler**, *v.r.*, crumble, fall, give way.
édifice, *s.m.*, building.
*s'***efforcer**, *v.r.*, endeavour, force oneself.
effort, *s.m.*, effort.
effrayer, *v.t.*, terrify.
égal, -e, *adj.*, equal.
église, *s.f.*, church.
élargir, *v.t.*, enlarge.
électrique, *adj.*, electric.
élève, *s.m.f.*, pupil.
élever, *v.t.*, educate, bring up.
elle, *pers. pron.*, she, her.
émotion, *s.f.*, emotion.
émouvoir, *v.t.* (§ 401), move, stir, excite.
empêcher, *v.t.*, hinder, prevent.
employer, *v.t.*, employ. *S'employer*, be employed.
emprunter, *v.t.*, borrow.
en, *prep.*, in, while, by, like.
encore, *adv.*, still, yet, again.
encre, *s.f.*, ink.
*s'***endormir**, *v.r.* (§ 378), fall asleep.
endroit, *s.m.*, place.
endurance, *s.f.*, endurance.
énergie, *s.f.*, energy.
en face de, *prep.*, in the presence of.
enfance, *s.f.*, childhood.
enfant, *s.m.f.*, child.
*s'***enfuir**, *v.r.* (§ 392), run away, flee, escape.
énigme, *s.f.*, enigma, riddle.
ennemi, *s.m.*, enemy.
énorme, *adj.*, enormous.
enrichir, *v.t.*, enrich.
ensemble, *adv.*, together.
entendre, *v.t.*, hear.
entrer, *v.i.*, enter.
entretenir, *v.t.* (§ 394), keep, support.
envers, *prep.*, to, towards.
envoyer, *v.t.* (§ 376), send.
épargner, *v.t.*, save, be thrifty with.
épée, *s.f.*, sword.
éplucher, *v.t.*, pare, peel.
épouser, *v.t.*, marry.
épou-x, se, *s.m.f.*, spouse, husband, wife.
épreuve, *s.f.*, proof.
éprouver, *v.t.*, experience, feel.
ère, *s.f.*, era.
erreur, *s.f.*, error, mistake.
escalier, *s.m.*, staircase.
esclave, *s.m.f.*, slave.
espérance, *s.f.*, hope.
espérer, *v.t.*, hope, expect.
et, *conj.*, and.
Etats-Unis, *s.m. pl.*, United States.
été, *s.m.*, summer.
*s'***éteindre**, *v.r.* (§ 431), be obliterated.
étiqueter, *v.t.*, ticket, mark.
être, *v.i.* (§ 449), be. *Etre à*, belong to.
étroit, -e, *adj.*, narrow.
étudiant, *s.m.*, student.
étudier, *v.t.*, study.
Europe, *s.f.*, Europe.
européen, -ne, *adj.*, European.
Evangile, *s.m.*, gospel.
*s'***évanouir**, *v.r.*, faint, vanish.
événement, *s.m.*, event.
éventail, *s.m.*, fan.
excepté, *prep.*, except.

exclusivement, *adv.*, exclusively.
excuse, *s.f.*, excuse.
exemple, *s.m.*, example.
exiger, *v.t.*, insist, require.
exotique, *adj.*, exotic.
expédier, *v.t.*, despatch, forward.
exploiter, *v.t.*, work (a mine), exploit.
exprès, *adv.*, on purpose.

F

fâché, -e, *adj.*, sorry.
faculté, *s.f.*, faculty, power, privilege.
faible, *adj.*, feeble.
faillir, *v.i.* (§ 386), be on the point of.
faim, *s.f.*, hunger.
faire, *v.t.* (§ 445), do, make. *Se faire*, make oneself, make for oneself; *faire attention*, pay attention, attend; *faire beau*, be fine; *faire faire*, have made; *faire plaisir à*, please, give pleasure to.
fait, *s.m.*, fact.
falloir, *v. impers.* (§ 407), be necessary.
farine, *s.f.*, flour.
se **fatiguer**, *v.r.*, be fatigued, tired.
faute, *s.f.*, fault, mistake.
fau-x, -sse, *adj.*, false. *Chanter faux*, sing out of tune.
favorable, *adj.*, favourable.
femme, *s.f.*, woman, wife.
fenêtre, *s.f.*, window.
fer, *s.m.*, iron.
fermer, *v.t.*, shut.
feu, *s.m.*, fire.
feu, -e, *adj.*, late, deceased.
feuille, *s.f.*, leaf.
février, *s.m.*, February.
fiancé, -e, *s.m.f.*, betrothed.
fidèle, *adj.*, faithful.
figure, *s.f.*, face.
fille, *s.f.*, girl, daughter.
fils, *s.m.*, son.
fin, *s.f.*, end.
finesse, *s.f.*, tact, finesse.
finir, *v.t.*, finish, end.
flatter, *v.t.*, flatter.
fleur, *s.f.*, flower.
fleurir, *v.i.* (§ 466), flourish.
fleuve, *s.m.*, river.
flotte, *s.f.*, fleet.
fois, *s.f.*, time.
forêt, *s.f.*, forest.
fort, -e, *adj.*, strong.
foule, *s.f.*, crowd.
fournir, *v.t.*, furnish.
frais, fraîche, *adj.*, fresh. *Fraiscueilli*, *adj.*, freshly plucked.
fraise, *s.f.*, strawberry.
framboise, *s.f.*, raspberry.
franc, *s.m.*, franc (tenpence).
français, -e, *adj.*, French.
France, *s.f.*, France.
franchir, *v.t.*, surmount.
frapper, *v.t.*, strike, knock.
fréquemment, *adv.*, frequently.
froid, *s.m.*, cold.
fromage, *s.m.*, cheese.
fruit, *s.m.*, fruit.
fureur, *s.f.*, fury.

G

gagner, *v.t.* gain.
gai, -e, *adj.*, gay.
gant, *s.m.*, glove.
garçon, *s.m.*, boy, waiter.
garder, *v.t.*, keep.
garde-robe, *s.f.*, wardrobe.
gare, *s.f.*, railway station.
gâteau, *s.m.*, cake.
gâté, -e, *adj.*, spoiled.
gâter, *v.t.*, spoil.
gauche, *adj.*, left.
gaz, *s.m.*, gas.
geler, *v.impers.*, freeze.
gendre, *s.m.*, son-in-law.
général, *s.m.*, general.
génie, *s.m.*, genius.
gens, *s.m.f. pl.*, people.
gentil, -le, *adj.*, nice, pretty.
gentiment, *adv.*, prettily, nicely.
geste, *s.m.*, gesture.
gibier, *s.m.*, game.
gloire, *s.f.*, glory.

gothique, *adj.*, Gothic.
goulûment, *adv.*, greedily.
goût, *s.m.*, taste.
goûter, *v.t. & i.*, taste.
gouvernement, *s.m.*, government.
grand, -e, *adj.*, great, tall, large. *Grand ouvert*, wide open.
grand'mere, *s.f.*, grandmother.
gravir, *v.t.*, climb.
grec, -que, *adj.*, Greek.
grêler, *v.impers.*, hail.
guérir, *v.t.*, heal.
guerre, *s.f.*, war.
Guillaume, *s.m.*, William.

H

s'habiller, *v.r.*, dress oneself.
habit, *s.m.*, coat.
habitant, *s.m.*, inhabitant.
habiter, *v.t. & i.*, inhabit, dwell.
habitude, *s.f.*, habit.
haine, *s.f.*, hatred.
harceler, *v.t.*, harass, worry.
haut, -e, *adj.*, high.
hésiter, *v.i.*, hesitate.
heure, *s.f.*, hour.
heureusement, *adv.*, happily.
heureu-x, -se, *adj.*, happy.
hier, *adv.*, yesterday.
histoire, *s.f.*, history.
historique, *adj.*, historic.
hiver, *s.m.*, winter.
homme, *s.m.*, man.
honte, *s.f.*, shame. *Avoir honte*, be ashamed.
horizon, *s.m.*, horizon.
horreur, *s.f.*, horror.
hôtel (*s.m.*) **de ville**, town hall.
huit, *num. adj.*, eight.
huître, *s.f.*, oyster.
humain, -e, *adj.*, human.
Hymette, *s.m.*, Hymettus, a mountain in Greece.

I

ici, *adv.*, here.
idée, *s.f.*, idea.
ignorer, *v.t.*, not to know, be ignorant of.
il, *pers. pron.*, he. *Il y a*, there is, there are; *il y a quelques jours*, some days ago.
illustre, *adj.*, illustrious.
imaginer, *v.t.*, imagine.
importance, *s.f.*, importance.
important, -e, *adj.*, important.
importer, *v. impers.*, be important, matter.
importunité, *s.f.*, importunity.
impossible, *adj.*, impossible.
imprudence, *s.f.*, imprudence.
incendie, *s.m.*, fire, conflagration.
inconnu, *s.m.*, unknown person.
incontestable, *adj.*, incontestable.
incursion, *s.f.*, incursion.
indiscr-et, -ète, *adj.*, indiscreet.
induire, *v.t.* (§ 433), induce.
inébranlable, *adj.*, firm, fixed, steadfast.
inexprimable, *adj.*, inexpressible.
injure, *s.f.*, insult.
institut-eur, -rice, *s.m.f.*, tutor, governess.
instruit, -e, *adj.*, learned.
intention, *s.f.*, intention.
intéressant, -e, *adj.*, interesting.
intérêt, *s.m.*, interest.
intime, *adj.*, intimate.
inventer, *v.t.*, invent.
invent-eur, -rice, *s.m.f.*, inventor.
invention, *s.f.*, invention.

J

Jacques, *s.m.*, James.
jalou-x, -se, *adj.*, jealous.
Japon, *s.m.*, Japan.
jardin, *s.m.*, garden.
jaune, *adj.*, yellow.
je, *pers. pron.*, I.
jeter, *v.t.*, throw.
se **jeter,** *v.r.*, throw oneself; (of a river) discharge itself, flow.

jeune, *adj.*, young.
jeunesse, *s.f.*, youth.
joie, *s.f.*, joy.
joindre, *v.t.* (§ 432), join.
joli, -e, *adj.*, pretty.
jouer, *v.t. & i.*, play.
jouir de, *v.t.*, enjoy.
joujou, *s.m.*, toy.
jour, *s.m.*, day.
journal, *s.m.*, newspaper.
journée, *s.f.*, day, day's work, day's journey.
joyeu-x, -se, *adj.*, delighted.
jui-f, -ve, *adj.*, Jewish.
jum-eau, -elle, *adj.*, twin.
jument, *s.f.*, mare.
jusqu'à, *prep.*, until, as far as.
juste, *adj.*, just. *Chanter juste*, sing in tune.

L

lac, *s.m.*, lake.
laie, *s.f.*, wild sow.
laine, *s.f.*, wool.
laisser, *v.t.*, leave.
lait, *s.m.*, milk.
langue, *s.f.*, tongue, language.
larme, *s.f.*, tear.
las, -se, *adj.*, tired, weary.
latin, -e, *adj.*, Latin.
laver, *v.t.*, wash.
le, la, les, *art.*, the.
leçon, *s.f.*, lesson.
lentement, *adv.*, slowly.
lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles, *rel. pron.*, who, which.
lettre, *s.f.*, letter.
lettré, *s.m.*, learned man.
leur, *pers. pron.*, to them.
leur, leurs, *poss. adj.*, their, (With *def. art.*) *poss. pron.*, theirs.
se **lever**, *v.r.*, rise, get up.
lèvre, *s.f.*, lip.
lien, *s.m.*, bond, link.
lièvre, *s.m.*, hare.
linge, *s.m.*, linen.
lion, -ne, *s.m.f.*, lion, lioness.
lire, *v.t. & i.* (§ 419), read.
livre, *s.m.*, book.
livre, *s.f.*, pound.
Londres, *s.m.*, London.
long, -ue, *adj.*, long.
longtemps, *adv.*, a long while. *Il y a longtemps*, for a long time, long ago.
lorsque, *conj.*, when.
louer, *v.t.*, let (a house).
louer, *v.t.*, praise.
loup, *s.m.*, wolf.
louve, *s.f.*, she-wolf.
lumière, *s.f.*, light.
lundi, *s.m.*, Monday.
lune, *s.f.*, moon.
lunette (d'approche), *s.f.*, telescope. *Lunettes*, spectacles.
luxe, *s.m.*, luxury.

M

Macédoine, *s.f.*, Macedonia.
magasin, *s.m.*, shop.
magnifique, *adj.*, magnificent.
maigre, *adj.*, lean.
main, *s.f.*, hand.
maintenir, *v.t.*, support.
mais, *conj.*, but.
maison, *s.f.*, house.
maître, -sse, *s.m.f.*, master, mistress.
malade, *adj.*, ill.
malgré, *prep.*, in spite of.
malheur, *s.m.*, misfortune.
malheureusement, *adv.*, unfortunately.
malheureu-x, -se, *adj.*, unhappy.
malhonnête, *adj.*, dishonest; rude, ungentlemanly.
maman, *s.f.*, mamma.
manger, *v.t.*, eat.
manquer, *v.i.*, lack, be lacking, be wanting.
marchand, -e, *s.m.f.*, merchant.
marche, *s.f.*, walk, step.
marché, *s.m.*, market.
marcher, *v.i.*, walk; (of a watch) go.

mari, *s.m.*, husband.
se **marier**, *v.r.*, marry, get married.
marin, *s.m.*, sailor.
marquer, *v.t.*, mark.
marraine, *s.f.*, godmother.
marron, *s.m.*, chestnut.
Marseille, *s.f.*, Marseilles.
mathématiques, *s.f. pl.*, mathematics.
matin, *s.m.*, morning.
matinée, *s.f.*, morning.
maudire, *v.t.* (§ 444), curse.
maussade, *adj.*, sullen, sulky.
mauvais, -e, *adj.*, bad.
méchant, -e, *adj.*, wicked, naughty.
médecin, *s.m.*, doctor.
médecine, *s.f.*, medicine.
meilleur, -e, *adj.*, better. *Le meilleur*, the best.
se **mêler de**, *v.r.*, meddle with, attend to, concern oneself with.
même, *adj.*, same, self.
même, *adv.*, even.
menaçant, -e, *adj.*, threatening.
menacer, *v.t.*, threaten.
mendiant, -e, *s.m.f.*, beggar.
mentir, *v.i.* (§ 379), lie, tell lies.
mercredi, *s.m.*, Wednesday.
mère, *s.f.*, mother.
mériter, *v.t.*, deserve.
mesdames, *s.f. pl.*, ladies.
messieurs, *s.m. pl.*, gentlemen.
métal, *s.m.*, metal.
mettre, *v.t.* (§ 447), place. *Se mettre à*, begin.
midi, *s.m.*, midday.
miel, *s.m.*, honey.
mien, -ne, (with *def. art.*) *poss. pron.*, mine.
mieux, *adv.*, better. *Le mieux*, best.
mil, *num. adj.*, thousand (in dates A.D.).
milieu, *s.m.*, middle. *Au milieu de*, in the middle of.
mille, *s.m.*, mile.
mille, *num. adj.*, thousand.
minéral, *s.m.*, mineral.
minéral, -e, *adj.*, mineral.
minuit, *s.m.*, midnight.
mi-parti, -e, *adj.*, parti-coloured, motley.
mœurs, *s.f. pl.*, manners, customs, character.
moindre, *adj.*, less. *Le moindre*, the least.
moins, *adv.*, less. *Le moins*, least; *à moins que*, *conj.*, unless.
mois, *s.m.*, *month.*
moment, *s.m.*, moment.
mon, ma, mes, *poss. adj.*, my.
monde, *s.m.*, world, people.
monnaie, *s.f.*, change.
monsieur, *s.m.*, sir, gentleman.
mont, *s.m.*, mount.
montagne, *s.f.*, mountain.
monter, *v.t. & i.*, mount, ascend.
montre, *s.f.*, watch.
montrer, *v.t.*, show, exhibit.
se **moquer de**, *v.r.*, mock, make fun of, laugh at.
mort, *adj.*, dead. *Mort-né, -e*, still-born.
mort, *s.f.*, death.
mot, *s.m.*, word.
mouchettes, *s.f. pl.*, snuffers.
moudre, *v.t.* (§ 424), grind.
mourir, *v.i.* (§ 397), die.
moutarde, *s.f.*, mustard.
muguet, *s.m.*, lily of the valley.
mulet, *s.m.*, mule; mullet.
mur, *s.m.*, wall.
musée, *s.m.*, museum.

N

nager, *v.i.*, swim.
naître *v.i.* (§ 417), be born.
nature, *s.f.*, nature.
naturel, -le, *adj.*, natural.
ne, *adv.*, not. *Ne . . . jamais*, never; *ne . . . pas*, not; *ne . . . personne*, no one; *ne . . . plus*, no more, no longer; *ne . . . que*, only; *ne . . . rien*, nothing.
né, *past part. of naître*, born.
nécessaire, *adj.*, necessary.

négliger, *v.t.*, neglect, overlook.
neige, *s.f.*, snow.
neiger, *v. impers.*, to snow.
net, **-te**, *adj.*, neat, clean, clear.
neuf, *num. adj.*, nine.
neu-f, **-ve**, *adj.*, new.
ni . . . ni, *conj.*, neither, nor.
noir, **-e**, *adj.*, black.
noix, *s.f.*, walnut, nut.
nom., *s.m.*, name.
nommer, *v.t.*, name. *Se nommer*, be called.
nombre, *s.m.*, number.
non, *adv.*, no, not.
nord, *s.m.*, north.
notre, **nos**, *poss. adj.*, our.
nôtre (with *def. art.*), *poss. pron.*, ours.
nouv-eau (nouvel), **-elle**, *adj.*, new. *Nouveau-marié*, newly-married; *nouveau-né*, new-born.
nouvelles, *s.f. pl.*, news.
nuire, *v.i.* (§ 436), hurt.
nul, **-le**, *indef. adj. & pron.*, no one, none.

O

obéir, *v.i.*, obey.
obliger, *v.t.*, oblige, compel.
obtenir, *v.t.* (§ 394), to obtain, obtain permission.
*d'***occasion**, *adv.*, second-hand.
occuper, *v.t.*, occupy.
œil (*pl.* **yeux**), *s.m.*, eye. *Œil-de-bœuf*, oval window.
œuf, *s.m.*, egg.
œuvre, *s.f.*, work.
officiel, **-le**, *adj.*, official.
offrir, *v.t.* (§ 390), offer.
oiseau, *s.m.*, bird.
oiseau-mouche, *s.m.*, humming-bird.
on, *indef. pron.* one, they, people.
oncle, *s.m.*, uncle.
onze, *num. adj.*, eleven.
opéra, *s.m.*, opera.
opiniâtrément, *adv.*, obstinately.
or, *s.m.*, gold.
orage, *s.m.*, storm.
ordre, *s.m.*, order.
orgueil, *s.m.*, pride.
os, *s.m.*, bone.
où, *adv. & conj.*, where, whence, whither.
ou, *conj.*, or, either.
oui, *adv.*, yes.
ouï-dire, *s.m.*, hearsay.
ours, **-e**, *s.m.f.*, bear.
ouvrier, *s.m.*, workman.

P

Pacifique, *s.m.*, Pacific.
page, *s.f.*, page (of a book).
paille, *s.f.*, straw. *Paille*, *adj. inv.*, straw-coloured.
paire, *s.f.*, pair.
palais, *s.m.*, palace.
pape, *s.m.*, pope.
par, *prep.*, by.
paraître, *v.i.* (§ 414), appear.
parapluie, *s.m.*, umbrella.
pardonner, *v.t. & i.*, pardon.
pareil, **-le**, *adj.*, same, like, similar.
parent, *s.m.*, parent, relative.
paresse, *s.f.*, idleness.
parfaitement, *adv.*, perfectly.
parler, *v.t. & i.*, speak.
parmi, *prep.*, among.
parole, *s.f.*, word.
parrain, *s.m.*, godfather.
partie, *s.f.*, part.
partir, *v.i.* (§ 380), set out, start.
parvenir, *v.i.* (§ 395), attain, succeed.
pas, *adv.*, not, not any. *Pas encore*, not yet.
passer, *v.t. & i.*, pass, spend. *Se passer*, take place; *se passer de*, do without.
patience, *s.f.*, patience.
patrie, *s.f.*, native land.
pauvre, *adj.*, poor.
pauvreté, *s.f.*, poverty.
pays, *s.m.*, country, land.

paysan, -ne, *s.m.f.*, peasant.
pêcheu-r, -se, *s.m.f.*, fisherman, fisherwoman.
peindre, *v.t.* (§ 431), paint.
peine, *s.f.*, trouble.
peintre, *s.m.*, painter.
peler, *v.t.*, peel.
pendant, *prep.*, during. *Pendant que, conj.*, while.
pendre, *v.t. & i.*, to hang.
pendule, *s.f.*, clock.
pénible, *adj.*, painful.
pensée, *s.f.*, thought.
penser, *v.t. & i.*, think. *Penser à*, think of.
percevoir, *v.t.* (§ 399), collect, levy (taxes).
perdre, *v.t.*, lose.
perdrix, *s.f.*, partridge.
père, *s.m.*, father.
perfectionner, *v.t.*, perfect.
permettre, *v.t. & i.* (§ 447), allow, permit.
personne, *indef. pron.*, anyone, anybody; no one, nobody.
personne, *s.f.*, person.
peser, *v.t. & i.*, weigh.
petit, -e, *adj.*, little, small. *Petit-fils*, grandson; *petite-fille*, granddaughter.
peu, *adv.*, few. *Un peu*, a little, a few.
piano, *s.m.*, piano.
pièce, *s.f.*, piece. *La pièce*, apiece.
Pierre, *s.m.*, Peter.
pire, *adj.*, worse. *Le pire*, the worst.
placer, *v.t.*, place.
plage, *s.f.*, beach, shore.
plaindre, *v.t.* (§ 430), pity. *Se plaindre de*, complain of.
plaine, *s.f.*, plain.
plaire, *v.i.*, (§ 418), please.
plaisir, *s.m.*, pleasure.
planète, *s.f.*, planet.
plein, -e, *adj.*, full. *En pleine campagne*, in the heart of the country.
pleurer, *v.t. & i.*, weep, mourn, deplore.
pleuvoir, *v. impers.* (§ 402), to rain.
pluie, *s.f.*, rain.
plume, *s.f.*, pen.
plus, *adv.*, more.
plusieurs, *adj. & pron.*, several.
poésie, *s.f.*, poetry.
poète, *s.m.*, poet.
poire, *s.f.*, pear.
pois, *s.m.*, pea.
poivre, *s.m.*, pepper.
poliment, *adv.*, courteously.
politesse, *s.f.*, politeness
pomme, *s.f.*, apple. *Pomme de terre*, potato.
pompe (*s.f.*) **à incendie**, fire engine.
pont, *s.m.*, bridge.
porte, *s.f.*, door.
porter, *v.t.*, carry, wear. *Se porter bien*, be well.
poser, *v.t.*, place; ask, put (a question).
position, *s.f.*, position.
posséder, *v.t.*, possess.
poste, *s.f.*, post.
potage, *s.m.*, soup.
poudre (*s.f.*) **à canon**, gunpowder.
poule, *s.f.*, hen.
poupée, *s.f.*, doll.
pour, *prep.*, for; (with infin.) in order to. *Pour que, conj.*, in order that.
pourquoi, *adv.*, why.
pourvoir, *v.i.* (§ 472), provide.
pourvu que, *conj.*, provided that.
pousser, *v.t.*, push.
pouvoir, *v.t.* (§ 404), be able.
pouvoir, *s.m.*, power.
précepte, *s.m.*, precept.
précisément, *adv.*, precisely.
préférer, *v.t.*, prefer.
premi-er, ère, *adj.*, first.
prendre, *v.t.* (§ 446), take.
préparer, *v.t.*, prepare.
près de, *prep.*, near.

présence, *s.f.*, presence.
à présent, *adv.*, now, at present.
président, *s.m.*, president.
presque, *adv.*, almost.
prétendre, *v.i.*, pretend, claim.
prêter, *v.t.*, lend.
prier, *v.t.*, ask, beg, pray.
prince, -sse, *s.m.f.*, prince, princess.
prochain, -e, *adj.*, near, next.
produire, *v.t.* (§ 433), produce. *Se produire*, happen, be caused.
profiter, *v.i.*, profit, benefit.
profusément, *adv.*, profusely.
promenade, *s.f.*, walk.
se **promener**, *v.r.*, walk, go for a walk.
promettre, *v.t.* (§ 447), promise.
prophête, *s.m.*, prophet.
proposition, *s.f.*, proposition.
propre, *adj.*, clean; one's own.
provençal, -e, *adj.*, Provençal.
prudemment, *adv.*, cautiously.
prune, *s.f.*, plum.
puisque, *conj.*, since.
punir, *v.t.*, punish.

Q

quadruple, *adj.*, quadruple.
quand, *adv. & conj.*, when.
quart, *s.m.*, quarter, fourth part.
quartier, *s.m.*, quarter (of a town).
quatorze, *num. adj.*, fourteen.
quatre, *num. adj.*, four.
que, *rel. & inter. pron.*, whom, which, that; what.
que, *conj.*, that; than.
que, *adv.*, how, how much.
quel, -le, *adj.*, what, what a.
quelconque, *indef. adj.*, whatever.
quelque, *indef. adj. & pron.*, some, any.
quel que, *indef. adj.*, whatever.
quelque chose, *indef. pron.*, something.
quelquefois, *adv.*, sometimes.
question, *s.f.*, question.
qui, *rel. & inter. pron.*, who, whom, which, that.
quiconque, *indef. pron.*, whoever.
quint, *adj.*, fifth.
quintuple, *adj.*, quintuple.
quinzaine, *s.f.*, about fifteen.
quinze, *num. adj.*, fifteen.
quinzième, *num. adj.*, fifteenth.
quitter, *v.t.*, leave, quit.
quoi, *inter. pron.*, what. *A quoi bon ?* what is the good.
quoique, *conj.*, although.

R

raconter, *v.t.*, recount, tell.
raisin, *s.m.*, grape.
raison, *s.f.*, reason. *Avoir raison*, be right.
rallumer, *v.t.*, rekindle.
se **rappeler**, *v.r.*, remember.
réception, *s.f.*, reception.
recevoir, *v.t.* (§ 399), receive.
récompenser, *v.t.*, recompense, reward.
reconnaître, *v.t.* (§ 413), recognize.
reconnaissant, -e, *adj.*, grateful.
recuire, *v.t.* (§ 435), cook again.
refaire, *v.t.* (§ 445), do again, make again; (of health) restore.
réfléchir, *v.i.*, reflect.
refuser, *v.t.*, refuse.
regarder, *v.t.*, look at.
règne, *s.m.*, reign, kingdom.
régner, *v.t.*, reign.
regretter, *v.t.*, regret.
reine, *s.f.*, queen.
rejoindre, *v.t.* (§ 432), rejoin.
reluire, *v.i.* (§ 436), shine.
remarquer, *v.t.*, remark.
remercier, *v.t.*, thank.
rempart, *s.m.*, rampart.
remplir, *v.t.*, fill.
renard, *s.m.*, fox.
rencontrer, *v.t.*, meet.

rendez-vous, *s.m.*, engagement, appointment.
rendre, *v.t.*, render, give back.
se **renouveler**, *v.r.*, renew oneself.
rentrer, *v.i.*, come in.
renvoyer, *v.t.* (§ 376), send back.
répandre, *v.t.*, spread.
repas, *s.m.*, meal.
se **repentir**, *v.r.* (§ 381), repent.
répondre, *v.t. & i.*, answer.
réponse, *s.f.*, answer.
se **reposer**, *v.r.*, rest.
représentation, *s.f.*, representation.
république, *s.f.*, republic.
réputation, *s.f.*, reputation.
requiem, *s.m.*, requiem.
résidence, *s.f.*, residence.
résoudre, *v.t.* (§ 426), resolve.
respectueusement, *adv.*, respectfully.
ressembler, *v.i.*, resemble.
rester, *v.i.*, remain.
rétablir, *v.t.*, restore.
retirer, *v.t.*, draw back.
retourner, *v.i.*, return, go back.
réussir, *v.i.*, succeed.
revenir, *v.i.* (§ 395), return, come back.
revoir, *v.t.* (§ 408), see again.
riche, *adj.*, rich.
rien, *indef. pron.*, anything; nothing.
rire, *v.i.* (§ 440), laugh.
rive, *s.f.*, bank, shore.
rivière, *s.f.*, river.
robe, *s.f.*, dress.
roi, *s.m.*, king.
rose, *s.f.*, rose
romain, -e, *adj.*, Roman.
roman, *s.m.*, novel.
rompre, *v.t.*, break.
ruban, *s.m.*, ribbon.
rue, *s.f.*, street.
ruisseau, *s.m.*, rivulet, stream.

S

sac, *s.m.*, bag, sack.
sale, *adj.*, dirty.
salle, *s.f.*, room. *Salle à manger*, dining-room.
salon, *s.m.*, drawing-room.
saluer, *v.t.*, salute, bow to.
sanglier, *s.m.*, wild boar.
sans, *prep.*, without. *Sans que*, *conj.*, without.
santé, *s.f.*, health.
sauvage, *adj.*, wild, savage.
savamment, *adv.*, learnedly.
savant, -e, *adj.*, learned.
savoir, *v.t.* (§ 403), know, know how to.
scène, *s.f.*, scene.
scientifique, *adj.*, scientific.
sec, sèche, *adj.*, dry.
secourir, *v.t.* (§ 396), help, succour.
secours, *s.m.*, succour.
seigneur, *s.m.*, lord.
Seine, *s.f.*, Seine.
seize, *num. adj.*, sixteen.
séjour, *s.m.*, sojourn.
sel, *s.m.*, salt.
semaine, *s.f.*, week.
sembler, *v.i.*, seem.
semer, *v.t.*, sow.
se **séparer**, *v.r.*, separate.
sept, *num. adj.*, seven.
servir, *v.t. & i.* (§ 383), serve. *Servir à*, be of use to, be useful for.
seul, -e, *adj.*, alone, only.
seulement, *adv.*, only.
si, *conj.*, if.
si, *adv.*, so.
siècle, *s.m.*, century.
siège, *s.m.*, siege.
sien, -ne, (with *def. art.*), *poss. pron.*, his, hers.
signal, *s.m.*, signal.
simple, *adj.*, simple.
sincère, *adj.*, sincere.
sinistre, *s.m.*, accident, disaster.
six, *num. adj.*, six.
Sixte-Quint, (Pope) Sixtus V.
société, *s.f.*, society.
sœur, *s.f.*, sister.

soie, *s.f.*, silk.
soigner, *v.t.*, tend, nurse, dress.
soir, *s.m.*, evening.
soixante, *num. adj.*, sixty.
soldat, *s.m.*, soldier.
soleil, *s.m.*, sun.
sommet, *s.m.* summit.
son, *s.m.*, sound.
son, sa, ses, *poss. adj.*, his, her, its.
songer, *v.i.*, think, dream.
sonner, *v.t. & i.*, ring, sound.
sortir, *v.i.* (§ 384), go out.
sot, -te, *adj.*, foolish.
souffler, *v.t. & i.*, blow.
souffrant, -e, *adj.*, unwell.
souffrir, *v.t. & i.* (§ 390), suffer.
soumettre, *v.t.* (§ 447), subdue.
souple, *adj.*, supple.
source, *s.f.*, source.
sourire, *v.i.* (§ 440), smile.
sourire, *s.m.*, smile.
sous, *prep.*, under. *Sous-officier*, non-commissioned officer; *sous-préfet*, sub-prefect.
soutenir, *v.t.* (§ 394), sustain, maintain.
se **souvenir de**, *v.r.* (§ 395), remember.
souvenir, *s.m.*, remembrance.
souvent, *adv.*, often.
spectacle, *s.m.*, spectacle, sight.
statue, *s.f.*, statue.
sud, *s.m.*, south.
Suisse, *s.f.*, Switzerland.
suivre, *v.t. & i.* (§ 439), follow.
sujet, *s.m.*, subject.
sur, *prep.*, upon.
surprendre, *v.t.* (§ 446), to surprise.
survivre, *v.i.* (§ 427), survive.

T

table, *s.f.*, table.
tableau, *s.m.*, picture.
tâcher, *v.i.*, try.
se **taire**, *v.r.* (§ 420), be silent, hold one's tongue.
tant, *adv.*, so much, so.
tante, *s.f.* aunt.
tard, *adv.*, late.
taureau, *s.m.*, bull.
taxe, *s.f.*, tax.
tel, -le, *adj.*, such, like.
tellement, *adv.*, so much.
temps, *s.m.*, time.
tendre, *v.t.*, stretch out.
tenir, *v.t.* (§ 394), hold. *Tenir à*, be attached to, value; *tenir bon*, hold firm.
terre, *s.f.*, earth.
terrible, *adj.*, terrible.
théâtre, *s.m.*, theatre.
tien, -ne, (with *def. art.*), *poss. pron.*, thine.
tigre, -sse, *s.m.f.*, tiger, tigress.
timbre-poste, *s.m.*, postage stamp.
tomber, *v.i.*, fall.
ton, ta, tes, *poss. adj.*, thy.
tonner, *v. impers.*, thunder.
tôt, *adv.*, early.
toujours, *adv.*, always.
tour, *s.f.*, tower.
tourmenter, *v.t.*, torment.
tout, -e, *pl.* **tous, toutes**, *adj.*, all, every. *Tout le monde*, everybody.
tout, *adv.*, quite. *Tout à coup*, suddenly; *tout à fait*, quite, completely; *tout de suite*, at once.
trace, *s.f.*, trace.
trahir, *v.t.*, betray.
train, *s.m.*, train.
traire, *v.t.* (§ 438), milk.
travail, *s.m.*, work.
travailler, *v.i.*, work.
au **travers de**, or **à travers**, *prep.*, across.
treize, *num. adj.*, thirteen.
trentaine, *s.f.*, about thirty.
trente, *num. adj.*, thirty.
très, *adv.*, very.
tressaillir, *v.i.* (§ 385), shudder
triple, *num. adj.*, triple.
tristement, *adv.*, sadly.
trois, *num. adj.*, three.

troisième, *num. adj.*, third.
trop, *adv.*, too, too much.
trou, *s.m.*, hole.
trouver, *v.t.*, find.
tu, *pers. pron.*, thou ; you.
tuer, *v.t.*, kill.
tur-c, -que, *adj.*, Turkish.

U

un, -e, *art. & num. adj.*, a, one.
unième, *num. adj.*, first (in compounds).
unique, *adj.*, only.
utile, *adj.*, useful.

V

vacances, *s.f. pl.*, holidays.
vache, *s.f.*, cow.
vaincre, *v.t.* (§ 429), conquer, defeat.
vaisseau, *s.m.*, ship.
valoir, *v.t. & i.* (§ 406), be worth, procure. *Valoir la peine*, be worth the trouble.
vanille, *s.f.*, vanilla.
vassal, *s.m.*, vassal.
vendre, *v.t.*, sell.
venir, *v.i.* (§ 395), come. *Venir de*, have just.
Venise, *s.f.*, Venice.
vent, *s.m.*, wind.
ver-à-soie, *s.m.*, silkworm.
verger, *s.m.*, orchard.
vérité, *s.f.*, truth.
vers, *prep.*, towards.
vertu, *s.f.*, virtue.
vertueu-x, -se, *adj.*, virtuous.
vêtir, *v.t.* (§ 393), clothe.
veuve, *s.f.*, widow.
viande, *s.f.*, meat.
vie, *s.f.*, life.
vieillard, *s.m.*, old man.
vieille, *s.f.*, old woman.
vieux (or **vieil**), **vieille**, *adj.*, old.
ville, *s.f.*, town.
vin, *s.m.*, wine.
vingt, *num. adj.*, twenty.
violent, -e, *adj.*, violent.
violette, *s.f.*, violet.
visite, *s.f.*, visit.
visiter, *v.t.*, visit.
vite, *adv.*, quickly.
vitrail, *s.m.*, stained-glass window.
vivre, *v.i.* (§ 427), live.
voici, here is, here are.
voilà, there is, there are.
voir, *v.t.* (§ 408), see.
voix, *s.f.*, voice.
votre, vos, *poss. adj.*, your.
vôtre (with *def. art.*), *poss. pron.*, yours.
vouloir, *v.t.* (§ 405), wish, will. *Veuillez*, have the goodness.
vous, *pers. pron.*, you.
voyage, *s.m.*, journey, voyage.
voyager, *v.i.*, travel.
voyageur, *s.m.*, traveller.
vrai, -e, *adj.*, true.
vu que, *conj.*, seeing that, whereas.
vue, *s.f.*, sight.

Y

yeux, *s.m. pl.*, eyes (*see* œil).

Z

zèle, *s.m.*, zeal.

II.—ENGLISH—FRENCH.

A

a, un, une.
able (to be), pouvoir (§ 404).
about (*of time*) vers; (*number*) quelque, environ.
absolutely, absolument.
absolve (to), absoudre (§ 425).
accident, accident (*m.*), sinistre (*m.*).
accompany (to), accompagner.
accomplish (to), accomplir.
accord, with one, d'un commun accord.
according to, selon.
accursed, maudit, -e.
accustomed (to be), être accoutumé.
acid, acide (*m.*).
acquire (to), acquérir (§ 398).
act (to), agir.
active, acti-f, -ve.
act-or, -ress, act-eur (*m.*), -rice (*f.*).
admire (to), admirer.
advance(to), avancer, s'avancer.
adventure, aventure (*f.*).
advice, avis (*m.*), conseil (*m.*).
advise (to), conseiller.
adviser, conseiller (*m.*).
afraid (to be), avoir peur, craindre (§ 430).
Africa, Afrique (*f.*).
after, après (*prep.*), après que (*conj.*).
afternoon, après-midi (*m.*).
again, encore, (*after a verb frequently translated by a verb compounded with* re-, *as* revenir, *come again*).
age, âge (*m.*). *The Middle Ages*, le moyen âge.
agitated, agité.
ago, il y a. *A week ago*, il y a huit jours.
agreeable, agréable.
air, air (*m.*),
Alexander, Alexandre (*m.*).
all, tout, -e, (*pl.*) tous, toutes. *At all*, du tout; *not at all*, pas du tout.
allegiance, allégeance (*f.*).
allow (to), permettre (§ 447).
almost, presque.
alone, seul, -e.
along, le long de.
already, déjà.
also, aussi.
although, quoique, bien que.
always, toujours.
a.m., du matin, le matin.
ambassador, ambassadeur (m.).
amiable, aimable.
among, parmi, chez.
amusing, amusant, -e.
an, un, -e.
ancestor, aïeul (*m.*).
ancestors, ancêtres (*m. pl.*), aïeux (*m. pl.*).
ancient, ancien, -ne. *The ancients*, les anciens.
and, et.
andante, andante (*m.*).
animal, animal (*m.*).
another, un (*or* une) autre. *Another time*, une autre fois.
answer, réponse (*f.*).
answer (to), répondre.
any, quelque; du, de la, de l', des; en. *Any more*, encore; *any one*, quelqu'un, personne.
apartment, appartement (*m.*).
appear (to), paraître (§ 414).
apple, pomme (*f*).
argue (to), arguer.
Aristides, Aristide (*m.*).
arm-chair, fauteuil (*m.*).
arrive (to), arriver.
art, art (*m.*). *The fine arts*, les beaux arts.

as, aussi, comme. *As . . . as*, aussi . . . que; *as for*, quant à; *as much as*, autant que; *as well as*, aussi bien que.
ask (**to**), demander.
assiduously, assidûment.
at, à. *At home*, chez soi, à la maison; *at last*, enfin; *at once*, tout de suite; *at one time*, autrefois; *at sight*, à livre ouvert; *at the house of*, chez.
Athens, Athènes (*f.*).
attached to (**to be**), tenir à (§ 394).
attain (**to**), atteindre (§ 431).
Augustus, Auguste (m.).
Australia, Australie (*f.*).
author, auteur (*m.*).
avow (**to**), avouer.
awake (**to**), s'éveiller, se réveiller.
axe, hache (*f.*), cognée (*f.*).

B

baby, bébé (*m.*).
bad, mauvais, -e. *Bad temper*, mauvaise humeur.
ball, bal (*m.*).
banish (**to**), bannir.
bare-footed, nu-pieds.
bare-headed, nu-tête.
basket, panier (*m.*), corbeille (*f.*).
bathe (**to**), se baigner.
battle, bataille (*f.*).
be (**to**), être (§ 449).
beach, plage (*f.*).
bear, ours (*m.*), ourse (*f.*).
beast, bête (*f.*).
beautiful, beau (*or* bel), belle.
beauty, beauté (*f.*).
because, parce que.
become (**to**), devenir (§ 395).
bed (**to go to**), se coucher.
bedroom, chambre (*f.*) à coucher.
before (*time*), avant; (*place*) devant.
beg for (**to**), prier, demander.
beggar, mendiant (*m.*).
begin (**to**), commencer. *Begin again* (*to*), recommencer.
behind, derrière.
behind (**to be**), être en retard.
believe (**to**), croire (§ 422).
belong (**to**), être, appartenir (§ 394).
bend (**to**), plier.
benefact-or, **-ress**, bienfait-eur (*m.*), -rice (*f.*).
best, le meilleur (*adj.*); le mieux (*adv.*).
better, meilleur (*adj.*); mieux (*adv.*). *It is better*, il vaut mieux; *to be better*, se porter mieux.
big, grand, -e.
bill, note (*f.*).
bite (**to**), mordre.
bitter, am-er, -ère, aigre. *Bitter-sweet*, aigre-doux.
black, noir, -e.
blindly, aveuglément.
blow (**to**), souffler.
blow, coup (*m.*).
blue, bleu, -e.
boil (**to**), bouillir (§ 377.)
book, livre (*m.*).
born, né, *past part. of* naître.
born (**to be**), naître (§ 417).
borrow (**to**), emprunter.
both, l'un et l'autre, tous les deux.
bottle, bouteille (*f.*).
boy, garçon (*m.*).
brave, brave, courageu-x, -se.
bread, pain (*m.*).
break (**to**), rompre, casser.
breakfast, déjeuner (*m.*)
breakfast (**to**), déjeuner.
briefly, brièvement.
bring (**to**), apporter.
brother, frère (*m.*) *Brother-in-law*, beau-frère (*m.*).
brown, brun, -e. *Bright brown*, châtain clair.
buck, chevreuil (*m.*), daim (*m.*).
building, édifice (*m.*).

bull, taureau (*m.*).
burn (**to**), brûler.
busy, occupé, -e.
but, mais.
butter, beurre (*m.*).
buy (**to**), acheter.
by, de, par; (*with a present participle*) en.

C

Caesar, César (*m.*).
call (**to**), appeler. *Called* (*to be*), se nommer, s'appeler.
can (*see* **able**).
capacity, capacité (*f.*).
captain, capitaine (*m.*).
carrier-pigeon, pigeon voyageur (*m.*).
case, cas (*m.*).
castle, château (*m.*).
cat, chat (*m.*), -te (*f.*). *Cat's-eye*, œil de chat (*m.*).
catch (**to**), attraper. *Catch a glimpse of* (*to*), entrevoir (§ 408).
cauliflower, chou-fleur (*m.*).
cause, cause (*f.*).
cause (**to**), causer, faire (§ 445). *Caused* (*to be*), se produire (§ 433).
cease (**to**), cesser.
celebrated, célèbre.
cellar, cave (*f.*).
certain, certain, -e.
change, monnaie (*f.*).
change (**to**), changer. *Change a plan* (*to*), changer de plan.
chapter, chapitre (*m.*).
charitable, charitable.
Charles V., Charles-Quint (*m.*).
charming, charmant, -e.
cheese, fromage (*m.*).
cherish (**to**), chérir.
cherry, cerise (*f.*).
child, enfant (*m.f.*).
Chinese, chinois, -e.
chisel, ciseau (*m.*).
choose (**to**), choisir.
Christian, chrétien, -ne.
church, église (*f.*).
citizen, citoyen (*m.*).
city, ville (*f.*).
clean, propre.
cleave (**to**), fendre.
clock, horloge (*f.*). *What o'clock is it?* Quelle heure es-til? *Two o'clock.* Deux heures.
cloud, nuage (*m.*).
coat, habit (*m.*).
cock, coq (*m.*).
coffee, café (*m.*). *Coffee with milk*, café au lait (*m.*).
cold, froid. *Cold* (*to be*), avoir froid; *it is cold*, il fait froid; *have a cold* (*to*), être enrhumé.
collect (**to**) (*taxes*), percevoir.
come (**to**), venir (§ 395). *Come in* (*to*), rentrer, entrer.
command (**to**), commander.
common, commun, -e. *Common soldier*, simple soldat.
compass, boussole (*f.*).
compel (**to**), forcer, obliger. *Compel oneself* (*to*), s'efforcer.
complain (**to**), se plaindre (§ 430).
complete, compl-et, -ète.
complexion, teint (*m.*).
compromise (**to**), compromettre (§ 447).
conceive (**to**), concevoir (§ 399).
concert, concert (*m.*).
conclude (**to**), conclure (§ 423).
conduct, conduite (*f.*).
congratulate (**to**), féliciter.
conquer (**to**), conquérir (§ 398), vaincre (§ 429).
consent (**to**), consentir (§ 382).
construct (**to**), construire (§ 434).
contain (**to**), contenir (§ 394).
continue (**to**), continuer.
convent, couvent (*m.*).
conversation, conversation (*f.*). *Private conversation*, tête-à-tête (*m.*).
convince (**to**), convaincre (§ 429).
cook, cuisin-ier (*m.*), -ière (*f.*).
cook (**to**), cuire (§ 435), faire (§ 445) la cuisine.
coral, corail (*m.*).
cost (**to**), coûter.

counsel, conseil (*m.*).
countess, comtesse (*f.*).
country, pays (*m.*); (*opposed to town*), campagne (*f.*); (*native land*), patrie (*f.*).
couple, couple (*m. & f.*).
courage, courage (*m.*).
cousin, cousin (*m.*), -e (*f.*).
cover (**to**), couvrir (§ 389).
cow, vache (*f.*).
cry, cri (*m.*).
cry (**to**), crier; pleurer.
cult, culte (*m.*).
cup, tasse (*f.*).
cupboard, armoire (*f.*).
cure (**to**), guérir.
cutlet, côtelette (*f.*).

D

dance (**to**), danser.
dancer, danseu-r (*m.*), -se (*f.*).
danger, danger (*m.*).
dare, oser.
daughter, fille (*f.*). *Daughter-in-law*, bru (*f.*), belle-fille (*f.*).
day, jour (*m.*), journée (*f.*).
dead, mort, -e. *Dead-drunk*, ivre mort.
deal (**a good** *or* **great**), beaucoup.
deceive (**to**), décevoir (§ 399).
defeat (**to**), conquérir (§ 398), vaincre (§ 429).
defect, défaut (*m.*).
demi-god, demi-dieu (*m.*).
descend (**to**), descendre.
deserve (**to**), mériter.
desire (**to**), désirer.
development, développement (*m.*).
devout, dévot, -e.
diamond, diamant (*m.*).
die (**to**), mourir (§ 397).
difficulty, difficulté (*f.*).
diligent, appliqué, -e.
dine (**to**), dîner.
dining-room, salle (*f.*) à manger.
dinner, dîner (*m.*).
direction, direction (*f.*).
directly, aussitôt, tout de suite.
disappear (**to**), disparaître (§ 414).
disastrous, désastreu-x, -se.
discovery, découverte (*f.*).
dismount (**to**), descendre de cheval.
displease (**to**), déplaire (§ 418).
dissolve (**to**), dissoudre (§ 425).
distract (**to**), distraire (§ 438).
disturb (**to**), déranger.
do (**to**), faire (§ 445).
doctor, médecin (*m.*), docteur (*m.*).
doe, daine (*f.*).
dog, chien (*m.*).
door, porte (*f.*).
doubt (**to**), douter.
dozen, douzaine (*f.*).
dream (**to**), songer, rêver.
dress, robe (*f.*).
dress (**to**), vêtir, se vêtir (§ 393), s'habiller.
drink (**to**), boire (§ 421).
drunkenness, ivresse (*f.*).
duke, duc (*m.*).
during, pendant.

E

each, chaque (*adj.*); chacun, -e (*pron.*).
early, de bonne heure.
easily, facilement.
eat (**to**), manger.
Edinburgh, Édimbourg (*m.*).
educate (**to**), élever.
effort, effort (*m.*).
egg, œuf (*m.*).
eight, huit.
eighteen, dix-huit.
eighty, quatre-vingts.
eleven, onze.
Eliza, Elise (*f.*).
embellish (**to**), embellir.
emp-eror, **-ress**, empereur (*m.*), impératrice (*f.*).
empire, empire (*m.*).
employ (**to**), employer. *Employed* (*to be*), s'employer.

enchant-er, -ress, enchant-eur (*m.*), -eresse (*f.*).
end, fin (*f.*).
end (**to**), finir.
enemy, ennemi (*m.*).
engagement, rendez-vous (*m.*).
England, Angleterre (*f.*).
English, anglais, -e.
enjoy (**to**), aimer, jouir de. *Enjoy oneself* (*to*), s'amuser.
ennoble (**to**), ennoblir.
enormously, énormément.
enough, assez.
enrich (**to**), enrichir.
enter (**to**), entrer.
estate, propriété (*f.*).
Europe, Europe (*f.*).
even, même.
evening, soir (*m.*).
event, événement (*m.*).
every, chaque, tout. *Everybody*, tout le monde, chacun ; *every day*, tous les jours ; *everything*, tout ; *everywhere*, partout.
evil, mal (*m.*), mauvais, -e, (*adj.*).
examination, examen (*m.*).
execution, exécution (*f.*).
expensive, cher, chère. *Expensive* (*to be*), coûter cher.
extremely, extrêmement.
eye, œil (*m.*), yeux (*pl.*).

F

face, figure (*f.*).
faithful, fidèle.
fall (**to**), tomber.
false, fau-x, -sse.
fan, éventail (*m.*).
father, père (*m.*).
fatigued (**to be**), être fatigué, se fatiguer.
fault, faute (*f.*).
favourite, favori, -te.
fear, crainte (*f.*), peur (*f.*).
fear (**to**), craindre (§ 430), avoir peur.
February, février (*m.*).
ferocious, féroce.
fetch (**to**), chercher, aller chercher, apporter.
fête, fête (*f.*).
field, champ (*m.*).
fierce, féroce.
fifteen, quinze.
fifteenth, quinzième.
fifth, cinquième ; (*of sovereigns and days of the month*) cinq, *but* Quint *in the forms* Charles-Quint, Sixte-Quint.
fifty, cinquante.
fight (**to**), combattre (§ 448).
fill (**to**), remplir.
find (**to**), trouver.
fine, beau (*or* bel), belle. *The fine arts*, les beaux arts.
finish (**to**), finir, achever.
fire, feu (*m.*) ; (*conflagration*), feu, incendie (*m.*).
fireman, pompier (*m.*).
first, premi-er, -ère, unième (*in compounds*). *First-born*, premier-né.
five, cinq. *Five minutes to six*, six heures moins cinq.
flattering, flatteu-r, -se.
Flemish, flamand, -e.
flower, fleur (*f.*).
fluently, couramment.
fog, brouillard (*m.*).
foggy (**it is**), il fait du brouillard.
follow (**to**), suivre (§ 439).
fond of (**to be**), aimer, tenir à.
foot, pied (*m.*).
for, pour. *To long for*, avoir envie de ; *for fear of*, de peur de . . . , de crainte de . . . ; *for fear that*, de peur que . . . ne (*subjunct.*), de crainte que . . . ne (*subjunct.*).
forbid (**to**), défendre, empêcher.
force oneself (**to**), s'efforcer.
forebode (**to**), **foreboding** (**to have a**), pressentir (§ 382).
foresee (**to**), prévoir (§ 472).
forest, forêt (*f.*).
forget (**to**), oublier.
formerly, autrefois.

forty, quarante. *About forty*, une quarantaine.
four, quatre.
fourteen, quatorze.
fourth, quatrième; (*of sovereigns and days of the month*) quatre.
fowl, poule (*f.*).
franc, franc (*m.*).
France, France (*f.*).
Francis, François (*m.*).
frankly, franchement.
freeze (**to**), geler (*impers.*).
French, français, -e. *Frenchman*, *Frenchwoman*, Français, -e.
frequent, fréquent, -e.
fresh, frais, fraîche. *Freshly-blown*, frais-éclos; *freshly-plucked*, frais-cueilli.
Friday, vendredi (*m.*).
friend, ami (*m.*), -e (*f.*).
from, de. *From time to time*, de temps en temps.
fruit, fruit (*m.*). *Preserved fruit*, fruits confits (*m.pl.*).
full, plein, -e, rempli, -e.
furnish (**to**), fournir.
further, plus loin, encore (*any more*).

G

gain (**to**), gagner.
game, jeu (*m.*).
gander, jars (*m.*).
garden, jardin (*m.*).
gather (**to**), cueillir (§ 388).
gendarme, gendarme (*m.*).
general, général (*m.*).
generally, ordinairement.
genius, génie (*m.*).
gentle, dou-x, -ce, aimable.
gentleman, monsieur (*m.*).
German, allemand, -e.
Germany, Allemagne (*f.*).
get possession of (**to**), s'emparer de.
get up, se lever.
girl, fille (*f.*).
give (**to**) donner. *Give back* (*to*), rendre; *give way* (*to*), s'écrouler.
glad, content, -e.
glass, verre (*m.*).
glimpse (**to catch a**), entrevoir (§ 408).
glove, gant (*m.*).
go (**to**), aller (§ 375); (*of a watch*) marcher. *Go away* (*to*), s'en aller; *go for a walk* (*to*), se promener; *go to bed* (*to*), se coucher; *go out* (*to*), sortir (§ 384), (*of a fire*) s'éteindre (§ 431); *go with* (*to*), accompagner.
godfather, parrain (*m.*).
godmother, marraine (*f.*).
good, bon, -ne.
good-bye, adieu.
goodness, bonté (*f.*).
goose, oie (*f.*).
gothic, gothique.
governess, institutrice (*f.*).
grammar, grammaire (*f.*).
grandfather, grand-père (*m.*).
grandmother, grand'mère (*f.*).
great, grand, -e.
greatly, beaucoup, fort, bien.
Greece, Grèce (*f.*).
Greek, grec, -que.
grief, douleur (*f.*).
grind (**to**), moudre (§ 424).
groan (**to**), gémir.
grow (**to**), croître (§ 416), grandir (*of persons*).
gun, fusil (*m.*).
gunpowder, poudre (*f.*) à canon.

H

hail (**to**), grêler (*impers.*).
hair, cheveux (*m.pl.*).
half, demi, -e. *Half an hour*, demi-heure (*f.*); *half-past two*, deux heures et demie.
halfpenny, sou (*m.*).
hand, main (*f.*).
handkerchief, mouchoir (*m.*).
handsome, (beau *or* bel), belle.

happen (**to**), arriver, se passer. *It happens*, il arrive.
happy, heureu-x, -se.
hard, dur, -e. *Hard of hearing* (*to be*), entendre dur.
hat, chapeau (*m.*).
have (**to**), avoir (§ 412). *Have rather* (*to*), préférer, aimer mieux.
he, il.
head, tête (*f.*).
health, santé (*f.*).
hear (**to**), entendre.
heat, chaleur (*f.*).
hen, poule (*f.*).
henceforth, désormais.
Henry, Henri (*m.*).
her, (*poss.*) son, sa, ses; (*pers.*) elle.
here, ici. *Here is, here are*, voici.
hero, héros (*m.*).
hers, le sien, etc.
hesitation, hésitation (*f.*).
high, haut.
his (*adj.*), son, sa, ses; (*pron.*), le sien, etc.
history, histoire (*f.*).
hitherto, jusqu'ici.
hold oneself up (**to**), se tenir droit (§ 394).
holiday, congé (*m.*). *The holidays*, les vacances (*f.pl.*).
Homer, Homère (*m.*).
honour, honneur (*m.*).
hope, espoir (*m.*), espérance (*f.*).
horse, cheval (*m.*).
hotel, hôtel (*m.*).
hour, heure (*f.*).
house, maison (*f.*).
how, comment. *How many*, combien; *how much*, combien.
however, cependant, pourtant, quelque.
hundred, cent.
hunger, faim (*f.*).
hungry (**to be**), avoir faim.
hunt-er, **-ress**, chass-eur (*m.*), -euse, -eresse (*f.*).
hurt (**to**), nuire à (§ 436). *To hurt oneself*, se nuire, se blesser.
husband, mari (*m.*).

I

I, je, moi.
idea, idée (*f.*).
idleness, paresse (*f.*), oisiveté (*f.*).
if, si.
ill, malade.
illusion, illusion (*f.*).
imagination, imagination (*f.*).
immediately, immédiatement, tout de suite.
important, important, -e.
impunity (**with**), impunément.
in, dans, en, à. *In front of*, en face de; *in order to*, pour; *in order that*, pour que; *in spite of*, malgré; *in time of*, en temps de.
increase (**to**), augmenter, croître (§ 416), s'accroître (§ 476), s'augmenter.
India, Inde (*f.*).
Indies, Indes (*f.pl.*).
indoors, à la maison.
indulgence, indulgence (*f.*).
inform (**to**), faire savoir à, faire part de . . . à (§ 445).
inhabitant, habitant (*m.*).
inhabited (**to be**), être habité.
injure (**to**), nuire à (§ 436). (*See* **hurt**).
ink, encre (*f.*).
insist (**to**), exiger.
instruct (**to**), instruire (§ 434).
intelligence, intelligence (*f.*).
interest, intérêt (*m.*).
interested in (**to be**), s'intéresser à.
introduce (**to**), introduire (§ 433).
invade (**to**), envahir.
invent (**to**), inventer.
invite (**to**), inviter.
it, le (*m.*), la (*f.*).
Italy, Italie (*f.*).

J

James, Jacques (*m.*).

January, janvier (*m.*).
jealous, jalou-x, -se.
jewel, bijou (*m.*).
jewellery, bijouterie (*f.*).
John, Jean (*m.*).
journey, voyage (*m.*).
joy, joie (*f.*).
judge (**to**), juger.
judge, juge (*m.*).
July, juillet (*m.*).
June, juin (*m.*).
just, juste.
just (**to have**), venir de (§ 395).

K

kill (**to**), tuer.
kind, aimable.
kind enough (**to be**), vouloir bien (§ 405). (*See* **vouloir**).
king, roi (*m.*).
knife, couteau (*m.*). *Penknife*, canif (*m.*).
know (**to**), savoir (§ 403); (*to be acquainted with*), connaître (§ 413).

L

labour, travail (*m.*).
lace, dentelle (*f.*).
lady, dame (*f.*). *Young lady*, demoiselle (*f.*).
language, langue (*f.*).
large, grand, -e.
last, derni-er, -ère.
late, tard; (*deceased*) feu, -e.
Latin, latin, -e.
laugh (**to**), rire (§ 440).
lead (**to**), conduire (§ 433).
leaf, feuille (*f.*).
learn (**to**), apprendre (§ 446).
learned, savant, -e, lettré, -e.
leave (**to**), quitter.
lend (**to**), prêter.
Lent, carême (*m.*). *Mid-Lent*, mi-carême (*f.*).
less, moins. *Less . . . than*, moins . . . que, moins . . . de.
lesson, leçon (*f.*), devoir (*m.*).
letter, lettre (*f.*).
library, bibliothèque (*f.*).
lie, mensonge (*m.*).
lie (**to**), mentir (§ 379).
life, vie (*f.*).
lighten (**to**), éclairer (*impers.*).
like (**to**), aimer.
like, semblable. *Like* (*to be*), ressembler à; *alike* (*to be*), se ressembler; *like that*, comme ça.
lily of the valley, muguet (*m.*).
lion, **-ess**, lion (*m.*), -ne (*f.*).
listen (**to**), écouter.
little, petit, -e; (*adv.*) peu. *A little more*, un peu plus.
live (**to**), vivre (§ 427); (*of residence*) demeurer. *Long live!* vive!
lively, vi-f, -ve.
London, Londres (*m.*).
long, long, -ue.
long time (**a**), longtemps (*adv.*).
look at (**to**), regarder.
look for (**to**), chercher.
lose (**to**), perdre. *Lose one's temper* (*to*), s'emporter.
love (**to**), aimer.

M

magnificent, magnifique.
make (**to**), faire (§ 445). *To have . . . . made*, faire faire; *make answer* (*to*), répondre.
mamma, maman (*f.*).
man, homme (*m.*).
many, beaucoup, plusieurs.
marchioness, marquise (*f.*).
market, marché (*m.*).
marquis, marquis (*m.*).
marry (**to**), marier, se marier, épouser.
Mary, Marie (*f.*).
master, maître (*m.*).
mathematics, mathématiques (*f.pl.*).
may (*see* **able**).
me, me, moi.

meal, repas (*m.*).
meat, viande (*f.*).
meet (to), rencontrer.
melt (to), fondre.
memory, souvenir (*m.*).
menagerie, ménagerie (*f.*).
merchant, marchand (*m.*).
metal, métal (*m.*).
midday, midi (*m.*).
middle, milieu (*m.*). *The Middle Ages*, le moyen âge.
Mid-Lent, la mi-carême.
midst (in the), au milieu.
mile, mille (*m.*).
milk, lait (*m.*).
mine, le mien, etc.
minute, minute (*f.*).
misfortune, malheur (*m.*).
Miss, mademoiselle (*f.*).
mistaken (to be), se tromper.
money, argent (*m.*).
monkey, singe (*m.*), guenon (*f.*).
month, mois (*m.*).
moon, lune (*f.*).
more, plus.
morning, matin (*m.*).
mortal, mortel, -le.
most, le plus.
mountain, montagne (*f.*).
mouse, souris (*f.*).
mouth, bouche (*f.*).
Mr., monsieur (*m.*).
much, beaucoup.
murder, meurtre (*m.*).
museum, musée (*m.*).
mushroom, champignon (*m.*).
mutton, mouton (*m.*).
my, mon, ma, mes.
mythology, mythologie (*f.*).

N

nail, clou (*m.*).
name, nom (*m.*).
Napoleon, Napoléon (*m.*).
nation, nation (*f.*).
national, national, -e.
natural, naturel, -le. *Natural history*, histoire naturelle (*f.*).
near, près de.
nearly, presque.
nearly . . . (to), faillir (§ 386).
necessary, nécessaire. *It is necessary*, il est nécessaire, il faut (§ 407).
need, besoin (*m.*).
negress, négresse (*f.*).
neither, *adj. & pron.*, ni l'un ni l'autre.
neither . . . nor, ni . . . ni.
nephew, neveu (*m.*).
never, ne . . . jamais.
new, neu-f, -ve, nouve-au (nouvel), -lle. *New-born*, nouveau-né; *new-comer*, nouveau-venu, dernier-venu.
news, nouvelles (*f.pl.*). *Have news (to)*; avoir des nouvelles.
newly-married, nouveau-marié.
newspaper, journal (*m.*).
niece, nièce (*f.*).
night, nuit (*f.*).
nine, neuf.
ninety, quatre-vingt-dix.
no, *adv.*, non; *adj.*, ne . . . . aucun, -e, ne . . . nul, -le.
nobody, no one, ne . . . personne.
noise, bruit (*m.*).
none, ne . . . nul, -le.
noon, midi (*m.*).
Norman, normand, -e.
not, ne . . . pas, non. *Not always*, pas toujours; *not at all*, pas du tout; *not yet*, pas encore.
nothing, ne . . . rien.
nourish (to), nourrir.
November, novembre (*m.*).
now, à présent.
nowhere, nulle part.
number, nombre (*m.*); (*of a room or house*), numéro (*m.*).
nurse, nourrice (*f.*).

O

oath, serment (*m.*).
obey (to), obéir.

obliged (**to be**), être obligé.
occasion, occasion (*f.*). *There is no occasion*, il n'y a pas de quoi.
o'clock, (**five**), cinq heures.
odour, odeur (*f.*).
of, de.
offer (**to**), offrir (§ 390).
often, souvent.
ogress, ogresse (*f.*).
oil, huile (*f.*).
old, vieux (*or* vieil), vieille, agé, -e. *Old man*, vieillard (*m.*); *old woman*, vieille (*f.*).
olive-tree, olivier (*m.*).
omelette, omelette (*f.*).
on, sur, en. *On account of*, à cause de; *on the way to*, *about to*, en train de.
once, une fois. *Once* (*at*), tout de suite.
one, un, -e; (*people*) on. *Oneself*, soi, soi-même.
only, (*adj.*) seul, unique; (*adv.*) seulement, ne . . . que.
open (**to**), ouvrir (§ 391); (*of flowers*) éclore (§ 499).
open air, plein air (*m.*).
opinion, opinion (*f.*), idée (*f.*).
orange, orange (*inv. as adj.*).
orchard, verger (*m.*).
order(**to**), commander, ordonner.
order, ordre (*m.*).
other, autre.
others, les autres; autrui (*inv.*).
ought, devoir (§ 400).
our, notre, nos.
out of, hors de.
owe (**to**), devoir (§ 400).
owl, hibou (*m.*).

P

pack up (**to**), emballer, faire sa malle (§ 445).
page (*of a book*), page (*f.*).
paint, peindre (§ 431).
painter, peintre (*m.*).
pair, paire (*f.*). *Pair of trousers*, pantalon (*m. sing.*).
palace, palais (*m.*).
pale (*of colour*), tendre.
parents, parents (*m.pl.*).
parrot, perroquet (*m.*), perruche (*f.*).
partridge, perdrix (*f.*).
pass (**to**), passer.
passers-by, passants (*m.pl.*).
past, passé (*m.*). *Half-past two*, deux heures et demie; *ten minutes past two*, deux heures dix.
path, sentier (*m.*), chemin (*m.*).
Pavia, Pavie (*f.*).
pay (**to**), payer.
pay, solde (*f.*).
peace, paix (*f.*).
peaceful, paisible.
pear, poire (*f.*).
pearl, perle (*f.*).
peasant, paysan (*m.*), -ne, (*f.*).
pen, plume (*f.*).
penknife, canif (*m.*).
penny, deux sous (*m.pl.*).
people, peuple (*m.*); monde (*m.*), gens (*m.f.pl.*); (*they*, *one*) on.
perceive(**to**), apercevoir, s'apercevoir (§ 399).
perish (**to**), périr.
permission, permission (*f.*).
Persia, Perse (*f.*).
person, personne (*f.*). *Persons who*, ceux qui.
personage, personnage (*m.*).
persuade (**to**), persuader.
Philip, Philippe (*m.*).
philosopher, philosophe (*m.*).
picture, tableau (*m.*).
pigeon, pigeon (*m.*).
pink, rose.
place, lieu (*m.*), place (*f.*).
plan, plan (*m.*). *Change one's plan* (*to*), changer de plan.
Plato, Platon (*m.*).
play, pièce (*f.*).
play (**to**), jouer.
please (**to**), plaire (§ 418). *If you please*, s'il vous plaît.
pleasure, plaisir (*m.*).
plump, gras, -se.

poet, poète (*m.*).
politely, poliment.
poor, pauvre.
possess (**to**), posséder.
possession of (**to take** or **get**), s'emparer de.
possible, possible. *As soon as possible*, le plus tôt possible.
potato, pomme (*f.*) de terre.
poultry, volaille (*f.*).
pound, livre (*f.*).
praise (**to**), louer.
prefer (**to**), préférer, aimer mieux.
prejudice, préjugé (*m.*).
present, cadeau (*m.*).
present (**to**), présenter.
preserve (**to**), conserver; (*of fruit*) confire (§ 442).
preserved fruits, fruits confits (*m.pl.*)
pretty, joli, -e.
prevail (**to**), prévaloir (§ 471).
prevent (**to**), empêcher.
pride, orgueil (*m.*).
prince, **-ss**, prince (*m.*), -sse (*f.*).
printing, imprimerie (*f.*).
private, particulier. *Private soldier*, simple soldat (*m.*).
probity, probité (*f.*).
problem, problème (*m.*).
promise (**to**), promettre (§ 447).
promise, promesse (*f.*).
provided that, pourvu que.
provisions, vivres (*m.pl.*).
public, publi-c, -que.
punish (**to**), punir.
pupil, élève (*m.f.*).
pure, pur, -e.
purpose (**on**), exprès.
purse, bourse (*f.*).
pursue (**to**), poursuivre (§ 439).
put (**to**), mettre (§ 447).

Q

quality, qualité (*f.*).
quarter, quart (*m.*); (*part, district*) quartier (*m.*).
queen, reine (*f.*).
question, question (*f.*). *It is a question of*, il s'agit de.
quickly, vite.
quiet, tranquil, -le.
quite, tout à fait, tout.

R

railway station, gare (*f.*).
rain (**to**), pleuvoir (§ 402).
rain, pluie (*f.*).
rainbow, arc-en-ciel (*m.*).
ram, bélier (*m.*).
rare, rare.
rarely, rarement.
rather, plutôt; (*somewhat*) un peu; (*tolerably*) assez. *I would rather*, j'aime mieux, j'aimerais mieux.
read (**to**), lire (§ 419).
ready, prêt, -e.
reality, réalité (*f.*).
recall (**to**), rappeler.
receive (**to**), recevoir (§ 399).
recount (**to**), raconter.
red, rou-x, -sse.
reed, roseau (*m.*).
re-establish (**to**), rétablir.
reflect (**to**), réfléchir.
refresh (**to**), rafraîchir.
refuse (**to**), refuser.
regret (**to**), regretter.
rejoin (**to**), rejoindre (§ 432), se rejoindre à.
remain (**to**), rester.
remember (**to**), se rappeler, se souvenir de (§ 395).
remembrance, souvenir (*m.*).
render (**to**), rendre. *Render oneself master* (*to*), se rendre maître.
repent (**to**), se repentir (§ 381).
republic, république (*f.*).
require (**to**), falloir (§ 407) (*impers.*), avoir besoin de.
re-sew (**to**), recoudre (§ 428).
resolve (**to**), résoudre (§ 426).

respect, respect (*m.*).
rest, repos (*m.*).
rest (to), se reposer.
return (to), revenir (§ 395), retourner; (*give back*), rendre.
revenue, revenu (*m.*).
ribbon, ruban (*m.*).
rich, riche.
right (to be), avoir raison.
ring with (to), rententir de.
rise (to), se lever.
river, fleuve (*m.*), rivière (*f.*).
road, chemin (*m.*).
roe, chevrette (*f.*).
roebuck, chevreuil (*m.*).
room, chambre (*f.*).
rose, rose (*f.*).
round, rond, -e.
round (*prep.*), autour de.
route, route (*f.*).
royal, royal, -e.
rumour, bruit (*m.*).
run (to), courir (§ 396).
Russian, russe.

S

sad, triste.
sailor, matelot (*m.*), marin (*m.*).
saint, saint (*m.*), -e (*f.*).
same, même. *All the same*, quand même, tout de même.
Saturday, samedi (*m.*).
saucepan, casserole (*f.*).
save (*except*), sauf, excepté.
say (to), dire (§ 443).
scanty, étroit, -e, faible, pauvre, maigre.
school, école (*f.*).
scold (to), gronder.
Scotland, Ecosse (*f.*).
sea, mer (*f.*).
seat oneself (to), s'asseoir (§ 409).
second, second, -e, deuxième; (*of sovereigns and days of the month*) deux. *Second-hand*, d'occasion.
see (to), voir (§ 408).
seek (to), chercher, aller chercher.
seem (to), sembler, paraître (§ 414).
selfishness, égoïsme (*m.*).
self-styled, soi-disant.
sell (to), vendre, se vendre.
send (to), envoyer (§ 376). *Send away* (*to*), congédier; *send back* (*to*), renvoyer (§ 376).
sense, sens (*m.*).
separate (to), séparer, se séparer.
servant, domestique (*m.f.*).
serve (to), servir (§ 383).
set to work (to), se mettre à (§ 447), commencer.
seven, sept.
seventeen, dix-sept.
seventh, septième, sept.
seventy, soixante-dix.
several, plusieurs.
severity, sévérité (*f.*).
sew (to), coudre (§ 428).
she, elle.
she-bear, ourse (*f.*).
she-parrot, perruche (*f.*).
sheep, brebis (*f.*), mouton (*m.*).
ship, navire (*m.*).
shirt, chemise (*f.*).
shoe, soulier (*f.*).
short frocks (in), court-vêtu, -e.
show (to), montrer.
shut (to), fermer.
sight (at), à livre ouvert.
silence, silence (*m.*).
silent (to be), se taire (§ 420).
silk, soie (*f.*).
sin, péché (*m.*).
since, depuis.
sincere, sincère.
sing (to), chanter.
singer, chanteu-r (*m.*), -se (*f.*); (*professional*) cantatrice (*f.*).
sir, monsieur (*m.*).
sister, sœur (*f.*). *Sister-in-law*, belle-sœur (*f.*); *twin-sister*, sœur jumelle (*f.*).
sit (to), s'asseoir (§ 409).

sit down (to), s'asseoir (§ 409). *Sit down again (to)*, se rasseoir (§ 409).
situation, situation (*f.*).
six, six.
sixteen, seize.
sixth, sixième, six.
sixty, soixante.
skate (to), patiner.
sky, ciel (*m.*).
slave, esclave (*m.f.*).
sleep (to), dormir (§ 378).
slipper, pantoufle (*f.*).
slowly, lentement.
small, petit, -e.
smell (to), sentir (§ 382).
smell, parfum (*m.*), odeur (*f.*).
smile (to), sourire (§ 440).
snow, neige (*f.*).
so, si, aussi. *So . . . as*, aussi . . . que, si . . . que; *so much*, autant.
softly, doucement.
soldier, soldat (*m.*). *Common soldier*, simple soldat.
solve (to), résoudre (§ 426).
some, de, du, de l', des; en; quelque. *Some one*, quelqu'un; *something*, quelque chose; *sometimes*, quelquefois.
son, fils (*m.*).
soon, bientôt.
sorry, fâché, -e.
south, midi (*m.*).
Spain, Espagne (*f.*).
Spanish, espagnol, -e.
speak (to), parler. *Speak out (to)*, parler haut; *speak explicitly (to)*, parler net.
spectacles, lunettes (*f.pl.*).
spell (to), épeler. *Be spelt (to)*, s'épeler.
spend (to), dépenser; (*of time*), passer.
spoil (to), gâter.
spread (to), répandre, se répandre.
spy, espion (*m.*).
stained-glass window, vitrail (*m.*).
staircase, escalier (*m.*).
stammer (to), bégayer.
stamp (to), affranchir.
start (to), partir (§ 380), tressaillir (§ 385).
start (with a), en sursaut.
station, gare (*f.*).
statue, statue (*f.*).
stay (to), rester.
steamboat, bateau (*m.*) à vapeur.
still, encore. *Still more*, encore plus.
stop (to), arrêter, s'arrêter; (*at an hotel*), descendre.
story, histoire (*f.*), conte (*m.*).
straw, paille (*f.*). *Straw-coloured*, paille (*inv. adj.*).
street, rue (*f.*).
strength, force (*f.*).
strengthen (to), affermir.
stretch out (to), étendre, s'étendre.
strike (to), frapper; (*of clocks*), sonner.
strong, fort, -e.
study (to), étudier.
subdue (to), soumettre (§ 447), vaincre (§ 429), conquérir (§ 398).
subject, sujet (*m.*).
subject (to), assujettir.
suburbs, environs (*m. pl.*).
succeed (to), (*be successful*) réussir; (*follow*) succéder.
succeeding (*following*), suivant, -e.
such, tel, -le.
sudden (on a), soudainement.
sufficient, assez.
sufficiently, assez.
sugar, sucre (*m.*).
summer, été (*m.*).
summit, sommet (*m.*).
sun, soleil (*m.*).
Sunday, dimanche (*m.*).
supposing that, supposé que.
surprise (to), surprendre.
sure, sûr, -e.

survi e (to), survivre (§ 427).
swear (to), jurer.
sweet, dou-x, -ce.
swell (to), (*of a river*) s'accroître (§ 476).
Switzerland, Suisse (*f.*).
sword, épée (*f.*).

T

table, table (*f.*).
take (to), prendre (§ 446), conduire (§ 433). *Take possession of* (*to*), s'emparer de; *take a walk* (*to*), se promener.
talk (to), parler; (*chat*) causer.
tall, grand, -e.
task, travail (*m.*).
taste, goût (*m.*).
taste (to), goûter.
tea, thé (*m.*).
teacup, tasse (*f.*), à thé.
Telemachus, Télémaque (*m.*).
tell (to), dire (§ 443). *Tell a lie* (*to*), mentir (§ 379).
temper, humeur (*f.*). *Bad temper*, mauvais caractère; *lose one's temper* (*to*), s'emporter.
ten, dix.
terrify (to), épouvanter.
than, que. *More than ten*, plus de dix.
that, (*dem. adj.*) ce, cet, cette, (*emphatic*) ce . . . là; (*dem. pron.*) ce, cela; celui, celle; celui-là, celle-là; (*rel. pron.*) qui, que; (*conj.*) que.
the, le, la, les.
theatre, théâtre (*m.*).
theft, vol (*m.*).
their, leur, leurs.
theirs, le leur, etc.
then, alors, à cette époque, donc, puis.
theory, théorie (*f.*).
there, là, y. *There is, there are*, il y a; voilà.
these, ces.
they, ils, elles; eux; ceux, celles.
thick, épais, -se.
thine, le tien, etc.
thing, chose (*f.*). *Your things*, vos affaires.
think (to), penser, croire (§ 422). *Think of* (*to*), penser à.
thinly-sown, clairsemé, -e.
thirteen, treize.
thirty, trente.
this, (*dem. adj.*) ce, cet, cette, (*emphatic*) ce . . . -ci, (*dem. pron.*) ce, ceci; celui-ci, celle-ci.
thought, pensée (*f.*).
thousand, mille, mil.
threaten (to), menacer.
three, trois. *Threepence*, six sous; *three-quarters*, trois quarts.
throw away (to), jeter.
Thursday, jeudi (*m.*).
thus, ainsi.
thy, ton, ta, tes.
tig-er, -ress, tigre (*m.*), -sse (*f.*).
till, jusqu'à.
time, temps (*m.*), fois (*f.*). *In time of*, en temps de; *from time to time*, de temps en temps; *three times*, trois fois.
time-table, indicateur (*m.*).
timid, timide.
tire (to), fatiguer, se fatiguer.
to, à. *In order to*, pour, afin de; *into*, en; *ten minutes to one*, une heure moins dix.
to-day, aujourd'hui.
to-morrow, demain.
too, trop; (*as well*) aussi.
towards, vers, envers.
towel, essuie-mains (*m.*).
town, ville (*f.*).
town-hall, hôtel (*m.*) de ville.
toy, joujou (*m.*).
tradition, tradition (*f.*), souvenir (*m.*).
train, train (*m.*).
traitor, traître (*m.*).
tramway, tramway (*m.*).
translate, (to), traduire (§ 433).
travel (to), voyager.

traverse (**to**), parcourir (§ 396), traverser.
tree, arbre (*m.*).
tremble (**to**), tressaillir (§ 385).
trousers (**pair of**), pantalon (*m. sing.*).
true, vrai, -e.
try (**to**), essayer, tâcher.
Tuesday, mardi (*m.*).
turkey-hen, dinde (*f.*).
turn (**to**), tourner, se tourner. *Turn over leaves* (*to*), feuilleter.
turn pale (**to**), pâlir.
twelve, douze, midi (*noon*), minuit (*midnight*).
twenty, vingt.
twice, deux fois.
twin, jum-eau, -elle.
two, deux.

U

uncle, oncle (*m.*).
understand (**to**), comprendre (§ 446).
unfortunate, malheureu-x, -se.
unite (**to**), unir.
university, université (*f.*).
unless, à moins que . . . ne.
unseal (**to**), décacheter.
unsew (**to**), découdre (§ 428).
until, (*prep.*) jusqu'à; (*conj.*) jusqu'à ce que.
unwell, souffrant, -e.
use (**to**), employer.
use (**to be of**), servir (§ 383).
used (**to be**), s'employer.
useful, utile.
utter (**to**), pousser.

V

vegetation, végétation (*f.*).
Vergil, Virgile (*m.*).
very, très.
very much, beaucoup, très.
violet, violette (*f.*).
virtue, vertu (*f.*).
virtuous, vertueu-x, -se.
visit (**to**), visiter.
vivid, vi-f, -ve.
voice, voix (*f.*).
voyage, voyage (*m.*).

W

wages, gages (*m. pl.*).
wait for (**to**), attendre.
waiter, garçon (*m.*).
wake (**to**), s'éveiller, se réveiller.
walk (**to**), se promener, marcher.
walk (**to go for a**), se promener, faire une promenade, aller se promener.
walk, promenade (*f.*).
want (**to**), (*wish*) vouloir (§ 405); (*need*) avoir besoin de.
war, guerre (*f.*).
watch, montre (*f.*).
water, eau (*f.*).
wave (**to**), agiter.
way, (*road*) chemin (*m.*); (*manner*) manière (*f.*).
we, nous.
weaken (**to**), affaiblir.
wear (**to**), porter. *Wear out* (*to*), user.
week, semaine (*f.*).
weep (**to**), pleurer.
well (*adv.*), bien.
well (**to be**), se porter bien.
what, (*adj.*) quel, -le; (*inter. pron.*) que, quoi; (*rel. pron.*) ce qui, ce que.
whatever, (*adj.*) quel que, quelconque; (*pron.*) quoi que.
when, quand, lorsque.
where, où.
which, (*adj.*) quel, -le; (*inter-pron.*) qui, lequel, (*rel. pron.*) qui, que, lequel, quoi.
while, quand, pendant que; (*with pers. part.*) en.
white, blanc, -he.
who, (*inter.*) qui; (*rel.*) qui, lequel.
whoever, quiconque.
whole, tout, -e.

why, pourquoi.
widow, veuve (*f.*).
widower, veuf (*m.*).
wife, femme (*f.*).
wild beast, bête sauvage (*f.*).
William, Guillaume (*m.*).
window, fenêtre (*f.*). *Out of the window*, par la fenêtre.
wine, vin (*m.*).
wine-glass, verre (*m.*) à vin.
wish, souhait (*m.*).
wish (to), vouloir (§ 405), désirer.
with, avec.
without, sans.
woman, femme (*f.*).
wood, bois (*m.*).
woodcutter, bûcheron (*m.*).
word, mot (*m.*), parole (*f.*).
work, travail (*m.*), œuvre (*f.*) (*of an author*).
work (to), travailler.
world, monde (*m.*).
worst, (*adj.*) le pire, le plus mauvais; (*adv.*) le pis, le plus mal.
worth (to be), valoir (§ 406).
wound (to), blesser.
write (to), écrire (§ 437).

Y

yard, yard (*m.*), mètre (*m.*).
year, an (*m.*), année (*f.*). *The new year*, la nouvelle année (*f.*).
yes, oui.
yesterday, hier.
yet, encore.
you, vous.
young, jeune; (*young ones of animals*) petits.
your, votre, vos.
yours, le *or* la vôtre, les vôtres.
yourself, vous-même.

Select List of Books

IN THE

University Tutorial Series

PUBLISHED AT THE

UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENCE COLLEGE PRESS

(W. B. CLIVE, 13 BOOKSELLERS ROW, LONDON, W.C.)

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
LATIN AND GREEK CLASSICS	3-5
LATIN AND GREEK GRAMMARS, ETC.	6
ROMAN AND GRECIAN HISTORY	7
FRENCH	8
ENGLISH HISTORY	8
ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE	9
ENGLISH CLASSICS	10
MENTAL AND MORAL SCIENCE	11
MATHEMATICS AND MECHANICS	12, 13
CHEMISTRY	14
BIOLOGY	14
PHYSICS	15
DIRECTORIES—THE UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENT	16
THE ORGANIZED SCIENCE SERIES	16

A List of Books for London University Students, classified for the various Examinations, List of Books for the Cambridge and Oxford Locals and the College of Preceptors Examinations, and also the Complete Catalogue of the University Tutorial Series, may be had post free on application to W. B. CLIVE, University Correspondence College Press Warehouse, 13 Booksellers Row, Strand, W.C.

JULY, 1898.

The University Tutorial Series.

General Editor: WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.C.S., F.R.A.S.
Classical Editor: B. J. HAYES, M.A.

The object of the UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES is to provide candidates for examinations and learners generally with text-books which shall convey in the simplest form sound instruction in accordance with the latest results of scholarship and scientific research. Important points are fully and clearly treated, and care has been taken not to introduce details which are likely to perplex the beginner.

The Publisher will be happy to entertain applications from Schoolmasters for specimen copies of any of the books mentioned in this List.

SOME PRESS OPINIONS.

"The special use of such manuals as those published by the University Correspondence College is that they help the student to systematise his knowledge, and also indicate clearly and definitely the plan to be pursued."—*Journal of Education.*

"This series of educational works, now almost forming a scholastic library in itself."—*Educational Review.*

"The more we see of these excellent manuals the more highly do we think of them."—*Schoolmaster.*

"We have often had occasion to speak in terms of high praise of the University Correspondence College Tutorial Series."—*Board Teacher.*

"As near perfection as can be desired."—*Teachers' Aid.*

"This valuable library."—*School Board Chronicle.*

"This excellent and widely appreciated series."—*Freeman's Journal.*

"The notes have the merit of brevity and practical directness."—*Guardian.*

"Marked by the clearness and thoroughness that characterize the series."—*Educational Times.*

"The work of men who have proved themselves to be possessed of the special qualifications necessary."—*School Guardian.*

"By this time every one knows the material and uniform excellence of this series."—*Practical Teacher.*

"The evident care, the clearly conceived plan, the genuine scholarship, and the general excellence of the productions in this series, give them, for the special purpose they are intended to accomplish, high claims to commendation—especially the commendation of diligent use."—*Educational News.*

"This useful series of text-books."—*Nature.*

"Has done excellent work in promoting higher education."—*Morning Post.*

Latin and Greek Classics.

(*See also page* 4.)

The following are among the editions of LATIN and GREEK CLASSICS contained in the UNIVERSITY TUTORIAL SERIES, and are on the following plan:—

A short INTRODUCTION gives an account of the Author and his chief works, the circumstances under which he wrote, and his style, dialect, and metre, where these call for notice.

The TEXT is based on the latest and best editions, and is clearly printed in large type.

The distinctive feature of the NOTES is the omission of parallel passages and controversial discussions of difficulties, and stress is laid on all the important points of grammar and subject-matter. Information as to persons and places mentioned is grouped together in a HISTORICAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX; by this means the expense of procuring a Classical Dictionary is rendered unnecessary.

The standard of proficiency which the learner is assumed to possess varies in this series according as the classic dealt with is usually read by beginners or by those who have already made considerable progress A complete list is given overleaf.

Caesar.—Gallic War, Book I. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and F. G. PLAISTOWE, M.A. Camb. 1s. 6d.

"A clearly printed text, a good introduction, an excellent set of notes, and a historical and geographical index, make up a very good edition at a very small price."—*Schoolmaster.*

Cicero.—De Amicitia. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. 1s. 6d.

Cicero.—De Senectute. By the same Editors. 1s. 6d.

"The notes, although full, are simple."—*Educational Times.*

Horace.—Odes, Books I.–III. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and B. J. HAYES, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 1s. 6d. each.

"Notes which leave no difficulty unexplained."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The Notes (on Book III.) are full and good, and nothing more can well be demanded of them."—*Journal of Education.*

Livy. Book I. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"The notes are concise, dwelling much on grammatical points and dealing with questions of history and archæology in a simple but interesting fashion."—*Education.*

Vergil.—Aeneid, Book I. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. 1s. 6d.

Xenophon.—Anabasis, Book I. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and F. L. D. RICHARDSON, B.A. Lond. 1s. 6d.

"The notes are all that could be desired."—*Schoolmaster.*

Editions of Latin and Greek Classics.

(INTRODUCTION, TEXT, AND NOTES.)

	s.	d.
AESCHYLUS—Persae	3	6
,, Prometheus ..	2	6
,, Sep. C. Thebas	3	6
ARISTOPHANES—Ranae....	3	6
CAESAR—Gallic War, Bk. 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, each	1	6
,, ,, Bk. 1, Ch. 1-29	1	6
,, Gallic War, Bk. 7	2	6
,, Gallic War, Bk. 7, Ch. 1-68	1	6
CICERO—Ad Atticum, Bk. 4	3	6
,, De Amicitia	1	6
,, De Finibus, Bk. 1	2	6
,, De Finibus, Bk. 2	3	6
,, De Senectute	1	6
,, In Catilinam I. ..	1	6
,, Pro Archia	1	6
,, Pro Balbo	1	6
,, Pro Cluentio	3	6
,, Pro Marcello	1	6
,, Pro Milone	3	6
,, Pro Plancio.....	2	6
DEMOSTHENES — Androtion	4	6
,, Meidias..	5	0
EURIPIDES—Alcestis	3	6
,, Andromache ..	3	6
,, Bacchae.....	3	6
,, Hippolytus ..	3	6
HERODOTUS—Bk. 3	4	6
,, Bk. 6	2	6
,, Bk. 8	3	6
HOMER—Iliad, Bk. 6.....	1	6
,, Iliad, Bk. 24	3	6
,, Odyssey, Bks. 9, 10	2	6
,, Odyssey, Bks. 11, 12	2	6
,, Odyssey, Bks. 13, 14	2	6
,, Odyssey, Bk. 17..	1	6
HORACE—Epistles	3	6
,, Epodes	1	6
,, Odes	4	6

	s.	d.
HORACE—Odes, each Book	1	6
,, Satires	4	6
JUVENAL—Satires, 1, 3, 4..	3	6
,, Satires, 8, 10, 13	2	6
,, Satires, 11, 13, 14	3	6
LIVY—Bks. 1, 5, 21, each..	2	6
,, Bks. 3, 6, 9, each ..	3	6
,, Bk. 21, Ch. 1-30 ..	1	6
,, Bk. 22, Ch. 1-51 ..	2	6
NEPOS — Hannibal, Cato, Atticus	1	0
OVID—Fasti, Bks. 3, 4	2	6
,, Heroides, 1, 5, 12 ..	1	6
,, Metamorphoses, Bk. 11	1	6
,, Metamorphoses, Bk. 13	1	6
,, Metamorphoses, Bk. 14	1	6
,, Tristia, Bk. 1.....	1	6
,, Tristia, Bk. 3.....	1	6
PLATO—Laches	3	6
,, Phaedo	3	6
SALLUST—Catiline	2	6
SOPHOCLES—Ajax	3	6
,, Antigone	2	6
,, Electra	3	6
TACITUS—Annals, Bk. 1 ..	3	6
,, Annals, Bk. 2 ..	2	6
,, Histories, Bk. 1.	3	6
TERENCE—Adelphi	3	6
THUCYDIDES—Bk. 7	3	6
VERGIL—Aeneid, Books I.-XII., each	1	6
,, Eclogues	3	6
,, Georgics, Bks. 1, 2	3	6
XENOPHON—Anabasis, Bk. 1	1	6
,, Anabasis, Bk. 4	3	6
,, Cyropaedeia, 1	3	6
,, Hellenica, 3..	3	6
,, Hellenica, 4..	3	6
,, Oeconomicus..	4	6

Vocabularies and Test Papers.

The VOCABULARY contains, arranged in the order of the Text, words with which the learner is likely to be unacquainted. The principal parts of verbs are given, and (when there is any difficulty about it) the parsing of the word as it occurs in the Text. The Vocabulary is interleaved with writing paper.

Two series of TEST PAPERS are, as a rule, provided, of which the first and easier series is devoted entirely to translation, accidence, and very elementary points of Syntax; the second, which is intended for use the last time the book is read through, deals with more advanced points.

	s.	d.
ACTS OF APOSTLES	1	0
CAESAR—Gallic War, Bk. 1	1	0
,, Gallic War, Bk. 2	1	0
,, Gallic War, Bk. 3	1	0
,, Gallic War, Bk. 5	1	0
,, Gallic War, Bk. 6	1	0
,, Gallic War, Bk. 7	1	6
CICERO—De Amicitia	1	0
,, De Senectute	1	0
,, In Catilinam I.	1	0
,, In Catilinam III.	1	0
,, Pro Archia	1	0
,, Pro Balbo	1	0
,, Pro Cluentio	1	0
,, Pro Marcello	1	0
,, Pro Milone	1	0
,, Pro Plancio	1	0
EURIPIDES—Ion	1	0
,, Bacchae	1	0
,, Hippolytus	1	0
HERODOTUS—Bk. 3	1	0
,, Bk. 6	1	0
,, Bk. 8	1	0
HOMER—Iliad, Bk. 6	1	0
,, Odyssey, Bk. 17	1	0
HORACE—Epistles	1	0
,, Odes, Bks. 1-4, each	1	0
,, Satires	1	0
LIVY—Bk. 1	1	0
,, Bk. 3	1	0
,, Bk. 5	1	0
,, Bk. 6	1	0

	s.	d.
LIVY—Bk. 9	1	0
,, Bk. 21	1	0
,, Bk. 22, Ch. 1-51	1	6
OVID—Fasti, Bks. 3 and 4	1	0
,, Heroides, 1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 12	1	6
,, Metamorphoses, Bk. 11	1	0
,, Metamorphoses, Bk. 13	1	0
,, Metamorphoses, Bk. 14	1	0
,, Tristia, Bk. 1	1	0
,, Tristia, Bk. 3	1	0
PLATO—Laches	1	0
SALLUST—Catiline	1	0
SOPHOCLES—Antigone	1	0
,, Electra	1	0
TACITUS—Annals, Bk. 1	1	0
,, Histories, Bk. 1	1	0
VERGIL—Aeneid, Bk. 1	1	0
,, Aeneid, Bk. 2	1	0
,, Aeneid, Bk. 3	1	0
,, Aeneid, Bk. 5	1	0
,, Aeneid, Bk. 6	1	0
,, Aeneid, Bk. 7	1	0
,, Aeneid, Bk. 8	1	0
,, Aeneid, Bks. 9, 10	1	0
,, Eclogues	1	0
,, Georgics, Bks. 1, 2	1	0
XENOPHON—Anabasis, Bk. 1	1	0
,, Cyropaedeia, Bks. 1 and 5, each	1	0
,, Oeconomicus	1	0

A detailed catalogue of the above can be obtained on application.

Latin and Greek.

Grammars and Readers.

The Tutorial Greek Reader, or Prooemia Graeca. By A. Waugh Young, M.A. Lond., Gold Medallist in Classics, Assistant Examiner at the University of London. 2s. 6d.

The Tutorial Greek Grammar. [*In preparation.*

Higher Greek Reader: A Course of 132 Extracts from the best writers, in Three Parts, with an appendix containing the Greek Unseens set at B.A. Lond. 1877-1897. 3s. 6d.

The Tutorial Latin Grammar. By B. J. Hayes, M.A. Lond. and Camb., and W. F. Masom, M.A. Lond. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Practical experience in teaching and thorough familiarity with details are plainly recognisable in this new Latin Grammar. Great pains have been taken to bring distinctly before the mind all those main points which are of fundamental importance and require firm fixture in the memory."—*Educational News.*

"It is accurate and full without being overloaded with detail, and varieties of type are used with such effect as to minimise the work of the learner. Tested in respect of any of the crucial points, it comes well out of the ordeal."—*Schoolmaster.*

The Tutorial Latin Grammar, Exercises and Test Questions on. By F. L. D. Richardson, B.A. Lond., and A. E. W. Hazel, LL.D., M.A., B.C.L. 1s. 6d.

"This will be found very useful by students preparing for University examinations."—*Westminster Review.*

The Preceptors' Latin Course. [*In the press.*

Latin Composition and Syntax. With copious Exercises. By A. H. Allcroft, M.A. Oxon., and J. H. Haydon, M.A. Lond. and Camb. *Fourth Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"This useful little book."—*Journal of Education.*

"This is one of the best manuals on the above subject that we have met with for some time. Simplicity of statement and arrangement; apt examples illustrating each rule; exceptions to these adroitly stated just at the proper place and time, are among some of the striking characteristics of this excellent book. Every advantage too has been taken of printing and type to bring the leading statements prominently before the eye and mind of the reader."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The clearness and concise accuracy of this book throughout are truly remarkable."—*Education.*

"The arrangement and order are exceedingly good."—*School Board Chronicle.*

Higher Latin Composition. By A. H. Allcroft, M.A. Oxon. [*In preparation.*

The Tutorial Latin Reader. With Vocabulary. 2s. 6d.

"A soundly practical work."—*Guardian.*

Higher Latin Reader. Edited by H. J. Maidment, M.A. Lond. and Oxon., and T. R. Mills, M.A. 3s. 6d.

Roman and Grecian History.

The Tutorial History of Rome. (To 14 A.D.) By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. With Maps. 3s. 6d.
"It is well and clearly written."—*Saturday Review.*

A Longer History of Rome. In Five Volumes, each containing a Chapter on the Literature of the Period:—

I. **History of Rome, 287-202 B.C.:** The Struggle for Empire. By W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. 3s. 6d.

II. **History of Rome, 202-133 B.C.:** Rome under the Oligarchs. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. 3s. 6d.

III. **History of Rome, 133-78 B.C.:** The Decline of the Oligarchy. By W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. 3s. 6d.
"This volume gives a vigorous and carefully studied picture of the men and of the time."—*Spectator.*

IV. **History of Rome, 78-31 B.C.:** The Making of the Monarchy. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.
"Well and accurately written."—*Yorkshire Post.*

V. **History of Rome, 31 B.C. to 96 A.D.:** The Early Principate. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and J. H. HAYDON, M.A. Camb. and Lond. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.
"Written in a clear and direct style. Its authors show a thorough acquaintance with their authorities, and have also used the works of modern historians to good effect."—*Journal of Education.*

History of Rome, 390-202 B.C. By W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond., and W. J. WOODHOUSE, M.A. Oxon. 4s. 6d.

A History of Greece. In Six Volumes, each containing a Chapter on the Literature of the Period:—

I. **Early Grecian History.** A Sketch of the Historic Period to 495 B.C. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. 3s. 6d.
"For those who require a knowledge of the period no better book could be recommended."—*Educational Times.*

II. **History of Greece, 495 to 431 B.C.:** The Making of Athens. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.

III. **History of Greece, 431-404 B.C.:** The Peloponnesian War. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.

IV. **History of Greece, 404-362 B.C.:** Sparta and Thebes. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.

V. **History of Greece, 371-323 B.C.:** The Decline of Hellas. By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon. 3s. 6d.

VI. **History of Sicily, 490-289 B.C.** By A. H. ALLCROFT, M.A. Oxon., and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. 3s. 6d.
"We can bear high testimony to its merits."—*Schoolmaster.*

French.

The Tutorial French Accidence. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond., Professor of French at University College, Nottingham. With EXERCISES, and a Chapter on Elementary Syntax. 3s. 6d.

"The essentials of the accidence of the French Language are skilfully exhibited in carefully condensed synoptic sections."—*Educational News.*

"A most practical and able compilation."—*Public Opinion.*

The Tutorial French Syntax. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond., and A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. & Camb. With Exercises. 3s. 6d.

"It is a decidedly good book and should have a ready sale."—*Guardian.*

"Mr. Weekley has produced a clear, full, and careful Grammar in the 'Tutorial French Accidence,' and the companion volume of 'Syntax,' by himself and Mr. Wyatt, is worthy of it."—*Saturday Review.*

The Tutorial French Grammar. Containing the *Accidence* and the *Syntax* in One Volume. 4s. 6d.

French Prose Composition. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. 3s. 6d.

The Preceptors' French Reader. By ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. Lond. With Notes and Vocabulary. 1s. 6d.

"A very useful first reader with good vocabulary and sensible notes."—*Schoolmaster.*

French Prose Reader. Edited by S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., Examiner in French to the College of Preceptors, and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. With VOCABULARY. *Third Edition.* 2s. 6d.

"Admirably chosen extracts. They are so selected as to be thoroughly interesting and at the same time thoroughly illustrative of all that is best in French literature."—*School Board Chronicle.*

Advanced French Reader: Containing passages in prose and verse representative of all the modern Authors. Edited by S. BARLET, B. ès Sc., Examiner in French to the College of Preceptors, and W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Chosen from a large range of good modern authors, the book provides excellent practice in 'Unseens.'"—*Schoolmaster.*

Higher French Reader. Edited by ERNEST WEEKLEY, M.A. 3s. 6d.

"The passages are well chosen, interesting in themselves, and representative of the best contemporary stylists."—*Journal of Education.*

English History.

The Intermediate Text-Book of English History: a Longer History of England. By C. S. FEARENSIDE, M.A. Oxon., and A. JOHNSON EVANS, M.A. Camb., B.A. Lond. With Maps & Plans.

VOLUME I., to 1485. [*In preparation.*
VOLUME II., 1485 to 1603. 4s. 6d.
VOLUME III., 1603 to 1714. 4s. 6d.
VOLUME IV., 1714 to 1837. 4s. 6d.

"The results of extensive reading seem to have been photographed upon a small plate, so that nothing of the effect of the larger scene is lost."—*Teachers' Monthly.*

"It is lively; it is exact; the style is vigorous and has plenty of swing; the facts are numerous, but well balanced and admirably arranged."—*Education.*

English Language and Literature.

The English Language: Its History and Structure. By W. H. Low, M.A. Lond. With TEST QUESTIONS. *Fourth Edition.* 3s. 6d.

CONTENTS:—The Relation of English to other Languages—Survey of the Chief Changes that have taken place in the Language—Sources of our Vocabulary—The Alphabet and the Sounds of English—Grimm's Law—Gradation and Mutation—Transposition, Assimilation, Addition and Disappearance of Sounds in English—Introductory Remarks on Grammar—The Parts of Speech, etc.—Syntax—Parsing and Analysis—Metre—320 Test Questions.

"A clear workmanlike history of the English language done on sound principles."—*Saturday Review.*

"The author deals very fully with the source and growth of the language. The parts of speech are dealt with historically as well as grammatically. The work is scholarly and accurate."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The history of the language and etymology are both well and fully treated."—*Teachers' Monthly.*

"Aptly and cleverly written."—*Teachers' Aid.*

"The arrangement of the book is devised in the manner most suited to the student's convenience, and most calculated to impress his memory."—*Lyceum.*

"It is in the best sense a scientific treatise. There is not a superfluous sentence."—*Educational News.*

The Preceptors' English Grammar. With numerous Exercises. By ARNOLD WALL, M.A. Lond. [*In preparation.*

The Intermediate Text-Book of English Literature. By W. H. Low, M.A. Lond., and A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb.

VOLUME I., to 1580. By A. J. WYATT and W. H. LOW. 3s. 6d.

VOLUME II., 1558 to 1660. By W. H. LOW. 3s. 6d.

VOLUME III., 1660 to 1798. By W. H. LOW. 3s. 6d.

"Really judicious in the selection of the details given."—*Saturday Review.*

"Designed on a thoroughly sound principle. Facts, dates, and representative quotations are plentiful. The critical extracts are judiciously chosen, and Mr. Low's own writing is clear, effective for its purpose, and evidently the result of thorough knowledge and a very considerable ability to choose between good and bad."—*National Observer.*

"It affords another example of the author's comprehensive grasp of his subject, combined with a true teacher's power of using such judicious condensation that the more salient points are brought clearly into view."—*Teachers' Monthly.*

"Mr. Low has succeeded in giving a very readable and lucid account of the literature of the time."—*Literary World.*

"Mr. Low's book forms a serviceable student's digest of an important period in our literature."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The style is terse and pointed. The representative quotations are aptly and judiciously chosen. The criticisms are well grounded, clearly expressed and modestly presented."—*Morning Post.*

A Middle English Reader. By S. J. EVANS, M.A. Lond. [*In the press.*

English Classics.

Addison.—Essays on Milton, Notes on. By W. H. LOW, M.A. 2s.

Chaucer.—Prologue, Knight's Tale. With INTRODUCTION and NOTES by A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb., and a Glossary by S. J. EVANS, M.A. Lond. 2s. 6d.

Chaucer.—Man of Lawes Tale, with the PROLOGUE to the CANTERBURY TALES. Edited by A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb., with a GLOSSARY by J. MALINS, M.A. Lond. 2s. 6d.

Dryden.—Essay on Dramatic Poesy.—Edited by W. H. LOW, M.A. Lond. TEXT and NOTES. 3s. 6d.

Goldsmith.—Poems. Edited by AUSTIN DOBSON. 2s. 6d. *net.*

Langland.—Piers Plowman. Prologue and Passus I.-VII., Text B Edited by J. F. DAVIS, D.Lit., M.A. Lond., Assistant Examiner at the University of London. 4s. 6d.

Milton.—Paradise Regained. Edited by A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.

Milton.—Samson Agonistes. Edited by A. J. WYATT, M.A. 2s. 6d.

"A capital Introduction. The notes are excellent."—*Educational Times.*

Milton.—Sonnets. Edited by W. F. MASOM, M.A. Lond. 1s. 6d.

Shakespeare.—With INTRODUCTION and NOTES, by Prof. W. J ROLFE, D.Litt., in 40 volumes. 2s. each.

A descriptive catalogue, containing Prof. Rolfe's Hints to Teachers and Students of Shakespeare, can be obtained on application.

Merchant of Venice	Winter's Tale	Hamlet
Tempest	King John	King Lear
Midsummer Night's Dream	Richard II.	Cymbeline
As You Like It	Henry IV. Part I.	Julius Caesar
Much Ado About Nothing	Henry IV. Part II.	Coriolanus
Twelfth Night	Henry V.	Antony and Cleopatra
Comedy of Errors	Henry VI. Part I.	Timon of Athens
Merry Wives of Windsor	Henry VI. Part II.	Troilus and Cressida
Love's Labour's Lost	Henry VI. Part III.	Pericles
Two Gentlemen of Verona	Richard III.	The Two Noble Kinsmen
The Taming of the Shrew	Henry VIII.	Titus Andronicus
All's Well that Ends Well	Romeo and Juliet	Venus and Adonis
Measure for Measure	Macbeth	Sonnets
	Othello	

This edition is recommended by Professor Dowden, Dr. Abbott, and Dr. Furnivall.

Shakespeare.—Henry VIII. Edited by W. H. LOW, M.A. Lond. 2s.

Spenser.—Faerie Queene, Book I. Edited with INTRODUCTION, NOTES, and GLOSSARY, by W. H. HILL, M.A. Lond. 2s. 6d.

Spenser's Shepherd's Calender, Notes on, with an INTRODUCTION. By A. J. WYATT, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2s.

Mental and Moral Science.

Ethics, Manual of. By J. S. MACKENZIE, M.A., Professor of Logic and Philosophy in the University College of South Wales and Monmouthshire, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, Examiner in the Universities of Cambridge and Aberdeen. *Third Edition, revised, enlarged, and partly rewritten.* 6s. 6d.

"In writing this book Mr. Mackenzie has produced an earnest and striking contribution to the ethical literature of the time."—*Mind.*

"This excellent manual."—*International Journal of Ethics.*

"Mr. Mackenzie may be congratulated on having presented a thoroughly good and helpful guide to this attractive, yet elusive and difficult, subject."—*Schoolmaster.*

"It is a most admirable student's manual."—*Teacher's Monthly.*

"Mr. Mackenzie's book is as nearly perfect as it could be. It covers the whole field, and for perspicuity and thoroughness leaves nothing to be desired. The pupil who masters it will find himself equipped with a sound grasp of the subject such as no one book with which we are acquainted has hitherto been equal to supplying. Not the least recommendation is the really interesting style of the work."—*Literary World.*

"Written with lucidity and an obvious mastery of the whole bearing of the subject."—*Standard.*

"No one can doubt either the author's talent or his information. The ground of ethical science is covered by his treatment completely, sensibly, and in many respects brilliantly."—*Manchester Guardian.*

"For a practical aid to the student it is very admirably adapted. It is able, clear, and acute. The arrangement of the book is excellent.—*Newcastle Daily Chronicle.*

Logic, A Manual of. By J. WELTON, M.A. Lond. and Camb. 2 vols. Vol. I., *Second Edition*, 8s. 6d.; Vol. II., 6s. 6d.

This book embraces the entire London Pass Syllabus, and renders unnecessary the purchase of the numerous books hitherto used. The relative importance of the sections is denoted by variety of type, and a minimum course of reading is thus indicated.

Vol. I. contains the whole of Deductive Logic, except Fallacies, which are treated, with Inductive Fallacies, in Vol. II.

"A clear and compendious summary of the views of various thinkers on important and doubtful points."—*Journal of Education.*

"A very good book . . . not likely to be superseded for a long time to come."—*Educational Review.*

"Unusually complete and reliable. The arrangement of divisions and subdivisions is excellent."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The manual may be safely recommended."—*Educational Times.*

"Undoubtedly excellent."—*Board Teacher.*

Psychology, A Manual of. By G. F. STOUT, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, Lecturer on Comparative Psychology in the University of Aberdeen. [*In preparation.*

Mathematics and Mechanics.

Algebra, The Intermediate. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. Based on the *Algebra* of Radhakrishnan. 3s. 6d.

Algebra, The Tutorial.

Part I. ELEMENTARY COURSE. [*In preparation.*
Part II. ADVANCED COURSE. [*In preparation.*

Astronomy, Elementary Mathematical. By C. W. C. BARLOW, M.A., Lond. and Camb., B.Sc. Lond., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S., Fellow of St. Peter's College, Cambridge. *Second Edition*, with ANSWERS. 6s. 6d.

"Probably within the limits of the volume no better description of the methods by which the marvellous structure of scientific astronomy has been built up could have been given."—*Athenæum.*

"Sure to find favour with students of astronomy."—*Nature.*

"This book supplies a distinct want. The diagrams are clear, the style of writing lucid, and the mathematical knowledge required but small."—*Teachers' Monthly.*

"Completely successful."—*Literary World.*

Coordinate Geometry: The Right Line and Circle. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"It is thoroughly sound throughout, and indeed deals with some difficult points with a clearness and accuracy that has not, we believe, been surpassed."—*Education.*

"Thoroughly practical and helpful."—*Schoolmaster.*

"Another of the excellent books published by the University Correspondence College Press. The arrangement of matter and the copious explanations it would be hard to surpass. It is the best book we have seen on the subject."—*Board Teacher.*

Coordinate Geometry, Worked Examples in: A Graduated Course on the Right Line and Circle. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Dynamics, Text-Book of. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. 2s. 6d.

"The treatment is conspicuous for its clearness and conciseness."—*Nature.*

Euclid.—Books I.-IV. By RUPERT DEAKIN, M.A. Lond. and Oxon., Headmaster of Stourbridge Grammar School. 2s. 6d. Also separately: Books I., II., 1s.

"The book is clearly printed, the demonstrations are well arranged, and the diagrams, by the judicious use of thin and thick lines, are rendered more intelligible."—*Saturday Review.*

"An admirable school Edition."—*Speaker.*

Geometry of Similar Figures and the Plane. (Euclid VI. and XI.) With numerous Deductions worked and unworked. By C. W. C. BARLOW, M.A., B.Sc., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. 2s. 6d.

Mathematics and Mechanics—*continued.*

Hydrostatics, An Elementary Text-Book of. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S. *Second Edition.* 2s.

"The work is thoroughly sound. The hand of the practical teacher is manifest throughout the work, and it will be useful both to teacher and student."—*Educational Review.*

Mechanics, Advanced. With the Questions of the last eleven years set at the advanced examination of the Science and Art Department. By WM. BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S.

Vol. I. DYNAMICS. 3s. 6d.
Vol. II. STATICS. 3s. 6d.

Vols. I. and II. deal respectively with those portions of Dynamics and Statics which are required for the Science and Art Second (Advanced) Stage Examination in Theoretical Mechanics.

Mechanics, An Elementary Text-Book of. By the same authors. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"A most useful and helpful manual."—*Educational Review.*

Mechanics (of Solids), First Stage. By F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc. *Second Edition.* 2s.

"The work of a practical teacher."—*Educational Review.*

Mechanics, The Preceptors'. By F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc. 2s. 6d.

Mechanics of Fluids, First Stage. By G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S., and F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc. 2s.

Mechanics and Hydrostatics, Worked Examples in: A Graduated Course on the London Matriculation Syllabus. *Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged.* 1s. 6d.

Mensuration of the Simpler Figures. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S., and T. W. EDMONDSON, M.A. Camb., B.A. Lond. *Second Edition.* 2s. 6d.

Mensuration and Spherical Geometry: Being Mensuration of the Simpler Figures and the Geometrical Properties of the Sphere. Specially intended for London Inter. Arts and Science. By the same authors. *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"The book comes from the hands of experts; we can think of nothing better qualified to enable the student to master this branch of the syllabus, and to promote a correct style in his mathematical manipulations."—*Schoolmaster.*

Statics, The Tutorial. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. 3s. 6d.

Trigonometry, The Tutorial. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. 3s. 6d.

"An eminently satisfactory text-book, which might well be substituted as an elementary course for those at present in use."—*Guardian.*

"Good as the works of these authors usually are, we think this one of their best."—*Education.*

Trigonometry, Synopsis of Elementary. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.R.A.S. *Interleaved.* 1s. 6d.

Chemistry.

Analysis of a Simple Salt. With a Selection of Model Analyses, and TABLES OF ANALYSIS (on linen). By the same Authors. *Fourth Edition.* 2s. 6d. TABLES OF ANALYSIS (separately) 6d.

"The selection of model analyses is an excellent feature."—*Educational Times.*

Chemistry, The Tutorial. By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc. Lond., Ph.D. Heidelberg, Lecturer in Chemistry at Victoria University. Edited by WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., F.C.S.

PART I., NON-METALS. 3s. 6d.
PART II., METALS. 3s. 6d.
Matriculation Supplement to Part I. 1s. 6d. [*In the press.*

"We can unhesitatingly recommend it for the higher forms of Secondary and other schools."—*Education.*

"A good text-book. The treatment is thorough and clear, and the experiments are good and well arranged."—*School Guardian.*

Chemistry, First Stage Inorganic. By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc. 2s.

"A valuable and comprehensive book for young students."—*Secondary Education.*

Carbon Compounds, An Introduction to. By F. BEDDOW, Ph.D., D.Sc. 2s. 6d. [*In the Press.*

Chemistry, Synopsis of Non-Metallic. With an Appendix on Calculations. By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.C.S. *New and Revised Edition, Interleaved.* 1s. 6d.

"Arranged in a very clear and handy form."—*Journal of Education.*

Chemical Analysis, Qualitative and Quantitative 3s. 6d. [*In the press.*

Biology.

Biology, Text Book of. By H. G. WELLS, B.Sc. Lond., F.Z.S., F.C.P. With an INTRODUCTION by Prof. G. B. HOWES, F.L.S., F.Z.S.

PART I., VERTEBRATES. *Second Edition.* 6s. 6d.
PART II., INVERTEBRATES AND PLANTS. 6s. 6d.

"The *Text-Book of Biology* is a most useful addition to the series already issued, it is well-arranged, and contains the matter necessary for an elementary course of vertebrate zoology in a concise and logical order."—*Journal of Education.*

"Mr. Wells' practical experience shows itself on every page; his descriptions are short, lucid, and to the point. We can confidently recommend it."—*Educational Times.*

"The numerous drawings, the well-arranged tables, and the careful descriptions will be of the utmost value to the student."—*Schoolmaster.*

Zoology, Text-Book of. By H. G. WELLS, B.Sc. Lond., F.Z.S., F.C.P., and A. M. DAVIES, B.Sc. Lond. 6s. 6d.

Botany, Text-Book of. By J. M LOWSON M.A., B.Sc. 6s. 6d.

Physics.

By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. Lond.

Heat and Light, Elementary Text-Book of. *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"A student of ordinary ability who works carefully through this book need not fear the examination."—*Schoolmaster.*

"It will be found an admirable text-book."—*Educational News.*

"A welcome addition to a useful series."—*School Guardian.*

Heat, Elementary Text-Book of. 2s.

Heat, Advanced. (For the Advanced Stage of the Science and Art Department.) 3s. 6d.

Light, Elementary Text-Book of. 2s.

Magnetism and Electricity, First Stage. 2s.

Physiography, First Stage. By A. M. DAVIES, B.Sc.

Sound, Light, and Heat, First Stage. By JOHN DON, B.Sc. 2s.

Sound, Elementary Text-Book of. By JOHN DON, B.Sc. 1s. 6d

THE TUTORIAL PHYSICS.

With 424 Diagrams and numerous Calculations.

By E. CATCHPOOL, B.Sc. Lond., First Class Honourman.

Vol. I. **Sound, Text-Book of.** *Second Edition.* 3s. 6d.

By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. Lond.

Vol. II. **Heat, Text-Book of.** *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Vol. III. **Light, Text-Book of.** *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

Vol. IV. **Magnetism and Electricity, Text-Book of.** *Third Edition.* 3s. 6d.

"Cannot fail to be appreciated by all engaged in science teaching."—*Publishers' Circular.*

"Clear, concise, well-arranged and well-illustrated, and, as far as we have tested, accurate."—*Journal of Education.*

"Distinguished by accurate scientific knowledge and lucid explanations"—*Educational Times.*

"The diagrams are neat and accurate, the printing excellent, and the arrangement of the matter clear and precise."—*Practical Teacher.*

"It is thoroughly well done."—*Schoolmaster.*

"The author has been very successful in making portions of the work not ordinarily regarded as elementary appear to be so by his simple exposition of them."—*Teachers' Monthly.*

"The author writes as a well-informed teacher, and that is equivalent to saying that he writes clearly and accurately. There are numerous books on acoustics, but few cover exactly the same ground as this, or are more suitable introductions to a serious study of the subject."—*Nature.*

Properties of Matter: an Introduction to the Tutorial Physics. By E. CATCHPOOL, B.Sc [*In preparation.*

General Elementary Science. Edited by WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., LL.B., F.C.S. 3s. 6d.

The Organized Science Series.

Adapted to the Requirements of the Science and Art Department.

FOR THE ELEMENTARY STAGE. **2s.** each Vol.

First Stage Mechanics (Solids). By F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc.
First Stage Mechanics of Fluids. By G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., F.R.S., and F. ROSENBERG, M.A., B.Sc.
First Stage Sound, Light, and Heat. By JOHN DON, M.A., B.Sc.
First Stage Inorganic Chemistry (Theoretical). By G. H. BAILEY, D.Sc.
First Stage Physiography. By A. M. DAVIES, B.Sc.
First Stage Magnetism and Electricity. By R. H. JUDE, M.A., D.Sc.

FOR THE ADVANCED STAGE. **3s. 6d.** each Vol.

Advanced Mechanics (Solids). By WILLIAM BRIGGS, M.A., F.C.S., F.R.A.S., and G. H. BRYAN, Sc.D., M.A., F.R.S. Part I. DYNAMICS. Part II. STATICS.
Advanced Heat. By R. W. STEWART, D.Sc. Lond.

The following books are in course of preparation:—For THE ELEMENTARY STAGE—First Stage Mathematics, First Stage Physiology, First Stage Botany, and Inorganic Chemistry (Practical), Organic Chemistry (Practical). For THE ADVANCED STAGE—Second Stage Mathematics, Advanced Magnetism and Electricity, Advanced Inorganic Chemistry (Theoretical), Advanced Inorganic Chemistry (Practical), Organic Chemistry (Practical).

The University Correspondent

AND

UNIVERSITY CORRESPONDENCE COLLEGE MAGAZINE,

Issued every Saturday. Price 1d., by Post 1½d.; Half-yearly Subscription, 3s.; Yearly Subscription, 5s. 6d.

Examination Directories.

Matriculation Directory, with Full Answers to the Examination Papers. (*No. XXIV. will be published during the fortnight following the Examinaton of June*, 1898.) Nos. VI., VII., IX., XI.—XXI. 1s. each, *net*. No. XXIII. 1s. *net*.

Intermediate Arts Directory, with Full Answers to the Examination Papers (except in Special Subjects for the Year). Nos. II. (1889) to VI. (1893), 2s. 6d. each, *net*.

Inter. Science and Prelim. Sci. Directory, with Full Answers to the Examination Papers. Nos. I. to IV. (1890-3), 2s. 6d. each, *net*.

B.A. Directory, with Full Answers to the Examination Papers (except in Special Subjects for the Year.) Nos. I.—III., 1889-91. 2s. 6d. each, *net*. No. IV., 1893 (with Full Answers to the Papers in Latin, Greek, and Pure Mathematics). 2s. 6d. *net*.